



LATIN PHRASE-BOOK

LATIN  
PHRASE-BOOK

MEISSNER

TRANSLATED BY  
H. W. AUDEN

DRPS  
FA  
1407



UNIVERSITAT D'ALACANT  
Biblioteca Universitaria



0500773604



MEISSNER'S LATIN PHRASE-BOOK

LATIN  
PHRASE-BOOK

MEISSNER

TRANSLATED BY  
H. W. AUDEN



Biblioteca de  
**RUSSELL P. SEBOLD**

1880  
1881

FL DRPS FA / 1407  
0500773604

Florence Roberts  
1912

LATIN PHRASE-BOOK

# LATIN PHRASE-BOOK

BY

C. MEISSNER

TRANSLATED FROM THE SIXTH GERMAN EDITION

WITH THE ADDITION OF  
SUPPLEMENTARY PHRASES AND REFERENCES

BY

H. W. AUDEN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT FETTES COLLEGE, EDINBURGH; LATE SCHOLAR  
OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND BELL  
UNIVERSITY SCHOLAR



London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1902

*All rights reserved*

LATIN PHRASE-BOOK

*Reissued, with English Index added, 1895*  
*Reprinted November 1895, 1902*

## PREFACE

ALTHOUGH, ideally speaking, a phrase-book should always be compiled by the pupil himself from his own individual observation, yet in these days, when an extended curriculum tends to curtail considerably the amount of Latin read, it seems to me that anything which may help boys to some knowledge of Latinity in a short time is not wholly useless. Hence this translation. The use of such books as *Meissner's Phraseologie* involves no new and untried principles, witness the excellent results obtained in Germany, where the book has passed through six editions. It has also been translated into French (the translation is now in its third edition) and Italian.

My best thanks are due to Professor Meissner for his courtesy in allowing me to make this translation, also to Professor Pascal of Reims, to whose admirable translation I am much indebted.

H. W. AUDEN.

FETTES COLLEGE, EDINBURGH,  
1894.

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
I. THE WORLD AND NATURE—	
1. THE WORLD—CREATION . . . . .	1
2. THE EARTH AND ITS SURFACE . . . . .	2
3. WATER—RIVERS—SEA . . . . .	3
4. FIRE . . . . .	5
5. AIR—SKY—CLIMATE—HEAVENLY BODIES . . . . .	6
6. NATURAL PHENOMENA . . . . .	7
II. SPACE AND TIME—	
1. POINTS OF THE COMPASS—SITUATION . . . . .	9
2. BOUNDARY—TERRITORY—DISTANCE . . . . .	10
3. ROAD—TRAVEL . . . . .	11
4. COMING—GOING . . . . .	13
5. RIDING—DRIVING . . . . .	14
6. WALKING—FOOTSTEPS—DIRECTION . . . . .	15
7. MOVEMENT IN GENERAL . . . . .	16
8. TIME IN GENERAL . . . . .	18
9. YEAR—SEASONS . . . . .	21
10. DAY—DIVISIONS OF THE DAY . . . . .	22
III. PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY . . . . .	24
IV. PROPERTIES OF THE HUMAN BODY—	
1. FEELINGS—SENSATIONS—POWERS . . . . .	29
2. BIRTH—LIFE . . . . .	30
3. TIME OF LIFE . . . . .	32



	PAGE
4. HUNGER—THIRST . . . . .	34
5. LAUGHTER—TEARS . . . . .	35
6. HEALTH—SICKNESS . . . . .	36
7. SLEEP—DREAMS . . . . .	37
8. DEATH . . . . .	39
9. BURIAL . . . . .	40
V. HUMAN LIFE; ITS VARIOUS RELATIONS AND CON- DITIONS—	
1. CIRCUMSTANCE—SITUATION—DIFFICULTY . . . . .	41
2. COMMENCEMENT—END—RESULT . . . . .	43
3. CAUSE—MOTIVE—ORIGIN . . . . .	44
4. REGARD—IMPORTANCE—INFLUENCE—POWER— INCLINATION . . . . .	45
5. OPPORTUNITY—POSSIBILITY—OCCASION—CHANCE	47
6. SUCCESS—GOOD FORTUNE . . . . .	49
7. MISFORTUNE—FATE—RUIN . . . . .	50
8. DANGER—RISK—SAFETY . . . . .	52
9. ASSISTANCE—DELIVERANCE—CONSOLATION . . . . .	54
10. RICHES—WANT—POVERTY . . . . .	55
11. UTILITY—ADVANTAGE—HARM—DISADVANTAGE	56
12. GOODWILL—KINDNESS—INCLINATION—FAVOUR	57
13. BENEFIT—GRATITUDE—RECOMPENSE . . . . .	59
14. MERIT—VALUE—REWARD . . . . .	60
15. REQUESTS—WISHES—COMMISSIONS—ORDERS . . . . .	61
16. FRIENDSHIP—ENMITY—RECONCILIATION . . . . .	62
17. AUTHORITY—DIGNITY . . . . .	64
18. PRAISE—APPROVAL—BLAME—REPROACH . . . . .	65
19. RUMOUR—GOSSIP—NEWS—MENTION . . . . .	66
20. FAME—REPUTATION . . . . .	67
21. HONOUR—DISGRACE—IGNOMINY . . . . .	69
22. EFFORT—INDUSTRY—LABOUR—EXERTION . . . . .	70
23. BUSINESS—LEISURE—INACTIVITY—IDLENESS . . . . .	72
24. PLEASURE—RECREATION . . . . .	74
VI. THE MIND; ITS FUNCTIONS—	
1. GENIUS—TALENT—INTELLIGENCE . . . . .	75

	PAGE
2. IMAGINATION—THOUGHT . . . . .	76
3. CONCEPTIONS—IDEALS—PERFECTION . . . . .	77
4. OPINION—PREJUDICE—CONJECTURE . . . . .	78
5. TRUTH—ERROR . . . . .	80
6. CHOICE—DOUBT—SCRUPLE . . . . .	82
7. KNOWLEDGE—CERTAINTY—PERSUASION . . . . .	83
8. PLAN—ADVICE—DELIBERATION . . . . .	84
9. RESOLVE—DESIGN—INTENTION . . . . .	85
10. OBJECT—AIM—HESITATION—DELAY . . . . .	86
11. REMEMBRANCE—FORGETFULNESS . . . . .	87
12. THEORY—PRACTICE—EXPERIENCE . . . . .	90
VII. THE ARTS AND SCIENCES—	
1. SCIENTIFIC KNOWLEDGE IN GENERAL—LITERA- TURE . . . . .	91
2. LEARNING—ERUDITION . . . . .	93
3. CULTURE—CIVILISATION . . . . .	95
4. EDUCATION—INSTRUCTION—SCHOOL—PROFES- SION . . . . .	96
5. EXAMPLE—PATTERN—PRECEDENT . . . . .	99
6. PHILOSOPHY . . . . .	101
7. THE PARTS OF PHILOSOPHY . . . . .	102
8. SYSTEM—METHOD—PRINCIPLES . . . . .	103
9. SPECIES—DEFINITION—CLASSIFICATION—CON- NECTION . . . . .	104
10. PROOF—REFUTATION . . . . .	106
11. CONCLUSION—HYPOTHESIS—INFERENCE . . . . .	106
12. DEBATE—CONTROVERSY . . . . .	107
13. AGREEMENT—CONTRADICTION . . . . .	109
14. PARTICULAR SCIENCES (History—Mythology— Chronology—Geography—Mathematics—Natural Science—Astronomy) . . . . .	110
15. ART IN GENERAL . . . . .	114
16. POETRY—MUSIC—PAINTING—SCULPTURE . . . . .	115
17. THE DRAMA . . . . .	117

	PAGE
VIII. SPEECH AND WRITING—	
1. SPEECH IN GENERAL . . . . .	120
2. STYLE—EXPRESSION . . . . .	123
3. DELIVERY—VOICE . . . . .	129
4. SUBJECT-MATTER—ARGUMENT . . . . .	130
5. QUESTION—ANSWER . . . . .	131
6. HUMOUR—EARNEST . . . . .	132
7. LANGUAGE—USE OF LANGUAGE—TRANSLATION —GRAMMAR . . . . .	133
8. SENTENCE—PERIOD—WORDS—PROVERBS—SYL- LABLES . . . . .	135
9. WRITING—WRITERS—BOOKS . . . . .	140
10. LETTERS . . . . .	144
IX. THE EMOTIONS—	
1. DISPOSITION—EMOTION IN GENERAL . . . . .	145
2. JOY—PAIN . . . . .	146
3. VEXATION—CARE—EQUANIMITY—CONTENT- MENT—AFFLICTION . . . . .	148
4. FEAR—TERROR—ANXIETY . . . . .	149
5. COURAGE—DISCOURAGEMENT—PUSILLANIMITY —PRIDE—ARROGANCE—INSOLENCE . . . . .	150
6. PRESENCE OF MIND—COMPOSURE—DESPAIR . . . . .	152
7. HOPE—EXPECTATION . . . . .	153
8. PITY—PARDON—WANT OF FEELING—CRUELTY . . . . .	155
9. LOVE—LONGING—ADMIRATION—ENTHUSIASM . . . . .	156
10. BELIEF—CONFIDENCE—LOYALTY—PROTECTION —PROMISE—VERACITY ( <i>fides, fiducia</i> ) . . . . .	158
11. SUSPICION—PRESENTIMENT . . . . .	160
12. HATRED—JEALOUSY—ENVY . . . . .	161
13. DISCONTENT—ANGER—REVENGE—FURY . . . . .	162
X. VIRTUES AND VICES—	
1. VIRTUE—MORALITY . . . . .	164
2. VICE—CRIME . . . . .	165
3. DESIRE—PASSION—SELF-CONTROL . . . . .	166

	PAGE
4. WRONG—INSULT—OUTRAGE—OFFENCE . . . . .	168
5. VIOLENCE—AMBUSCADE—THREATS . . . . .	169
6. APPEARANCE—DECEIT—FALSEHOOD—DERISION . . . . .	170
7. DUTY—INCLINATION . . . . .	171
8. REASON—CONSCIENCE—REMORSE . . . . .	173
9. MEASURE—STANDARD—LIMIT—MODERATION . . . . .	174
10. MORALS—IMMORALITY—PRINCIPLES—CHARACTER . . . . .	175
XI. RELIGION—	
1. GOD—WORSHIP . . . . .	177
2. RELIGION—RELIGIOUS SCRUPLE—OATH . . . . .	178
3. BELIEF—UNBELIEF—SUPERSTITION . . . . .	180
4. PRAYERS—WISHES—VOWS . . . . .	181
5. SACRIFICE—FESTIVAL . . . . .	182
6. ORACLE—PRODIGIES—AUSPICES—PRESAGE . . . . .	183
XII. DOMESTIC LIFE—	
1. THE HOUSE AND ITS DIFFERENT PARTS . . . . .	185
2. DOMESTIC MATTERS—PROPERTY . . . . .	187
3. HABITATION—CLOTHING . . . . .	188
4. FOOD—DRINK . . . . .	189
5. SUBSISTENCE IN GENERAL . . . . .	190
6. EXPENDITURE—LUXURY—PRODIGALITY . . . . .	191
7. HOSPITALITY . . . . .	192
8. SOCIABILITY—INTERCOURSE—ISOLATION . . . . .	193
9. CONVERSATION—AUDIENCE—CONFERENCE . . . . .	195
10. GREETING—FAREWELL . . . . .	197
11. BETROTHAL—MARRIAGE—DIVORCE . . . . .	198
12. WILL—INHERITANCE . . . . .	199
13. CUSTOM—USAGE . . . . .	200
XIII. COMMERCE AND AGRICULTURE—	
1. COMMERCE IN GENERAL—PURCHASE—PRICE . . . . .	201
2. MONEY—INTEREST—LOANS . . . . .	202
3. MONEY-MATTERS—ACCOUNTS—AUDIT . . . . .	204
4. RATE OF INTEREST . . . . .	205
5. PROFIT—CREDIT—DEBT . . . . .	206

	PAGE
6. BUILDING . . . . .	208
7. AGRICULTURE—MANAGEMENT OF STOCK . . . . .	208
XIV. THE STATE—	
1. CONSTITUTION—ADMINISTRATION—GOVERNMENT . . . . .	210
2. CIVIL RIGHTS—RANK . . . . .	213
3. DIGNITY—POSITION—HONOURS—PRE-EMINENCE . . . . .	215
4. PUBLIC MEETINGS—SUFFRAGE . . . . .	216
5. LAWS—BILLS . . . . .	217
6. POPULAR FAVOUR—INFLUENCE—UNPOPULARITY . . . . .	219
7. PARTY-SPIRIT—NEUTRALITY—POLITICS—ARIS- TOCRACY—DEMOCRACY . . . . .	220
8. DEMAGOGY—REVOLUTION—REBELLION—AN- ARCHY . . . . .	223
9. PROSCRIPTION—CONFISCATION—BANISHMENT— AMNESTY . . . . .	224
10. POWER—MONARCHY—ROYALTY . . . . .	226
11. SLAVERY—FREEDOM . . . . .	227
12. REVENUE—COLONIES—PROVINCES . . . . .	228
13. MAGISTRACIES—	
(a) Candidature—Election . . . . .	230
(b) Particular Magistracies . . . . .	233
14. THE SENATE . . . . .	235
XV. LAW AND JUSTICE—	
1. LAW IN GENERAL . . . . .	237
2. INQUIRY—TESTIMONY—TORTURE . . . . .	239
3. PROCESS—DEFENCE . . . . .	240
4. ACCUSATION—VERDICT—DECISION . . . . .	241
5. GUILT . . . . .	243
6. PUNISHMENT—ACQUITTAL . . . . .	244
XVI. WAR—	
1. LEVIES—MILITARY OATH—ARMIES IN GENERAL . . . . .	246
2. PAY—SERVICE—COMMISSARIAT . . . . .	248
3. COMMAND—DISCIPLINE . . . . .	249
4. WEAPONS . . . . .	250

	PAGE
5. WAR . . . . .	251
6. THE ARMY ON THE MARCH . . . . .	253
7. THE CAMP . . . . .	255
8. A SIEGE . . . . .	257
9. BEFORE THE FIGHT . . . . .	260
10. THE FIGHT—	
(a) The Fight in General . . . . .	261
(b) The Attack . . . . .	262
(c) Close Quarters . . . . .	264
(d) Tactics—Reinforcements . . . . .	264
(e) Successful Attack . . . . .	265
(f) Retreat—Flight—Pursuit . . . . .	266
(g) Defeat—Massacre—Wounds—Losses . . . . .	267
11. VICTORY—TRIUMPH . . . . .	269
12. TRUCE—PEACE—TREATIES—ALLIANCE . . . . .	270
13. CONQUEST—SUBMISSION . . . . .	271
XVII. SHIPPING—	
1. NAVAL AFFAIRS IN GENERAL . . . . .	272
2. VOYAGE—SHIPWRECK—LANDING . . . . .	273
3. A NAVAL BATTLE . . . . .	275
APPENDIX . . . . .	277
LATIN INDEX . . . . .	283
ENGLISH INDEX . . . . .	317

## I. THE WORLD AND NATURE

### I. THE WORLD—CREATION

*rerum* or *mundi universitas*—the universe.

*rerum natura* or simply *natura*—creation ; nature.

*haec omnia, quae videmus*—the visible world.

*totius mundi convenientia et consensus*—the perfect harmony of the universe.

*deus mundum aedificavit, fabricatus est, effecit* (not *creavit*)<sup>1</sup>—God made the world.

*deus est mundi procreator* (not *creator*), *aedificator, fabricator, opifex rerum*—God is the Creator of the world.

*elementa ; initia* or *principia rerum*—the elements.

*elementa et tanquam semina rerum*—the elements and first beginnings.

*nutus et pondus* or simply *nutus* (ῥοπή)—gravity.

<sup>1</sup> *Creare* is usually employed in the sense of producing, originating, causing, e.g. *similitudo creat errorem ; periculum alicui creare*. It has, however, occasionally the meaning to create, e.g. *De Fin. rerum quas creat natura*.

## 2. THE EARTH AND ITS SURFACE

*orbis terrae, terrarum*<sup>1</sup>—the earth; the globe.

(*terra*) *continens* (B. G. 5. 8. 2)—the continent.

*terra (regio) mediterranea*—an inland region; the interior.

*interior Asia; interiora Asiae*—the interior of Asia.

*sinus urbis* (Sall. Cat. 52. 35)—the heart of the city.

*in ipsam* or *intimam Graeciam penetrare*—to penetrate into the heart of Greece.

*terra effert* (more rarely *fert*,<sup>2</sup> but not *profert*) *fruges*—the earth brings forth fruit, crops.

*terra fundit fruges*—the earth brings forth fruit abundantly.

*animata (animalia) inanimaque* (not *inanimata*)—animate and inanimate nature.

*ea, quae terra gignit*

*ea, quae e terra gignuntur*

*ea, quae a terra stirpibus continentur*

*ea quorum stirpes terra continentur*

(N. D. 2. 10. 26)

*arbores stirpesque, herbae stirpesque*

(De Fin. 5. 11. 33)

} the vegetable kingdom.

*radices agere* (De Off. 2. 12. 73)—to take root.

*gemmas agere*—to bud, blossom.

*gemmae proveniunt*—the trees are budding.

*arbores frondescunt*—the trees are coming into leaf.

*rami late diffunduntur*—the twigs are shooting out, spreading.

<sup>1</sup> To the Romans *orbis terrarum* (more rarely *orbis terrae*) meant all those countries which made up the Roman Empire.

<sup>2</sup> *ferre* is also used metaphorically, to produce, e.g. *haec aetas perfectum oratorem tulit* (Brut. 12. 45).

*montes vestiti silvis*—wooded hills.

*summus mons*—the top of a mountain.

*culmina Alpium*—the summits of the Alps.

*sub radicibus montis, in infimo monte, sub monte*—at the foot of the mountain.

*superare Alpes, Pyrenaeum, Apenninum*<sup>1</sup> (both always in the sing.)—to cross the Alps, Pyrenees, Apennines.

*altissimis montibus undique contineri*—to be shut in on all sides by very high mountains.

*prospectus est ad aliquid*—one has a view over . . . ; one is able to see as far as . . .

*collis leniter ab infimo acclivis* (opp. *leniter a summo declivis*)—a gentle ascent.

*ad extremum tumulum*—on the edge of the hill.

*loca edita, superiora*—heights, high ground.

*loca aspera et montuosa* (Planc. 9. 22)—rough and hilly ground.

*loca plana* or simply *plana*—level country; plains.

*saxa praecepta*—steep rocks.

*loca inculta*—uncultivated districts.

*loca deserta* (opp. *frequentia*)—deserts.

*loca amoena, amoenitas locorum*—pleasant districts; charming surroundings.

## 3. WATER—RIVERS—SEA

*summa aqua*—the surface of the water.

*ex aqua exstare*—to stand out of the water.

*aqua est umbilico tenus*—the water reaches to the waist.

*aqua pectus aequat, superat*—the water is up to, is above, the chest.

<sup>1</sup> But *Pyrenaei montes, saltus* occur (B. G. 1. 1. 7; B. C. 1. 37. 1).

- (se) ex aqua emergere<sup>1</sup>—to come to the surface.  
 aquam ex flumine derivare—to draw off water from a river.  
 aquam ducere per hortum—to bring a stream of water through the garden.  
 aquae ductus (plur. aquarum ductus)<sup>2</sup>—a conduit; an aqueduct.  
 agros irrigare—to irrigate fields.  
 aqua viva, profluens (opp. stagnum)—running water.  
 aqua iugis, perennis—a perpetual spring.  
 frigidā, calidā lavari (Plin. Ep. 3. 5. 11)—to take a cold, warm, bath.  
 aquae, aquarum inops—ill-watered.  
 fluctuare or fluctuari—driven by the waves.  
 fluctibus iactari—tossed hither and thither by the waves.  
 fluctibus (undis) obrui,<sup>3</sup> submergi—to be engulfed.  
 gurgitibus hauriri—to be drowned in the eddies.  
 flumen citatum fertur—the river flows with a rapid current.  
 flumen imbribus auctum—a river swollen by the rain.  
 flumen super ripas effunditur } the river is over its banks,  
 flumen extra ripas diffluit } is in flood.  
 flumen agros inundat<sup>4</sup>—the river floods the fields.  
 flumen vado transire—to wade across, to ford a river.

<sup>1</sup> Also used metaphorically, e.g. (se) emergere ex malis (Nep. Att. 11. 1) to recover from misfortune. So emergere e fluctibus servitutis (Harusp. Resp. 23. 48).

<sup>2</sup> aquae ductio = the action, process of drawing off the water; canalis = the water-pipe, channel, conduit.

<sup>3</sup> So metaphorically, aere alieno obrutum esse, to be over head and ears in debt; nomen alicuius obruere perpetua oblivione, to drown a person's name in oblivion.

<sup>4</sup> Inundation = eluvio, not inundatio which is post-classical.

- flumine secundo—with the stream; downstream.  
 flumine adverso—against the stream; upstream.  
 Rhenus oritur or profluit ex Alpibus—the Rhine rises in the Alps.  
 accessus et recessus aestuum—ebb and flow (of tide).  
 decensus aestus—the ebb.  
 aestus maritimi mutuo accedentes et recedentes (N. D. 2. 53. 132)—the alternation of tides.  
 aestus ex alto se incitat (B. G. 3. 12)—the tide is coming in.  
 aestu rursus minuente—when the tide begins to go down.  
 mare ventorum vi agitur et turbatur—there is a storm at sea.  
 mare medium or internum<sup>1</sup>—the Mediterranean Sea.

## 4. FIRE

- ignem facere, accendere—to light, make a fire.  
 ignem tectis inferre, subicere—to set fire to houses.  
 ignem concipere, comprehendere—to take fire.  
 ignem excitare (pro Mur. 25. 51)—to make up, stir up a fire.  
 ignem alere—to keep up a fire.  
 accendere, incendere aedificia—to set buildings on fire.  
 inflammare urbem—to set fire to a city.  
 flammis corripī—to be devoured by the flames.  
 incendio flagrare, or simply conflagrare, ardere (Liv. 30. 7)  
 —to be on fire, in flames.  
 incendio deleri, absūmi—to be burned to ashes.  
 igni cremari, necari—to perish in the flames.

<sup>1</sup> The Romans called it mare nostrum (B. G. 5. 1). Similarly mare Oceanus (B. G. 3. 7), the Atlantic; mare superum, the Adriatic (Att. 8. 16. 1); mare inferum, the Etruscan Sea (Att. 8. 3. 5).

*ignem conclamare*—to raise an alarm of fire.  
*ventus ignem distulit* (B. G. 5. 43)—the wind spread  
 the conflagration.

## 5. AIR—SKY—CLIMATE—HEAVENLY BODIES

*aër terrae circumiectus* or  
*circumfusus* } the atmosphere.  
*aër qui est terrae proximus* }  
*susplicere*<sup>1</sup> (*in*) *caelum* } to raise the eyes to heaven ;  
*oculos tollere, attollere ad* } to look up to the sky.  
*caelum* }  
*sub divo*—in the open air.  
*orbis finiens* (Div. 2. 44. 92)—the horizon.  
*caelum* or *natura caeli*—climate.  
*caelum salubre, salubritas caeli* (opp. *grave, gravitas*)—  
 healthy climate.  
*caeli temperatio* }  
*aër calore et frigore temperatus* } temperate climate.  
*caeli asperitas*—rough climate.  
*caeli varietas*—variable climate.  
*caelestia*—(1) the heavenly bodies, (2) celestial pheno-  
 mena.  
*sol oritur, occidit*—the sun rises, sets.  
*ortus, occasus solis*—sunrise ; sunset.  
*sol*<sup>2</sup> (*luna*) *deficit, obscuratur*—the sun, moon, is eclipsed.  
*solis defectio*—an eclipse of the sun.  
*luna crescit ; decrescit, senescit*—the moon waxes, wanes.

<sup>1</sup> *susplicere* is also used figuratively, to look up to, esteem, honour,  
 e.g. *viros, honores*. Similarly *despicere*.

<sup>2</sup> For an account of an eclipse *vid.* Liv. 44. 37.

*motus stellarum constantes et rãti*—the regular courses of  
 the stars.  
*cursum conficere in caelo*—to run its course in the sky.  
*caelum astris distinctum et ornatum*—the star-lit sky ; the  
 firmament.  
*nox sideribus illustris*—a star-light night.  
*stellae errantes, vagae*—the planets.  
*stellae inerrantes* (N. D. 2.)  
 21. 54) } the fixed stars.  
*sidera certis locis infixã* }  
*orbis lacteus*—the milky way.  
*orbis signifer*—the zodiac.  
*vertex caeli, axis caeli, cardo caeli*—the pole.  
*orbis, pars (terrae), cingulus*—a zone.  
*orbis medius*—the temperate zone.

## 6. NATURAL PHENOMENA

*vocis imago*, or simply *imago*<sup>1</sup>—an echo.  
*saxa voci respondent* or *resõnant*—the rocks re-echo.  
*ventus remittit* (opp. *increbrescit*)—the wind is falling.  
*ventus cadit, cessat*—the wind dies down, is at rest.  
*ventis secundis, adversis uti*—to have favourable, contrary,  
 winds.  
*ventus se vertit in Africum*—the wind is turning to the  
 south-west.  
*tempestat cooritur*—a storm is rising.  
*imber tenet* (Liv. 23. 44. 6)—the rain continues.  
*imbres repente effusi*—a sudden shower.  
*tempestatem idoneam, bonam nancisci*—to meet with good  
 weather.

<sup>1</sup> Also metaphorically, e.g. *gloria virtuti resonat tamquam imago*  
 (Tusc. 3. 3), glory is as it were the echo of virtue.

*calor se frangit* (opp. *increscit*)—the heat is abating.

*sol ardet, urit*—the sun burns, scorches.

*ardore solis torreri*—to be dried up by the sun's heat.

*tanta vis frigoris insecuta est, ut*—the frost set in so severely that . . .

*frigore (gelu) rigere, torpere*—to be numb with cold.

*frigore confici*—to freeze to death.

*aestus et frigoris patientem esse*—to be able to bear heat and cold.

*tempestas cum magno fragore (caeli) tonitribusque* (Liv. 1. 16)—a storm accompanied by heavy claps of thunder.

*caelum tonitru contremitt*—the heavens are shaken by the thunder.

*fulmina*<sup>1</sup> *micant*—the lightning flashes.

*fulmen locum tetigit*—the lightning has struck somewhere.

*fulmine tangi, ici*  
*de caelo tangi, percūti* } to be struck by lightning.

*fulmine ictus*—struck by lightning.

*eruptiones ignium Aetnaeorum*—an eruption of Etna.

*Vesuvius evomit* (more strongly *eructat*) *ignes*—Vesuvius is discharging flame.

*venti ab ortu solis flant*—the east winds are blowing.

<sup>1</sup> Used sometimes figuratively, e.g. *fulmen verborum, fulmina eloquentiae, fulmina fortunae* (Tusc. 2. 27), *fulmina imperii* (Balb. 15. 34).

## II. SPACE AND TIME

### I. POINTS OF THE COMPASS—SITUATION

*spectare in (vergere ad) orientem (solem), occidentem*<sup>1</sup> (*solem*),  
*ad meridiem, in septentriones*—to lie to the east,  
west, south, north.

*spectare inter occasum solis et septentriones*—to be situated to the north-west.

*Germania quae* or *Germaniae ea pars quae, ad orientem, occidentem vergit*—eastern, western Germany.

*est a septentrionibus collis*—a hill lies to the north.

*situs loci*—the situation of a place.

*natura loci*—the natural position of a place.

*opportunitas loci* (B. G. 3. 14)—the advantageous situation of a place.

*opportuno loco situm* or *positum esse*—to be favourably situated.

*urbs situ ad aspectum praeclara est*—the city is very beautifully situated.

*oppidum mari adiacet*—the town lies near the sea.

*villa tangit viam*—the country-house stands near the road.

*oppidum colli impositum est*—the town stands on rising ground.

*oppidum monti subiectum est*—the town lies at the foot of a mountain.

*promunturium in mare procurrit*—a promontory juts out into the sea.

<sup>1</sup> "The east" and "the west" = *orientis, occidentis (solis) terrae, partes, regiones, gentes*. The adjectives *orientalis, occidentalis* are not used in good Latin. The north, i.e. northern countries, is represented by *terrae septentrionibus subiectae*; the south by *terra australis*.



*paeninsula in mare excurrit, procurrit*—a peninsula projects into the sea.

*promunturium superare*—to double a cape.

*urbs in sinu sita est*—the city is situate on a bay.

## 2. BOUNDARY—TERRITORY—DISTANCE

*tangere, attingere terram* } to be contiguous, adjacent  
*finitimum*<sup>1</sup> *esse terrae* } to a country.

*continentem esse terrae* or *cum terra* (Fam. 15. 2. 2)—  
to have the same boundaries; to be coterminous.

*Gallia Rhodano continetur* (vid. p. 46, note)—Gaul is bounded by the Rhine.

*Rhodanus Sequanos ab Helvetiis dividit*—the Rhine is the frontier between the Helvetii and the Sequani.

*fines (imperii) propagare, extendere, (longius) proferre*—to enlarge the boundaries of a kingdom.

(*ex*) *finibus excedere*—to evacuate territory.

*in Sequanis*—in the country of the Sequani.

*in Sequanos proficisci*—to invade the territory of the Sequani.

*porrigi ad septentriones*—to stretch northwards.

*haec gens pertinet usque ad Rhenum*—the territory of this race extends as far as the Rhine.

*in latitudinem, in longitudinem patere*—to extend in breadth, in length.

*late patere*<sup>2</sup> (also metaphorically vid. p. 138)—to have a wide extent.

<sup>1</sup> *vicinum esse*, to be neighbouring; used of houses, gardens, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *patere* denotes extension in its widest sense; *pertinere*, extension from one point to another, e.g. *ars et late patet et ad multos pertinet* (De Or. 1. 55. 235); *ex eo oppido pars ad Helvetios pertinet* (B. G. 1. 6. 3).

*imperium orbis terrarum terminis definitur*—the empire reaches to the ends of the world.

*longe, procul abesse ab urbe*—to be far from town.

*prope (propius, proxime) abesse*—to be not far away.

*paribus intervallis distare*—to be equidistant.

*tantundem viae est*—the road is the same length.

*longo spatio, intervallo interiecto*—at a great distance.

*intervallo locorum et temporum disiunctum esse*—to be separated by an immense interval of space and time.

*a mille passibus*—a mile away.

*e longinquo*—from a distance.

*loca longinqua*—distant places.

*ultimae terrae* } the most distant countries, the  
*extremae terrae partes* } world's end.

*longinquae nationes*—distant tribes.

## 3. ROAD—TRAVEL

*viam sternere (silice, saxo)*—to pave a road.

*substruere viam glareae* (Liv. 41. 27)—to make a gravel path.

*via strata*—a street, a made road.

*via trita*<sup>1</sup>—a well-trodden, much-frequented way.

*viam munire*<sup>2</sup>—to make a road.

*viam patefacere, aperire*—to open a route.

*ferro viam facere (per confertos hostes)*—to cut one's way (through the enemies' ranks).

*viam intercludere* } to obstruct a road; to close a route.  
*iter obstruere* }

<sup>1</sup> *tritus* is also used figuratively, e.g. *proverbium (sermone) tritum* (De Off. 1. 10. 33), *vocabulum latino sermone non tritum* (Acad. 1. 7. 27).

<sup>2</sup> Cf. in metaphorical sense, *viam ad honores alicui munire* (Mur. 10. 23).

- via fert, ducit aliquo*—a road leads somewhere.
- in viam se dare*  
*viae se committere* } to set out on a journey.
- viam ingredi, inire* (also metaphorically)—to enter upon a route; to take a road.
- rectā (viā)*—straight on.
- de via declinare, deflectere* (also metaphorically)—to turn aside from the right way; to deviate.
- (*de via*) *decedere alicui*—make way for any one.
- Appia via proficisci*—to set out by the Appian road.
- erranti viam monstrare*—to direct a person who has lost his way.
- errores Ulixis*—the wanderings of Ulysses.
- viam persequi* (also metaphorically)—to continue one's journey, pursue one's course.
- longam viam conficere*—to accomplish a long journey.
- fessus de via*—weary with travelling; way-worn.
- Hercules<sup>1</sup> in trivio, in bivio, in compitis*—Hercules at the cross-roads, between virtue and vice.
- iter facere*—(1) to take a journey, (2) to make, lay down a road (rare).
- una iter facere*—to travel together.
- iter ingredi (pedibus, equo, terra)*—to begin a journey (on foot, on horseback, by land).
- iter aliquo dirigere, intendere*  
*tendere aliquo* } to journey towards a place.
- longum itineris spatium emetiri*—to finish a very long journey.
- ex itinere redire<sup>2</sup>*—to return from a journey.

<sup>1</sup> *vid.* on this subject De Off. 1. 32. 118; Fam. 5. 12. 3.

<sup>2</sup> *reverti* means properly to turn back and retrace one's steps, after giving up one's intention of remaining longer in a place, or continu-

- in itinere<sup>1</sup>*—on a journey; by the way.
- iter terrestre, pedestre*—travel by land, on foot.
- itinerā diurna nocturnaue*—travelling day and night.
- iter unius diei* or simply *diei*—a day's journey.
- iter impeditum*—an impassable road.
- disiunctissimas ultimas terras peragrare* (not *permigrare*)  
—to travel through the most remote countries.
- peregrinatio*—a foreign journey.
- peregrinari, peregre esse*—to be travelling abroad.
- peregre proficisci*—to go abroad.
- aliquem proficiscentem prosequi*—to accompany any one when starting; to see a person off.
- aliquem proficiscentem votis ominibusque prosequi* (*vid.* p. 88, note)—to wish any one a prosperous journey.
- rus excurrere*—to make a pleasure-trip into the country.
- ruri vivere, rusticari*—to live in the country.
- vita rustica*—country life (the life of resident farmers, etc.)
- rusticatio, vita rusticana*—country life (of casual, temporary visitors).

#### 4. COMING—GOING

- pedibus ire*—to go on foot.
- discedere a, de, ex loco aliquo*  
*egredi loco;<sup>2</sup> excedere ex loco* } to leave a place.
- ing one's journey, cf. Div. 1. 15. 27, *itaque revertit ex itinere, cum iam progressus esset multorum dierum viam*. Similarly *reditus*=return, *reversio* generally=turning back. Cicero only uses *revenirē* in conjunction with *domum*.
- <sup>1</sup> *ex itinere* implies that the march was interrupted, thus there is a difference between *in itinere aliquem aggredi* and *ex itinere*, etc. In the same way distinguish *in fuga* and *ex fuga*, e.g. *ex fuga evadere, ex fuga dissipati*.
- <sup>2</sup> *relinquere*, e.g. *domum*, properly means to give up, renounce the possession or enjoyment of a place.

*decedere loco, de, ex loco*<sup>1</sup>—to quit a place for ever.  
*ingredi, intrare urbem, introire in urbem*—to enter a city.

*portâ ingredi, exire*—to go in at, go out of a gate.  
*extra portam egredi*—to go outside the gate.  
*commeare ad aliquem*—to go in and out of any one's house; to visit frequently.

*Romam venire, pervenire*—to come to Rome.  
*adventus Romam, in urbem*—arrival in Rome, in town.  
*in unum locum convenire, confluere*—to collect together at one spot.

*Romam concurrere* (Mil. 15. 39)—to stream towards Rome.  
*obviam ire alicui*—to meet any one.

*obviam venire alicui*—to go to meet some one.  
*obvium* or *obviam esse, obviam fieri*—to meet some one by chance.

*incidere in aliquem* } to meet, come across a per-  
*offendere, nancisci aliquem* } son; to meet casually.  
*obviam alicui aliquem mittere*—to send to meet a person.

## 5. RIDING—DRIVING

*curru vehi, in rheda* (Mil. 21. 55)—to drive.  
*equo vehi*—to ride.

*sternere equum*—to saddle a horse.

*conscendere equum* } to mount.  
*ascendere in equum* }

<sup>1</sup> Cf. especially *decedere (ex, de) provincia*, used regularly of a magistrate leaving his province on expiry of his term of office. Similarly, where life is compared to a province, *decedere (de) vita*, or merely *decedere*=to quit this life, die (cf. De Sen. 20. 73).

*descendere ex equo*—to dismount.  
*in equo sedere; equo insidere*—to be on horseback.  
*(in) equo haerere*—to sit a horse well; to have a good seat.

*calcaria subdere equo* }  
*calcaribus equum concitare* } to put spurs to a horse.

*equo citato* or *admisso*—at full gallop.

*freno remisso; effusis habenis*—with loose reins.

*equum in aliquem concitare*—ride against any one at full speed; charge a person.

*habras adducere*—to tighten the reins.

*habras permittere*—to slacken the reins.

*admittere, permittere equum* } to give a horse the reins.  
*frenos*<sup>1</sup> *dare equo* }

*agitare equum*—to make a horse prance.

*moderari equum*—to manage a horse.

*equi consternantur*—the horses are panic-stricken, run away.

*equos incitatos sustinere*—to bring horses to the halt when at full gallop.

## 6. WALKING—FOOTSTEPS—DIRECTION

*gradum facere*—to take a step.

*gradum addere* (sc. *gradui*) (Liv. 26. 9)—to increase one's pace.

*suspenso gradu*—on tiptoe.

*gradum sensim referre*—to retreat step by step.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *frenos, calcaria alicui adhibere*, used metaphorically.

*vestigia alicuius sequi, persequi, or vestigiis aliquem sequi, persequi* } to follow in any one's steps.  
*vestigii alicuius insistere, ingredi* (also metaph.) }

*loco or vestigio se non movere*—not to stir from one's place.  
*recta* (regione, via); *in directum*—in a straight line.  
*in obliquum*—in an oblique direction; sideways.  
*obliquo monte decurrere*—to run obliquely down the hill.  
*in contrarium; in contrarias partes*—in an opposite direction.

*in transversum, e transverso*—across; transversely.  
*quoquo versus; in omnes partes*—in all directions.  
*in diversas partes* or simply *diversi abeunt, discedunt*—they disperse in different directions.

*huc (et) illuc*—hither and thither.  
*ultra citroque*—on this side and on that; to and fro.  
*longe lateque, passim* (e.g. *fluere*)—far and wide; on all sides; everywhere.

## 7. MOVEMENT IN GENERAL

*se conferre in aliquem locum* } to go to a place.  
*petere locum* }  
*quo tendis?*—where are you going?  
*sublimem* or *sublime* (not *in sublime* or *sublimiter*) *ferri, abire*—to fly aloft; to be carried into the sky.  
*praecipitem ire; in praeceps deferri*—to fall down headlong.  
*in profundum deici*—to fall down into the abyss.  
*se deicere de muro*—to throw oneself from the ramparts.  
*deicere aliquem de saxo Tarpeio*—to throw some one down the Tarpeian rock.

*Nilus praecipitat*<sup>1</sup> *ex altissimis montibus*—the Nile rushes down from very high mountains.  
*se proripere ex domo*—to rush out of the house.  
*humii procumbere*—to fall on the ground.  
*humii prosternere aliquem*—to throw any one to the ground.  
*in terram cadere, decidere*—to fall to the earth.  
*in terram demergi*—to sink into the earth.  
*appropinquare urbi, rarely ad urbem*—to draw near to a city.  
*propius accedere ad urbem* or *urbem*—to advance nearer to the city.  
*longius progredi, procedere*—to march further forward.  
*Romam versus proficisci*—to advance in the direction of Rome.  
*ad Romam proficisci*—to set out for Rome.  
*properat, maturat proficisci*—he starts in all haste, precipitately.  
*consequi, assequi aliquem*—to catch some one up.  
*praecurrere aliquem (celeritate)* } to overtake and pass  
*post se relinquere aliquem* } some one.  
*multitudo circumfunditur alicui*—a crowd throngs around some one.  
*per totum corpus diffundi*—to spread over the whole body.

## 8. TIME IN GENERAL

*tempus praeterit, transit*—time passes.  
*tempus habere alicui rei*—to have time for a thing.

<sup>1</sup> *praecipitare* is also transitive, e.g. *praecipitare aliquem*, to hurl a person down; *ruere* always intransitive except in poetry.

*tempus mihi deest ad aliquid faciendum*—I have no time to do something.

*tempus consumere in aliqua re*—to pass one's time in doing something.

*tempus terere, conterere (in) aliqua re*—to waste time on something.

*tempus conferre ad aliquid*—to employ one's time in . . .

*tempus tribuere alicui rei*—to devote time to anything.

*tempus non amittere, perdere*—to lose no time.

*nullum tempus intermittere, quin (also ab opere, or ad opus)*  
—to devote every spare moment to . . . ; to work without intermission at a thing.

*tempus ducere*—to spend time.

*aliquid in aliud tempus, in posterum differre*—to put off till another time ; to postpone.

*nihil mihi longius est or videtur quam dum or quam ut*—I cannot wait till . . .

*nihil mihi longius est quam (c. Inf.)*—nothing is more tiresome to me than . . .

*tempus (spatium) deliberandi or ad deliberandum postulare, dare, sibi sumere*—to require, give, take time for deliberation.

*paucorum dierum spatium ad deliberandum dare*—to give some one a few days for reflection.

*tempori servire,<sup>1</sup> cedere*—to accommodate oneself to circumstances.

*ex quo tempore* or simply *ex quo*—since the time that, since (at the beginning of a sentence).

<sup>1</sup> The verb *servire* helps to form several phrases, e.g. *servire valetudini*, to be a valetudinarian ; *iracundiae*, to be unable to restrain one's anger ; *brevitati*, to be concise ; *communi utilitati*, to be devoted to the public good, etc.

*eo ipso tempore, cum ; tum ipsum, cum*—at the same moment that, precisely when.

*incidunt tempora, cum*—occasions arise for . . .

*tempus (ita) fert (not secum)*—circumstances demand.

*tempus maximum est, ut*—it is high time that . . .

*haec tempora, nostra haec aetas, memoria*—the present day.

*his temporibus, nostra (hac) aetate, nostra memoria, his (not nostris) diebus*—in our time ; in our days.

*nostra aetas multas victorias vidit*—our generation has seen many victories.

*memoria patrum nostrorum*—in our fathers' time.

*aetate (temporibus) Periclis*—in the time of Pericles.

*antiquis<sup>1</sup> temporibus*—in old days, in the olden time.

*libera re publica*—in the time of the Republic.

*tempora Caesariana*—the imperial epoch.

*media quae vocatur aetas*—the middle ages.

*Pericles summus vir illius aetatis*

*Pericles, quo nemo tum fuit clarior*

*Pericles, vir omnium, qui tum*

*fuere, clarissimus*

Pericles, the greatest man of his day.

*vir ut temporibus illis doctus*—a man of considerable learning for those times.

*tempore progrediente*—in process of time.

*primo quoque tempore*—at the first opportunity.

*hoc tempore*—at this moment.

*puncto temporis*—in an instant.

<sup>1</sup> *antiquitas* = the state of affairs in times gone by, not a division of time ; so *antiquitatis studia*, archaeology ; *veteres* or *antiqui poetae, populi*, the poets, people of antiquity ; *antiqua monumenta*, the relics of antiquity. *antiquitates* plur. is used for the institutions, usages of times gone by.

*momento*<sup>1</sup> *temporis*—at the important moment.  
*in ipso discrimine (articulo) temporis*—just at the critical moment.

*temporis causa*—on the spur of the moment.

*ad tempus*<sup>2</sup> *adesse*—to be there at a given time.

*ad exiguum tempus*  
*brevis or exigui temporis* } for a short time.

*satis longo intervallo*—after a fairly long interval.

*spatio temporis intermisso*—after some time.

*in praesentia, in praesens (tempus)*—at present; for the moment.

*in posterum; in futurum*—for the future.

*in perpetuum*—for ever.

*semel atque iterum; iterum ac saepius; identidem; etiam atque etiam*—more than once; repeatedly.

*futura providere* (not *praevidere*)—to foresee the future.

*futura or casus futuros (multo ante) prospicere*—to foresee the far distant future.

*futura non cogitare, curare*—to take no thought for the future.

*saeculi*<sup>3</sup> *consuetudo or ratio atque inclinatio temporis (temporum)*—the spirit of the times, the fashion.

*his moribus*—according to the present custom, fashion.

<sup>1</sup> *momentum* (i.e. *movimentum*) is properly that which sets in motion, which gives a decisive impulse to things, cf. Luc. iv. 819 *momentumque fuit mutatus Curio rerum*. Livy and later writers employ the word in the sense of a moment of time.

<sup>2</sup> *ad tempus* also means (1) according to the circumstances of the case, e.g. *ad tempus consilium capere*, (2) for a short time, temporarily.

<sup>3</sup> The *spirit* of a thing is usually rendered by such words as *natura, proprietates, ratio atque voluntas*, e.g. the spirit, genius of a language, *natura or proprietates sermonis*; the spirit of the laws, *voluntas et sententia legum*.

## 9. YEAR—SEASONS

*praeterito anno* (not *praeterlapso*)—in the past year.

*superiore, priore anno*—last year.

*proximo anno*—(1) last year, (2) next year.

*insequenti(e) anno* (not *sequente*)—in the following year.

*anno*<sup>1</sup> *peracto, circumacto, interiecto, intermisso*—after a year has elapsed.

*anno vertente*—in the course of the year.

*initio anni, ineunte anno*—at the beginning of the year.

*exeunte, extremo anno*—at the end of the year.

*singulis annis, diebus*—year by year; day by day.

*quinto quoque anno*—every fifth year.

*ad annum*—a year from now.

*amplius sunt (quam) viginti anni or viginti annis*—it is more than twenty years ago.

*viginti anni et amplius, aut plus*—twenty years and more.

*abhinc (ante) viginti annos or viginti his annis*—twenty years ago.

*quinque anni sunt or sextus annus est, cum te non vidi*—I have not seen you for five years.

*quinque annos or sextum (iam) annum abest*—he has been absent five years.

*anno ab urbe condita quinto*—in the fifth year from the founding of the city.

*commutationes temporum quadripartitae*—the succession of the four seasons.

*verno, aestivo, auctumnali, hiberno tempore*—in spring, summer, autumn, winter time.

*ineunte, primo vere*—at the beginning of spring.

<sup>1</sup> Unless *one* is emphasised *unus* is left out with the following words: *annus, mensis, dies, hora, and verbum*.

- ver appetit*—spring is approaching.  
*suavitas verni temporis*—the charms of spring.  
*summa aestate, hieme*—in the height of summer, depth of winter.  
*hiems subest*—winter is at hand.  
*hiemem tolerare*—to bear the winter.  
*anni descriptio*—the division of the year (into months, etc.)  
*annus (mensis, dies) intercalaris*—the intercalary year (month, day).  
*fasti*—the calendar (list of fasts and festivals).

## 10. DAY—DIVISIONS OF THE DAY

- ante lucem*—before daybreak.  
*prima luce*—at daybreak.  
*luce (luci)*—in full daylight.  
*ubi illuxit, luxit, diluxit*—when it was day.  
*lucet*—it is daylight.  
*diluculo*—in the morning twilight.  
*advesperascit*—evening is drawing on.  
*die, caelo vesperascente*—when it is growing dusk; towards evening.  
*multus dies* or *multa lux est*—the day is already far advanced.  
*ad multam noctem*—till late at night.  
*de nocte, de die*—while it is still night, day.  
*multa de nocte*—late at night.  
*intempesta, concubia nocte*—in the dead of night; at midnight.  
*silentio noctis*—in the silence of the night.  
*vicissitudines dierum noctiumque*—the succession of day and night.

- noctes diesque, noctes et dies, et dies et noctes, dies noctesque, diem noctemque*—night and day.  
*tempus matutinum, meridianum, vespertinum, nocturnum*,  
 —morning, noon, evening, night.  
*tempora matutina*—the morning hours.  
*in dies (singulos)*—from day to day.  
*in diem vivere*—to live from day to day, from hand to mouth.  
*alternis diebus*—every other day.  
*quattuor dies continui*—four successive days.  
*unus et alter dies*—one or two days.  
*dies unus, alter, plures intercesserant*—one, two, several days had passed, intervened.  
*diem proferre* (Att. 13. 14)—to adjourn, delay.  
*biduo serius*<sup>1</sup>—two days late.  
*horā citius*—an hour too soon.  
*postridie qui fuit dies Non. Sept. (Nonarum Septembrium)* (Att. 4. 1. 5)—on the day after, which was September 5th.  
*hodie qui est dies Non. Sept.; cras qui dies futurus est Non. Sept.*—to-day the 5th of September; to-morrow September the 5th.  
*dies hesternus, hodiernus, crastinus*—yesterday, to-day, to-morrow.  
*diem dicere colloquio*—to appoint a date for an interview.  
*ad diem constitutam*—at the appointed time.  
*diem videre, cum . . .*—to live to see the day when . . .  
*dies dolorem mitigabit*—time will assuage his grief.  
*quota hora est?*—what time is it?  
*tertia hora est*—it is the third hour (= 9 A.M.)  
*ad horam compositam*—at the time agreed on.

<sup>1</sup> Used absolutely "too late" = *sero*; if "too late for," "later than," always *serius (quam)*.

## III. PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY

- omnibus artubus contremiscere*—to tremble in every limb.  
*aures claudere, patefacere* (e.g. *veritati, assentatoribus*)—to turn a deaf ear to, to open one's ears to . . .  
*aures praebere alicui*—to listen to a person.  
*aures alicuius obtundere* or simply *obtundere (aliquem)*—to din a thing into a person's ears.  
*in aurem alicui dicere (insusurrare) aliquid*—to whisper something in a person's ear.  
*ad aures alicuius (not alicui) pervenire, accidere*—to come to some one's ears.  
*aures erigere*—to prick up one's ears.  
*oratio in aures influit*—his words find an easy hearing, are listened to with pleasure.  
*aures elegantes, terētes, tritae* (De Or. 9. 27)—a fine, practised ear.  
*neque auribus neque oculis satis consto*—I am losing my eyesight and getting deaf.  
*caput aperire* (opp. *operire*)—to uncover one's head.  
*capite aperto* (opp. *operto*)—bare-headed.  
*capite obvoluto*—with head covered.  
*caput demittere*—to bow one's head.  
*caput praecidere*—to cut off a man's head.  
*caput<sup>1</sup> parieti impingere*—to strike one's head against the wall.

<sup>1</sup> *caput* has several metaphorical meanings, e.g. *capita coniurationis* (Liv. 9. 26), the leaders of the conspiracy; *caput Graeciae*, the capital of Greece; *caput cenae*, the chief dish; *capita legis*, the headings, clauses of a law; *id quod caput est*, the main point; *de capite deducere* (Liv. 6. 15), to subtract from the capital; *capitis periculum*,

- cervices* (in Cic. only in plur.) *frangere alicui* or *alicuius*—to break a person's neck.  
*gladius cervicibus impendet*—a sword hangs over his neck.  
*hostis<sup>1</sup> in cervicibus alicuius est*—the foe is at our heels, is upon us.  
*promittere crinem, barbam*—to grow one's hair, beard long.  
*passis crinibus*—with dishevelled hair.  
*capilli horrent*—his hair stands on end.  
*capilli compti, compositi* (opp. *horridi*)—well-ordered, well-brushed hair.  
*extremis digitis aliquid attingere*—to touch with the fingertips.  
*frontem contrahere, adducere* (opp. *explicare*)—to frown.  
*frontem ferire, percutere*—to beat one's brow.  
*in fronte alicuius inscriptum est*—one can see it in his face.  
*ab alicuius latere non discedere*—to be always at a person's side.  
*a latere regis esse*—to belong to the king's bodyguard.  
*manum (dextram) alicui porrigere*—to give one's hand to some one.  
*manum non vertere alicuius rei causa<sup>2</sup>*—to make not the slightest effort; not to stir a finger.

mortal peril; *capitis deminutio (maxima, media, minima)* (Liv. 22. 60), deprivation of civil rights. *caput* is often combined with *fons* = source, origin, e.g. *ille fons et caput Socrates* (Cic. De Or. 1. 42); *in aegritudine est fons miseriarum et caput* (Cic.) By metonymy *caput* is used with *liberum* (and *noxium*) (Verr. 2. 32. 79) with the meaning of a free (guilty) person, individual.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *velut in cervicibus habere hostem* (Liv. 44. 39); *bellum ingens in cervicibus est* (Liv. 22. 33. 6).

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *ne digitum quidem porrigere alicuius rei causa*.



*manus inicere, inferre, afferre alicui*—to lay violent hands on a person.

*manus tollere*—to raise one's hands in astonishment.

*manus dare*—to own oneself conquered, surrender.

*manu ducere aliquem*—to lead some one by the hand.

*manu* or *in manu tenere aliquid*—to hold something in one's hand.

*in manibus habere aliquid* (also metaphorically)—to have something in one's hands, on hand.

*de manu in manus* or *per manus tradere aliquid*—to pass a thing from hand to hand.

*ex* or *de manibus alicui* or *alicuius extorquere aliquid*—to wrest from a person's hand.

*e manibus dimittere*—to let go from one's hands.

*in alicuius manus venire, pervenire*—to come into some one's hands.

*in alicuius manus incidere*—to fall unexpectedly into some one's hands.

*in manus (m) sumere aliquid*—to take something into one's hand.

*in manibus*<sup>1</sup> *aliquem gestare*—to carry in one's arms.

*e (de) manibus effugere*,<sup>2</sup> *elābi*—to slip, escape from the hands.

*inter manus auferre aliquem*—to carry some one away in one's arms.

<sup>1</sup> Notice too *liberos de parentum complexu avellere* (Verr. 2. 1. 3. 7), to snatch children from their parents' arms (not *brachium*), so *alicuius complexu mori*; *in alicuius complexu haerere*. *medium aliquem amplecti*, to take to one's arms, embrace; *libentissimo animo accipere*, to welcome with open arms.

<sup>2</sup> Distinguish *effugere aliquid*, to escape the touch of, e.g. *invidiam, mortem*; and *effugere ex aliqua re*, to escape from a position one is already in, e.g. *e carcere, e caede, e praelio*. Notice *fugit me*, it escapes my notice.

*compressis manibus sedere* (proverb.) (Liv. 7. 13)—to sit with folded arms; to be inactive.

*mordicus tenere aliquid*—to hold fast in the teeth (also metaphorically, obstinately).

*oculos conicere in aliquem*—to turn one's gaze on; to regard.

*oculos circumferre*—to look in every direction.

*in omnes partes aciem (oculorum) intendere*—to gaze intently all around.

*omnium oculos (et ora) ad se convertere*—to draw every one's eyes upon one.

*omnium animos* or *mentes in se convertere*—to attract universal attention.

*conspici, conspicuum esse aliqua re*—to make oneself conspicuous.

*oculos (aures, animum*<sup>1</sup>) *advertere ad aliquid*—to turn one's eyes (ears, attention) towards an object.

*oculi in vultu alicuius habitant*—his eyes are always fixed on some one's face.

*oculos figere in terra* and *in terram*—to keep one's eyes on the ground.

*oculos pascere aliqua re* (also simply *pasci aliqua re*)—to feast one's eyes with the sight of . . .

*oculos deicere, removere ab aliqua re*—to turn one's gaze away from an object.

*oculos operire (morienti)*<sup>2</sup>—to close the eyes of a dying person.

*oculorum aciem alicui praestringere* (also simply *praestringere*)—to dazzle a person.

*oculos, lumina amittere*—to lose one's sight.

<sup>1</sup> *animum advertere aliquid* = *animadvertere aliquid* = to notice a thing; *animadvertere in aliquem* = to punish a person.

<sup>2</sup> To shut one's eyes to a thing, *conivere in aliqua re*.

*oculis privare aliquem*  
*luminibus orbare aliquem* } to deprive a person of his eyes.  
*oculis captum esse*<sup>1</sup> (vid. p. 36, note)—to be blind.  
*ante oculos aliquid versatur*—something presents itself to my vision.  
*oculis, ante oculos (animo) proponere aliquid*—to picture a thing to oneself; to imagine.  
*ante oculos vestros* (not *vobis*) *res gestas proponite*—picture to yourselves the circumstances.  
*cernere et videre aliquid*—to see clearly, distinctly.  
*oculis mentis videre aliquid*—to see with the mind's eye.  
*in oculis aliquem ferre*  
*aliquis est mihi in oculis* } to cherish as the apple of one's eye.  
*abire ex oculis, e conspectu alicuius*—to go out of sight, disappear.  
*venire in conspectum alicuius*—to come in sight.  
*se in conspectum dare alicui*—to show oneself to some one.  
*fugere alicuius conspectum, aspectum*—to keep out of a person's sight.  
*in conspectu omnium* or *omnibus inspectantibus*—before every one, in the sight of the world.  
*omnia uno aspectu, conspectu intueri*—to take in everything at a glance.  
*non apparere*—to have disappeared.  
*pedibus obterere, conculcare*—to trample under foot.  
*ad pedes alicuius accidere*—to fall at some one's feet.  
*ad pedes alicuius se proicere, se abicere, procumbere, se prosternere*—to throw oneself at some one's feet.  
*ad pedes alicuius iacere, stratum esse (stratum iacere)*—to prostrate oneself before a person.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *caecatus, occaecatus cupiditate, stultitia.*

*quod ante pedes est* or *positum est, non videre*—to fail to see what lies before one.  
*sanguine manare, redundare*—to drip blood; to be deluged with blood.  
*vultum fingere*—to dissemble, disguise one's feelings.  
*vultus ficti simulatique*—a feigned expression.  
*vultum componere ad severitatem*—to put on a stern air.  
*vultum non mutare*—to keep one's countenance, remain impassive.

#### IV. PROPERTIES OF THE HUMAN BODY

##### 1. FEELINGS—SENSATIONS—POWERS

*sensus sani, integri, incorrupti*—sound, unimpaired senses.  
*sensibus praeditum esse*—to be endowed with sense.  
*sensu audiendi carere*—not to possess the sense of hearing.  
*sub sensum* or *sub oculos, sub aspectum* } to come within  
*cadere* } the sphere of  
*sensibus* or *sub sensus subiectum esse* } the senses.  
*sensibus percipi*—to be perceptible to the senses.  
*res sensibus* or *oculis subiectae* }  
 (De Fin. 5. 12. 36) } the world of sense, the  
*res quas oculis cernimus* } visible world.  
*res externae* }  
*sensus movere* (more strongly *pellere*)—to make an impression on the senses.  
*aliquid sensus suaviter afficit*  
*aliquid sensus iucunditate* } a thing makes a pleasant  
*perfundit* } impression on the senses.  
*pulsu externo, adventicio agitari*—to be affected by some external impulse, by external impressions.

*sevocare mentem a sensibus* (De Nat. D. 3. 8. 21)—to free one's mind from the influences of the senses.

*aliquid a sensibus meis abhorret*—something offends my instincts, goes against the grain.

*vires corporis* or merely *vires*—bodily strength.

*vires colligere*—to gain strength.

*vires aliquem deficiunt*—to lose strength.

*dum vires suppetunt*—as long as one's strength holds out.

*bonis esse viribus*—to be robust, vigorous.

*pro viribus* or *pro mea parte* } as well as I can ; to the  
*pro virili parte*<sup>1</sup> (cf. p. 70) } best of my ability.

## 2. BIRTH—LIFE

*in lucem edi*—to see the light, come into the world.

*ei, propter quos hanc lucem aspeximus*—those to whom we owe our being.

*tollere*<sup>2</sup> or *suscipere liberos*—to accept as one's own child ; to make oneself responsible for its nurture and education.

*aliquem in liberorum loco habere*—to treat as one's own child.

*sexus* (not *genus*) *virilis, muliebris*—the male, female sex.  
*patre, (e) matre natus*—son of such and such a father, mother.

*Cato Uticensis ortus erat a Catone Censorio*—Cato of Utica was a direct descendant of Cato the Censor.

<sup>1</sup> *pro virili parte* is distinct from the other expressions, as implying more assurance and confidence on the part of the speaker.

<sup>2</sup> It was the custom for a Roman father to lift up his new-born child, which was laid on the ground at his feet ; hence the expression *tollere, suscipere*.

*originem ab aliquo trahere, ducere*—to trace one's descent from some one.

*Romae natus, (a) Roma oriundus*—a native of Rome.

*cuias es?*—what country do you come from ?

*natione, genere Anglus*—an Englishman by birth.

*ortus ab Anglis* or *oriundus ex Anglis*—a native of England.

*urbs patria* or simply *patria*—native place.

*animam, spiritum ducere*—to breathe, live.

*aëra spiritu ducere*—to breathe the air.

*animam continere*—to hold one's breath.

*cursu exanimari* (B. G. 2. 23. 1)—to run till one is out of breath.

*spiritum intercludere alicui*—to suffocate a person.

*in vita esse*—to be alive.

*vita* or *hac luce frui*—to enjoy the privilege of living ; to be alive.

*vitam beatam (miseram) degere*—to live a happy (unhappy) life.

*vitam, aetatem (omnem aetatem, omne aetatis tempus) agere (honeste, ruri, in litteris), degere, traducere*—to live (all) one's life (honourably, in the country, as a man of learning).

*dum vita suppetit ; dum (quoad) vivo*—as long as I live.

*si vita mihi suppetitat*<sup>1</sup> } if I live till then.  
*si vita suppetit* }

*quod reliquum est vitae*—the rest of one's life.

*vitae cursum* or *curriculum*<sup>2</sup> *conficere*—to finish one's career.

<sup>1</sup> *suppetitare* (1) transitive, to supply sufficiently ; (2) intrans. to be present in sufficient quantities = *suppetere*.

<sup>2</sup> *vitae (vivendi) cursus* or *curriculum* = life, career—considering its duration, length. Life = biography is not *curriculum vitae*, but simply *vita, vitae descriptio*.

*Homerus fuit*<sup>1</sup> *multis annis ante Roman conditam*—Homer lived many years before the foundation of Rome.

### 3. TIME OF LIFE

(The terms for the different ages of man are *infans, puer, adulescens, iuuenis, senior, senex, grandis natu.*)

*ea aetate, id aetatis esse*—to be of such and such an age.

*a puero (is), a parvo (is), a parvulo (is)*—from youth up.

*a teneris unguiculis* (ἐξ ἀπαλῶν ὀνύχων) (Fam. 1. 6. 2)

—from one's cradle, from one's earliest childhood.

*ab ineunte (prima) aetate* (De Or. 1. 21. 97)—from one's entry into civil life.

*ex pueris excedere*—to leave one's boyhood behind one, become a man.

*flos aetatis*—the prime of youthful vigour.

*aetate florere, vigere*  
*integra aetate esse* } to be in the prime of life.

*adulescentia deferbuit*—the fires of youth have cooled.

*aetate progrediente*—with advancing years.

*aetate ingravescente*—with the weight, weakness of declining years.

*aetas constans, media, firmata, corroborata* (not *virilis*)—manhood.

*grandior factus*  
*corroborata, firmata aetate* } having reached man's estate.

*sui iuris factum esse*—to have become independent, be no longer a minor.

*aetate provectum esse* (not *aetate provecta*)—to be advanced in years.

<sup>1</sup> To live, speaking chronologically, is *esse*; *vivere* denotes to be alive, pass one's life, e.g. *laute, in otio*.

*longius aetate provectum esse*—to be more advanced in years.

*grandis natu*—aged.

*aetate affecta esse*—to be infirm through old age.

*vires consenescent*—to become old and feeble.

*senectute, senio confectum esse*—to be worn out by old age.

*exacta aetate mori*—to die at a good old age.

*ad summam senectutem pervenire*—to live to a very great age.

*senectus nobis obrēpit*—old age creeps on us insensibly.

*admodum adulescens, senex*—still quite a young (old) man.

*extrema aetas*  
*extremum tempus aetatis* } the last stage of life, one's last days.

*vita occidens*—the evening of life.

*aequalem esse alicuius*—to be a contemporary of a person.

*maior (natu)*—the elder.

*aetate alicui antecedere, anteire*—to be older than.

*quot annos natus es?*  
*qua aetate es?* } how old are you?

*tredecim annos natus sum*—I am thirteen years old.

*tertium decimum annum ago*—I am in my thirteenth year.

*puer decem annorum*—a boy ten years old.

*decimum aetatis annum ingredi*—to be entering on one's tenth year.

*decem annos vixisse*—to be ten years old.

*decimum annum excessisse, egressum esse*—to be more than ten years old, to have entered on one's eleventh year.

*minorem esse viginti annis*—to be not yet twenty.

*tum habebam decem annos*—I was ten years old at the time.

*centum annos complere*  
*vitam ad annum centesimum*  
*perducere.* } to reach one's hundredth  
 year, to live to be a  
 hundred.

*accessio paucorum annorum*—the addition of a few years.  
*tertiam iam aetatem videre*—to be middle-aged (*i.e.* between thirty and forty).

*in aetatem alicuius, in annum incidere*—to happen during a person's life, year of office.

*omnium suorum* or *omnibus suis superstitem esse*—to outlive, survive all one's kin.

*homines qui nunc sunt* (opp.)  
*qui tunc fuerunt* } our contemporaries; men  
*homines huius aetatis, nos-*  
*trae memoriae* } of our time.

*posterī*—posterity.

*scriptores aetate posteriores* or *inferiores*—later writers.

#### 4. HUNGER—THIRST

*esurire*—to be hungry.

*fame laborare, premi*—to be tormented by hunger, to be starving.

*famem tolerare, sustentare*—to endure the pangs of hunger.

*inediā mori* or *vitam finire*—to starve oneself to death.

*fame confici, perire, interire*—to die of starvation.

*fame necari*—to be starved to death (as punishment).

*famem, sitim explere*  
*famem sitimque depellere cibo*  
*et potione* } to allay one's hunger, thirst.

*siti cruciari, premi*—to suffer agonies of thirst.

*sitim colligere*—to become thirsty.

*sitim haustu gelidae aquae sedare*—to slake one's thirst by a draught of cold water.

*famis et sitis*<sup>1</sup> *patientem esse*—to be able to endure hunger and thirst.

#### 5. LAUGHTER—TEARS

*risum edere, tollere*<sup>2</sup>—to begin to laugh.

*cachinnum tollere, edere*—to burst into a roar of laughter.

*risum movere, concitare*—to raise a laugh.

*risum elicere* (more strongly *excitere*) *alicui*—to make a person laugh.

*risum captare*—to try and raise a laugh.

*risum tenere vix posse*  
*risum aegre continere posse* } to be scarcely able to restrain  
 one's laughter.

*aliquid in risum vertere*—to make a thing ridiculous, turn it into a joke.

*lacrimas, vim lacrimarum effundere, profundere*—to burst into a flood of tears.

*in lacrimas effundi* or *lacrimis perfundi*—to be bathed in tears.

*lacrimis abortis*—with tears in one's eyes.

*multis cum lacrimis*  
*magno cum fletu* } with many tears.

*lacrimas tenere non posse*  
*fletum cohibere non posse*  
*vix mihi tempero*  
*vix me contineo* } *quin lacrimem* } to be hardly able to  
 restrain one's tears.

<sup>1</sup> *sitis* is also used metaphorically—e.g. *libertatis sitis* (Rep. 1. 43. 66), so *sitire*—e.g. *honores* (De Fin. 4. 5. 3), *libertatem* (Rep. 1. 43. 66), *sanguinem* (Phil. 2. 7. 20). The participle *sitiens* takes the Gen. when used of a habit—e.g. *sitiens virtutis* (Planc. 5. 13).

<sup>2</sup> Not *in risum erumpere*, which only occurs in late Latin. However, *risus, vox, fletus erumpit* is classical, similarly *indignatio* (Liv. 4. 50), *furor, cupiditates* (Cael. 12. 28).

*lacrimas* or *fletum alicui movere*—to move to tears.  
*prae lacrimis loqui non posse*—to be unable to speak for emotion.

*gaudio lacrimare*—to weep for joy.

*hinc illae lacrimae* (proverb.) (Ter. And. 1. 1. 99; Cael. 25. 61) hence these tears; there's the rub.

*lacrimula* (Planc. 31. 76) } crocodiles' tears.  
*lacrimae simulatae* }

## 6. HEALTH—SICKNESS

*bona* (*firma, prospera*) *valetudine*<sup>1</sup> *esse* or *uti* (*vid.* p. 84, note)—to enjoy good health.

*valetudini consulere, operam dare*—to take care of one's health.

*firma corporis constitutio* or *affectio*—a good constitution.

*infirma, aegra valetudine esse* or *uti*—to be ill, weakly.

*in morbum incidit* } he fell ill.  
*aegrotare coepit* }

*morbo tentari* or *corrīpi*—to be attacked by disease.

*morbo affligi*—to be laid on a bed of sickness.

*lecto teneri*—to be confined to one's bed.

*vehementer, graviter aegrotare, iacere* }  
*gravi morbo affectum esse, conflictari,* } to be seriously ill.  
*vexari* }

*leviter aegrotare, minus valere*—to be indisposed.

*aestu et febris iactari*—to have a severe attack of fever.

*omnibus membris captum esse*<sup>2</sup>—to be affected by disease in every limb; to be paralysed.

<sup>1</sup> *valetudo* is a neutral term = state of health. *sanitas* = soundness of mind, reason—e.g. *ad sanitatem reverti*, to recover one's reason.

<sup>2</sup> Note *auribus, oculis, captum esse*, to be deaf, blind; *mente captum esse*, to be mad.

*ex pedibus laborare, pedibus aegrum esse*—to have the gout.  
*pestilentia* (not *pestis*) *in urbem (populum) invadit*—the plague breaks out in the city.

*animus relinquit aliquem*—a man loses his senses, becomes unconscious.

*morbus ingravescit*<sup>1</sup>—the disease gets worse.

*morbo absūmi* (Sall. Jug. 5. 6)—to be carried off by a disease.

*assidere aegrotō* (Liv. 25. 26)—to watch by a sick man's bedside.

*aegrotum curare*—to treat as a patient (used of a doctor).

*curationes*—method of treatment.

*aegrotum sanare* (not *curare*)—to cure a patient.

*ex morbo convalescere* (not *reconvalescere*)—to recover from a disease.

*e gravi morbo recreari* or *se colligere*—to recruit oneself after a severe illness.

*melius ei factum est*—he feels better.

*valetudinem (morbum) excusare*<sup>2</sup> } to excuse oneself on the  
 (Liv. 6. 22. 7), *causari* } score of health.  
*valetudinis excusatione uti* }

## 7. SLEEP—DREAMS

*cubitum ire*—to go to bed.

*somno* or *quieti se tradere*—to lay oneself down to sleep.

*somnum capere non posse*—to be unable to sleep.

<sup>1</sup> The comparative and superlative of *aeger* and *aegrotus* are not used in this connection, they are replaced by such phrases as *vehementer, graviter aegrotare, morbus ingravescit*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> But *se excusare alicui* or *apud aliquem (de or in aliqua re)* = to excuse oneself to some one about a thing.

- curae somnum mihi adimunt, dormire me non sinunt*—I cannot sleep for anxiety.
- somnum oculis meis non vidi* (Fam. 7. 30)—I haven't had a wink of sleep.
- arte, graviter dormire (ex lassitudine)*—to sleep soundly (from fatigue).
- artus somnus aliquem complectitur* (Rep. 6. 10)—to fall fast asleep.
- somno captum, oppressum esse*—to be overcome by sleep.
- sopitum esse*—to be sound asleep.
- in lucem dormire*—to sleep on into the morning.
- somno solvi*—to awake.
- (*e*) *somno excitare, dormientem excitare*—to rouse, wake some one.
- e lecto* or *e cubili surgere*—to rise from one's bed, get up.
- per somnum, in somnis* } in a dream.
- per quietem, in quiete* }
- in somnis videre aliquid* or *speciem*—to see something in a dream.
- in somnis visus (mihi) sum videre*—I dreamed I saw . . .
- species mihi dormienti oblata est*—I saw a vision in my dreams.
- somnium verum evādit* (Div. 2. 53. 108)—my dream is coming true.
- somnium interpretari*—to explain a dream.
- somniorum interpretas, coniator*—an interpreter of dreams.
- somniare de aliquo*—to dream of a person.

## 8. DEATH

- (*de*) *vita decedere* or merely *decedere* }  
 (*ex*) *vita excedere, ex vita abire* } to depart this life.  
*de vita exire, de (ex) vita migrare* }  
*mortem (diem supremum) obire* }  
*supremo vitae die*—on one's last day.
- animam edere* or *efflare* }  
*extremum vitae spiritum edere* } to give up the ghost.
- animam agere*—to be at one's last gasp.
- mors immatura* or *praematura*—an untimely death.
- mature decedere*—to die young.
- subita morte exstingui*—to be cut off by sudden death.
- necessaria* (opp. *voluntaria*) *morte mori* }  
*morbo perire, absūmi, consūmi* } to die a natural  
*debitum naturae reddere*<sup>1</sup> (Nep. Reg. 1) } death.
- mortem sibi consciscere*<sup>2</sup>—to commit suicide.
- se vita privare*—to take one's own life.
- manus, vim sibi afferre*—to lay hands on oneself.
- vitae finem facere*—to put an end to one's life.
- talem vitae exitum* (not *finem*) *habuit* (Nep. Eum. 13)—  
 such was the end of . . . (used of a violent death).
- mortem oppetere*—to meet death (by violence).
- mortem occumbere pro patria*—to die for one's country.

<sup>1</sup> *sua morte defungi* or *mori* is late Latin, cf. Inscr. Orell. 3453 *debitum naturae persolvit*.

<sup>2</sup> *se interficere, se occidere, se necare* are rare. During the classic period, when suicide was not common, *ipse* is often added—e.g. *Crassum se ipsum interemisisse* (Cic. Scaur. 2. 16), *Lucretia se ipsa interemit* (Fin. 2. 20. 66); but later, when suicide had become frequent, *se interemit*; *nonnulli semet interemerunt* (Suet. Iul. 89), etc., occur commonly.

*sanguinem suum pro patria effundere*, or *profundere*—to shed one's blood for one's fatherland.

*vitam profundere pro patria* } to sacrifice oneself for  
*se morti offerre pro salute patriae* } one's country.

*dare venenum in pane*—to give a person poison in bread.

*venenum sumere, bibere*—to take poison.

*veneno sibi mortem consciscere*—to poison oneself.

*poculum mortis (mortiferum) exhaurire* (Cluent. 11. 31)—to drain the cup of poison.

*potestas vitae necisque*—power over life and death.

*plagam extremam* or *mortiferam infligere*—to inflict a death-blow.

*e* or *de medio tollere*—to remove a person.

*perii! actum est de me!* (Ter. Ad. 3. 2. 26)—I'm undone!  
 it's all up with me!

## 9. BURIAL

*funere efferrī* or simply *efferrī* (*publice; publico, suo sumptu*)  
 —to be interred (at the expense of the state, at one's own cost).

*sepultura aliquem afficere*—to bury a person.

*iusta facere, solvere alicui* } to perform the last rites  
*supremo officio in aliquem fungi* } for a person.

*funus alicui facere, ducere* (Cluent. 9. 28)—to carry out the funeral obsequies.

*funus alicuius exsequi* } to attend a person's  
*exsequias alicuius funeris prosequi* } funeral.

*supremis officiis aliquem prosequi* (*vid.* p. 88, note)—to perform the last offices of affection.

*mortuum in sepulcro condere*—to entomb a dead body.

*aliquem mortuum*<sup>1</sup> *cremare* (Sen. 23. 84)—to burn a corpse.  
*pompa funebris*—a funeral procession.

*funus* or *exsequias celebrare*—to celebrate the obsequies.

*ludos funebres alicui dare*—to give funeral games in honour of a person.

*oratio funebris*<sup>2</sup>—a funeral oration.

*sepulturae honore carere* } to be deprived of the rites of  
*iustis exsequiarum carere* } burial.

*elogium in sepulcro incisum*—the epitaph.

*sepulcro* (Dat.) or *in sepulcro hoc inscriptum est*—this is the inscription on his tomb . . .

*hic situs est . . .*—here lies . . .

*aliquem in rogam imponere*—to place on the funeral-pyre.

*proiici inhumatum (in publicum)*—to be cast out unburied.

## V. HUMAN LIFE; ITS VARIOUS RELATIONS AND CONDITIONS

### I. CIRCUMSTANCE—SITUATION—DIFFICULTY

*res humanae* or simply *res*—human life.

*haec est rerum humanarum* } that is the way of the world;  
*condicio* } such is life.

*sic vita hominum est* }  
*ita (ea lege, ea condicione) nati sumus*—this is our natural tendency, our destiny; nature compels us.

<sup>1</sup> "Corpse" usually = *corpus mortui* or simply *corpus*. *cadaver* is a corpse which has begun to decompose.

<sup>2</sup> For eulogy, panegyric, use *laudatio funebris* or simply *laudatio*, cf. Mil. 13. 33; Liv. 5. 50.



*res externas* or *humanas despiciere*—to despise earthly things.

*res humanas infra se positas arbitrari*—to feel superior to the affairs of this life.

*meliore (deteriore) condicione esse, uti*—to find one's circumstances altered for the better (the worse.)

*condicio ac fortuna hominum infimi generis*—the position of the lower classes.

*res meae meliore loco, in meliore causa sunt meliorem in statum redigor* } my position is considerably improved; my prospects are brighter.

*aliquem in antiquum statum, in pristinum restituere*—to restore a man to his former position.

*in tanta rerum (temporum) iniquitate*—under such unfavourable circumstances.

*res dubiae, perditae, afflictæ*—a critical position; a hopeless state of affairs.

*in angustias adducere aliquem*—to place some one in an embarrassing position.

*in angustiis, difficultatibus, esse or versari angustiis premi, difficultatibus affici* } to be in a dilemma; in difficulties.

*agitur praeclare, bene cum aliquo*—so-and-so is in a very satisfactory position; prospers.

*res ita est, ita (sic) se habet*—the facts are these; the matter stands thus.

*eadem (longe alia) est huius rei ratio*—the case is exactly similar (entirely different).

*hoc longe aliter, secus est*—this is quite another matter.

*res (ita) fert*—circumstances make this necessary; the exigencies of the case are these.

*pro re (nata), pro tempore pro tempore et pro re* } according to circumstances.

*res eo* or *in eum locum deducta est, ut . . .*—the matter has gone so far that . . .; the state of affairs is such that . . .

*quo loco res tuae sunt?*—how are you getting on?

*eadem est causa mea* or *in eadem causa sum*—my circumstances have not altered.

*si quid (humanitus) mihi accidat* or *acciderit*—if anything should happen to me; if I die.

*quæ cum ita sint*—under such circumstances.

*utcumque res ceciderit*—whatever happens; in any case.

## 2. COMMENCEMENT—END—RESULT

*initium capere; incipere ab aliqua re*—to begin with a thing.

*initium facere, ducere, sumere (alicuius rei)*—to commence a thing.

*ab exiguis initiis proficisci*—to start from small beginnings. *parare* with Inf.

*aggredi ad aliquid faciendum* } to prepare to do a thing.

*incunabula<sup>1</sup> doctrinae*—the origin, first beginnings of learning.

*finem facere alicuius rei finem imponere, afferre, constituere alicui rei* } to finish, complete, fulfil, accomplish a thing.

*ad finem aliquid adducere*

*ad exitum aliquid perducere*

*finem habere*—to come to an end.

<sup>1</sup> *incunabula* literally swaddling-clothes. *cunabula*, cradle, is not used in this metaphorical sense except in post-Augustan Latin.

*aliquid (bene, prospere) succedit* or *procedit* (opp. *parum procedere, non succedere*)—the matter progresses favourably, succeeds.

*eventum, exitum (felitem) habere*—to turn out (well); to result (satisfactorily).

*quorsum haec res cadet* or *evadet?*—what will be the issue, end, consequence of the matter?

*ad irritum redigere aliquid*—to frustrate, nullify.

*res aliter cecidit ac putaveram*—the result has surprised me; I was not prepared for this development.

*quid illo fiet?*—what will become of him?

*quid huic homini (also hoc homine) faciam?*—what am I to do with this fellow?

### 3. CAUSE—MOTIVE—ORIGIN

*causam afferre*—to quote as a reason; give as excuse.

*iustis de<sup>1</sup> causis*—for valid reasons.

*magnae (graves) necessariae causae*—cogent, decisive reasons.

*non sine causa*—on good grounds; reasonably.

*quid causae fuit cur . . .?*—how came it that . . .?

*causa posita est in aliqua re*  
*causa repetenda est ab aliqua*  
*re (not quaerenda)* } the motive, cause, is to be found in . . .

*multae causae me impulerunt ad aliquid* or *ut . . .*—I was induced by several considerations to . . .

*causam interponere* or *interserere*—to interpose, put forward an argument, a reason.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the order; so regularly *ea* and *qua de causa*; but *ob eam causam* not *eam ob causam*. For the meaning of *iustus* cf. xvi. 5 *bellum iustum* and xvi. 10a *praelium iustum*.

*praetendere, praetexere aliquid*—to make something an excuse, pretext.

*causam idoneam nancisci*—to find a suitable pretext.

*per causam* (with Gen.)—under the pretext, pretence of . . .

*causae rerum et consecutiones*—cause and effect.

*causae extrinsecus allatae* (opp. *in ipsa re positae*)—extraneous causes.

*rerum causae aliae ex aliis nexae*—concatenation, interdependence of causes.

*ex parvis saepe magnarum rerum momenta pendent*—important results are often produced by trivial causes.

*ex aliqua re nasci, manare*  
*ab aliqua re proficisci* } to originate in, arise from.  
*ex aliqua re redundare (in or ad aliquid)*—to accrue in great abundance.

*utilitas efflorescit ex aliqua re*—untold advantages arise from a thing.

*e fontibus haurire* (opp. *rivulos consecrari* or *fontes non videre*)—to draw from the fountain-head.

*haec ex eodem fonte fluunt, manant*—these things have the same origin.

*fons et caput (vid. p. 24, note)*—source, origin.

### 4. REGARD—IMPORTANCE—INFLUENCE—POWER—INCLINATION

*rationem habere alicuius rei* } to have regard for; take  
*respicere<sup>1</sup> aliquid* } into consideration.  
*quo in genere*—from this point of view; similarly.

<sup>1</sup> But *respicere ad aliquid (aliquem)*=to look round at an object.

*multis rebus* or *locis*—in many respects; in many points.

*in utraque re*—in both cases; whichever way you look at it.

*ceteris rebus* (not *cetera*)—as regards the rest; otherwise.

*omni ex parte*; *in omni genere*; *omnibus rebus*—from every point of view; looked at in every light.

*aliqua ex parte* } to a certain extent.  
*aliquatenus* }

*magni (nullius) momenti esse*—to be of great (no) importance.

*momentum afferre ad aliquid*—to determine the issue of; to turn the scale.

*pertinere ad aliquid*—to be essentially important to a thing.

*hoc nihil ad sapientem pertinet*—a wise man is in no way affected by this.

*hoc in sapientem non cadit*—it is incompatible with the nature of a wise man; the wise are superior to such things.

*multum valere ad aliquid* } to contribute much towards  
*multum afferre ad aliquid* } . . . ; to affect considerably;  
to be instrumental in . . .

*magnam vim habere ad aliquid*—to have considerable influence on a question.

*positum, situm esse in aliqua re*  
*contineri aliqua re*<sup>1</sup>  
*consistere in aliqua re*  
*pendere ex aliqua re* } to depend upon a thing.

*in te omnia sunt*—everything depends on you.

<sup>1</sup> *contineri aliqua re* also means (1) to be bounded by . . . , e.g. *oceano*; (2) to be limited, restricted to, e.g. *moenibus*.

*in ea re omnia vertuntur*—all depends on this; this is the decisive point.

*constare ex aliqua re*—to be composed of; to consist of.  
*cernitur (in) aliqua re* (not *ex aliqua re*)—it is evident from . . .

*in manu, in potestate alicuius*  
*situm, positum esse*  
*penes aliquem esse* } to be in a person's power.

*res integra*<sup>1</sup> *est*—the matter is still undecided; it is an open question.

*res mihi integra est*—I have not yet committed myself.

*mihi non est integrum, ut . . .*—it is no longer in my power.

*integrum (causam integram) sibi reservare*—to leave the question open; to refuse to commit oneself.

*quantum in me (situm) est*—as far as in me lies; to the best of my ability.

*penes te arbitrium huius rei est*—the decision of the question rests with you.

*arbitrio alicuius omnia permittere*  
*omnium rerum arbitrium alicui*  
*permittere* } to put the matter entirely in some one's hands.

*arbitratu, arbitrio tuo*—just as you wish.

## 5. OPPORTUNITY—POSSIBILITY—OCCASION—CHANCE

*occasio datur, offertur*—a favourable<sup>2</sup> opportunity presents itself.

<sup>1</sup> The proper meaning of *integer* (*in-TAG, tango*) is untouched, unsullied.

<sup>2</sup> Not *occasio opportuna, bona, pulchra*, the notion "favourable" being contained in the word itself. We find, however, *occasio praeclara, ampla, tanta*, not unfrequently.

*occasione data, oblata* } when occasion offers; as oppor-  
*per occasionem* } tunity occurs.

*quotienscunque occasio oblata est; omnibus locis*—on every occasion; at every opportunity.

*occasionem alicui dare, praebere alicuius rei or ad aliquid faciendum* } to give a man the opportunity of doing a thing.

*facultatem alicui dare alicuius rei or ut possit . . . potestatem,<sup>1</sup> copiam alicui dare, facere with Gen. gerund.* }

*occasionem nancisci*—to get, meet with, a favourable opportunity.

*occasione uti*—to make use of, avail oneself of an opportunity.

*occasionem praetermittere, amittere* (through carelessness), *omittere* (deliberately), *dimittere* (through indifference)—to lose, let slip an opportunity.

*occasione deesse<sup>2</sup>*—to neglect an opportunity.

*occasionem arripere*—to seize an opportunity.

*facultatem, potestatem alicui eripere, adimere*—to deprive a man of the chance of doing a thing.

*nulla est facultas alicuius rei*—no opportunity of carrying out an object presents itself.

*locum dare suspicioni*—to give ground for suspicion.

<sup>1</sup> Notice *potestatem alicui pugnandi facere*, to offer battle, and *potestatem sui facere alicui*, (1) to give opportunity of battle, and also (2) to grant an audience to (cf. *sui conveniendi potestatem facere*).

<sup>2</sup> In the same way *deesse officio*, to leave one's duties undone; *d. muneri*, to neglect the claims of one's vocation; *d. rei publicae*, to be careless of state interests, to be unpatriotic; *d. sibi*, not to do one's best.

*ansas dare ad reprehendendum, reprehensionis*—to give occasion for blame; to challenge criticism.

*ansam habere reprehensionis*—to contain, afford matter for criticism.

*adduci aliqua re (ad aliquid or ut . . .)*—to be induced by a consideration.

*nescio quo casu* (with Indic.)—by some chance or other.

*temere et fortuito; forte (et) temere*—quite accidentally, fortuitously.

## 6. SUCCESS—GOOD FORTUNE

*fortuna secunda uti*—to be fortunate, lucky.

*fortunae favore or prospero flatu* } to be favoured by For-  
*fortunae uti (vid. note, p. 84)* } tune; to bask in For-  
*fortunam faultricem nancisci* } tune's smiles.

*fortuna caecos homines efficit, animos occaecat*—Fortune makes men shortsighted, infatuates them.

*fortunam tentare, experiri*—to try one's luck.

*fortunam periclitari (periculum facere)*—to run a risk; to tempt Providence.

*fortunae se committere*—to trust to luck.

*fortunam in manibus habere*—to have success in one's grasp.

*fortunam ex manibus dimittere*—to let success slip through one's fingers.

*fortuna commutatur, se inclinatur*—luck is changing, waning.

*ludibrium fortunae*—the plaything of Fortune.

*is, quem fortuna complexa est*—Fortune's favourite.

*a fortuna desertum, derelictum esse*—to be abandoned by good luck.

*fortuna aliquem effert*—Fortune exalts a man, makes him conspicuous.

*rebus secundis efferrī*—to be puffed up by success; to be made arrogant by prosperity.

*ad felicitatem (magnus) cumulus accedit ex aliqua re*  
*aliquid felicitatis cumulum affert*  
*aliquid felicitatem magno cumulo auget* } his crowning happiness is produced by a thing; the culminating point of his felicity is . . .

*in rebus prosperis et ad voluntatem fluentibus*—when life runs smoothly.

*beata vita, beate vivere, beatum esse*<sup>1</sup>—happiness, bliss.

*ad bene beateque vivendum*—for a life of perfect happiness.

*peropportune accidit, quod*—it is most fortunate that . . .

#### 7. MISFORTUNE—FATE—RUIN

*fortuna adversa*  
*res adversae, afflictæ, perditæ* } misfortune, adversity.

*in calamitatem incidere*—to be overtaken by calamity.

*calamitatem accipere, subire*—to suffer mishap.

*nihil calamitatis (in vita) videre*—to live a life free from all misfortune.

*calamitatem haurire*  
*omnes labores exanclare* } to drain the cup of sorrow.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *beatitas* and *beatitudo* are used by Cicero in one passage only (De Nat. Deorum, I. 34. 95), but merely as a linguistic experiment.

<sup>2</sup> In Latin metaphor the verb only, as a rule, is sufficient to express the metaphorical meaning—e.g. *amicitiam iungere cum aliquo*, to be bound by the bands of affection to any one; *religionem labefactare*, to undermine the very foundations of belief; *bellum extinguere*, to extinguish the torch of war; *cuncta bello ardent*, the fires of war are

*calamitatem, pestem inferre alicui*—to bring mishap, ruin on a person.

*calamitatibus affligi*—to be the victim of misfortune.

*calamitatibus obrui*—to be overwhelmed with misfortune.

*calamitatibus defungi*—to come to the end of one's troubles.

*calamitate doctus*—schooled by adversity.

*conflictari (cum) adversa fortuna*—to struggle with adversity.

*in malis iacere*—to be broken down by misfortune.

*malis urgeri*—to be hard pressed by misfortune.

*fortunæ vicissitudines*—the vicissitudes of fortune.

*incipites et varii casus*—the changes and chances of this life.

*sub varios incertosque casus subiectum esse*—to have to submit to the uncertainties of fortune; to be subject to Fortune's caprice.

*multis casibus iactari*—to experience the ups and downs of life.

*ad omnes casus subsidia comparare*—to be prepared for all that may come.

*varia fortuna uti*—to experience the vicissitudes of fortune; to have a chequered career.

*multis iniquitatibus exerceri*<sup>1</sup>—to be severely tried by misfortune.

raging all around; *libido consedit*, the storm of passion has ceased; *animum pellere*, to strike the heart-strings; *vetustas monumenta exederat*, the tooth of time had eaten away the monuments.

<sup>1</sup> The first meaning of *exercere* is to keep in motion, give no rest to. Then, metaphorically, to keep busy, to harass—e.g. *fortuna aliquem vehementer exercet*. Lastly, *exercere* is used to express the main activity in any branch of industry, thus, *exercere agros*, to farm; *metalla*, to carry on a mining industry; *navem*, to fit out ships, be a shipowner; *vectigalia*, to levy, collect taxes, used specially of the *publicani*; *qui exercet iudicium*, the presiding judge (praetor).

*fortunae telis propositum esse*—to be exposed to the assaults of fate.

*fortunae obiectum esse*—to be abandoned to fate.

*ad iniurias fortunae expositum esse*—to be a victim of the malice of Fortune.

*fortunae cedere*—to acquiesce in one's fate.

*aliquem affligere, perdere, pessumdare, in praeceps dare*—to bring a man to ruin; to destroy.

*praecipitem agi, ire  
ad exitum vocari  
ad interitum ruere  
in perniciem incurrere* } to be ruined, undone.

*pestem alicui (in aliquem) machinari  
perniciem (exitium) alicui afferre,  
moliri, parare* } to compass, devise a man's overthrow, ruin.

*ab exitio, ab interitu aliquem vindicare*—to rescue from destruction.

#### 8. DANGER—RISK—SAFETY

*in periculo esse* or *versari*—to be in danger.

*res in summo discrimine versatur*—the position is very critical.

*in vitae discrimine versari*—to be in peril of one's life.

*in pericula incidere, incurrere*—to find oneself in a hazardous position.

*pericula alicui impendent, imminere*—dangers threaten a man.

*pericula in* or *ad aliquem redundant*—many dangers hem a person in; one meets new risks at every turn.

*pericula subire, adire, suscipere*—to incur danger, risk.

*periculis se offerre*—to expose oneself to peril.

*salutem, vitam suam in discrimen offerre* (not *exponere*)—to risk one's life.

*aliquem, aliquid in periculum  
(discrimen) adducere, vocare<sup>1</sup>  
alicui periculum creare, constare* } to endanger, imperil a person or thing.

*in periculum capitis, in discrimen vitae se inferre*—to recklessly hazard one's life.

*salus, caput, vita alicuius agitur, periclitatur, in discrimine est* or *versatur*—a man's life is at stake, is in very great danger.

*in ipso periculi discrimine*—at the critical moment.

*aliquem ex periculo eripere, servare*—to rescue from peril.

*nullum periculum recusare pro*—to avoid no risk in order to . . .

*periculis perfungi*—to surmount dangers.

*periculum facere alicuius rei*—to make trial of; to risk.

*periculum hostis facere*—to try one's strength with the enemy; to try issue of battle.

*res ad extremum casum  
perducta est  
ad extrema perventum est* } affairs are desperate; we are reduced to extremities.

*in tuto esse*—to be in a position of safety.

*in tuto collocare aliquid*—to ensure the safety of a thing.

<sup>1</sup> *vocare* helps to form several phrases—e.g. *in invidiam, in suspicionem, in dubium, ad exitium, in periculum vocare*. It is used in the passive to express periphrastically the passive of verbs which have only an active voice—e.g. *in invidiam vocari*, to become unpopular, be hated, *invidetur* not being used. Cf. *in invidiam venire*.

## 9. ASSISTANCE—DELIVERANCE—CONSOLATION

*auxilium, opem, salutem ferre alicui*—to bring aid to; to rescue.

*auxilio alicui venire*—to come to assist any one.

*alicuius opem implorare*—to implore a person's help.

*confugere ad aliquem* or *ad opem, ad fidem alicuius*—to fly to some one for refuge.

*ad extremum auxilium descendere*<sup>1</sup>—to be reduced to one's last resource.

*auxilium praesens*<sup>2</sup>—prompt assistance.

*adesse alicui* or *alicuius rebus* (opp. *desse*)—to assist, stand by a person.

*salutem alicui afferre*—to deliver, rescue a person.

*saluti suae consulere, prospicere* } to take measures for one's safety; to look after  
*suis rebus* or *sibi consulere* } one's own interests.

*salutem expedire*—to effect a person's deliverance.

*solacium praebere*—to comfort.

*nihil habere consolationis*—to afford no consolation.

*hoc solacio frui, uti*—to solace oneself with the thought . . .

*consolari aliquem de aliqua re*—to comfort a man in a matter; to condole with him.

*consolari dolorem alicuius*—to soothe grief.

<sup>1</sup> Similarly *descendere* is frequently used of consenting unwillingly to a thing, condescending. Cf. vi. 9 ad fin. and xvi. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Notice too *poena praesens*, instant punishment, *pecunia praesens*, ready money, *medicina praesens*, efficacious remedy; *deus praesens*, a propitious deity; *in rem praesentem venire*, to go to the very spot to make a closer examination.

*consolari aliquem in miseriis*—to comfort in misfortune.

*hoc (illo) solacio me consolor*  
*haec (illa) res me consolatur* } I console myself with . . .

## 10. RICHES—WANT—POVERTY

*divitiis, copiis abundare*—to be rich, wealthy.

*magnas opes habere*  
*opibus maxime florere*  
*omnibus opibus circumfluere* } to be very rich; to be in a position of affluence.

*fortunis maximis ornatum esse*—to be in the enjoyment of a large fortune.

*in omnium rerum abundantia vivere*—to live in great affluence.

*aliquem ex paupere divitem facere*—to raise a man from poverty to wealth.

*inopia alicuius rei laborare, premi*—to suffer from want of a thing.

*ad egestatem, ad inopiam (summam omnium rerum) redigi*  
—to be reduced to (abject) poverty.

*vitam inopem sustentare, tolerare*—to earn a precarious livelihood.

*in egestate esse, versari*  
*vitam in egestate degere* } to live in poverty, destitution.

*in summa egestate* or *mendicitate esse*—to be entirely destitute; to be a beggar.

*stipem colligere*—to beg alms.

*stipem (pecuniam) conferre*—to contribute alms.

### 11. UTILITY—ADVANTAGE—HARM— DISADVANTAGE

*usui* or *ex usu esse*—to be of use.

*utilitatem afferre, praebere*—to be serviceable.

*multum (nihil) ad communem utilitatem afferre*—to considerably (in no way) further the common good.

*aliquid in usum suum conferre*—to employ in the furtherance of one's interests.

*omnia ad suam utilitatem referre*—to consider one's own advantage in everything

*rationibus alicuius prospicere*  
or *consulere* (opp. *officere*,  
*obstare, adversari*) } to look after, guard a  
*commodis alicuius servire* } person's interests, well-  
*commoda alicuius tueri* } fare.

*meae rationes ita tulerunt*—my interests demanded it.

*fructum (uberrimum) capere, percipere, consequi ex aliqua re*<sup>1</sup>  
—to derive (great) profit, advantage from a thing.

*fructus ex hac re redundant in or ad me*—(great) advantage accrues to me from this.

*aliquid ad meum fructum redundat*—I am benefited by a thing.

*quid attinet?* with *Infin.*—what is the use of?

*cui bono?*—who gets the advantage from this? who is the interested party?

<sup>1</sup> Also *fructum alicuius rei capere, percipere, ferre, consequi ex aliqua re*—e.g. *virtutis fructus ex re publica (magnos, laetos, uberes) capere*—to be handsomely rewarded by the state for one's high character.

*damnum* (opp. *lucrum*) *facere* } to suffer loss, harm,  
*damno affici* } damage.<sup>1</sup>  
*detrimentum capere, accipere, facere* }

*iacturam*<sup>2</sup> *alicuius rei facere*—to throw away, sacrifice.

*damnum inferre, afferre alicui*—to do harm to, injure any one.

*damnum ferre*—to know how to endure calamity.

*incommodo afficere aliquem*—to inconvenience, injure a person.

*incommodis mederi*—to relieve a difficulty.

*damnum* or *detrimentum sarcire* (not *reparare*)—to make good, repair a loss or injury.

*damnum compensare cum aliqua re*—to balance a loss by anything.

*res repetere*—to demand restitution, satisfaction.

*res restituere*—to give restitution, satisfaction.

### 12. GOODWILL—KINDNESS—INCLINATION— FAVOUR

*benevolo animo esse in aliquem* } to be well-disposed  
*benevolentiam habere erga aliquem* } towards . . .  
*benevolentiam, favorem, voluntatem alicuius sibi conciliare*

<sup>1</sup> Notice too *calamitatem, cladem, incommodum accipere*, to suffer mishap, reverse, inconvenience; *naufragium facere*, to be shipwrecked.

<sup>2</sup> *damnum* (opp. *lucrum*)=loss, especially of worldly possessions; *detrimentum* (opp. *emolumentum*)=harm inflicted by others; *fraus*=deceitful injury; *iactura* (properly "throwing overboard")=the intentional sacrifice of something valuable in order either to avert injury or to gain some greater advantage. "Harmful"=*inutilis, qui nocet*, etc., not *noxius*, which is only used absolutely—e.g. *homo noxius*, the offender, evildoer.



- or *colligere (ex aliqua re)*—to find favour with some one; to get into their good graces.
- benevolentiam alicui praestare,*  
*in aliquem conferre*  
*benevolentia aliquem complecti*  
or *prosequi* } to show kindness to . . .
- gratosum esse alicui* or *apud*  
*aliquem* } to be popular with; to stand well with a person.
- in gratia esse apud aliquem*  
*multum valere gratia apud*  
*aliquem* } to be highly favoured by; to be influential with . . .
- florere gratia alicuius*  
*gratiam inire ab aliquo* or *apud*  
*aliquem* } to gain a person's esteem, friendship.
- in gratiam alicuius venire*  
*gratiam alicuius sibi quaerere, sequi,* more strongly *aucupari*  
—to court a person's favour; to ingratiate oneself with . . .
- studere, favere alicui*  
*studiosum esse alicuius*  
*propenso animo, studio esse*  
or *propensa voluntate esse* } to look favourably upon; to support.
- in aliquem (opp. averso*  
*animo esse ab aliquo)* }
- alicui morem gerere, obsequi*—to comply with a person's wishes; to humour.
- alicuius causa*<sup>1</sup> *velle* or *cupere*—to be favourably disposed towards.
- gratum (gratissimum) alicui facere*—to do any one a (great) favour.

<sup>1</sup> Probably originally *omnia alicuius causa velle*=to wish everything (favourable) in some one's behalf.

- se conformare, se accommodare*  
*ad alicuius voluntatem*  
*alicuius voluntati morem gerere* } to accommodate oneself to another's wishes.
- se convertere, converti ad alicuius nutum*<sup>1</sup>—to take one's directions from another; to obey him in everything.
- totum se fingere et accommodare ad alicuius arbitrium et nutum*—to be at the beck and call of another; to be his creature.
- voluntatem* or *animum alicuius a se abalienare, aliquem a se abalienare* or *alienare*—to become estranged, alienated from some one.

### 13. BENEFIT—GRATITUDE—RECOMPENSE

- beneficium alicui dare, tribuere* } to do any one a service  
*beneficio aliquem afficere, ornare* } or kindness.
- beneficia in aliquem conferre*—to heap benefits upon . . .
- beneficiis aliquem obstringere, obligare, devincire*—to lay any one under an obligation by kind treatment.
- beneficium remunerari* or *reddere (cumulate)*—to (richly) recompense a kindness or service.
- gratus (opp. ingratus) animus*<sup>2</sup>—gratitude.
- gratiam alicui debere*—to owe gratitude to; to be under an obligation to a person.

<sup>1</sup> But *se convertere ad aliquem*=either (1) to approach with hostile intention, or (2) to turn to some one for sympathy or assistance.

<sup>2</sup> *animus* is used similarly in several periphrases to express abstract qualities—e.g. *animus inexorabilis*=inflexibility, severity; *animus implacabilis*=implacability; *animus (fides) venalis*=venality. Cf. *simplices mores, simplex natura, ratio, genus*=simplicity (*simplicitas* is post-Augustan and usually=frankness, candour). *inmemor ingenium*=forgetfulness (*oblivio* in this sense is not classical).

- gratiam alicui habere*—to feel gratitude (in one's heart).  
*gratiam alicui referre* (*meritam, debitam*) *pro aliqua re*—to show gratitude (in one's acts).  
*gratias alicui agere pro aliqua re*—to thank a person (in words).  
*grates agere* (*dis immortalibus*)—to give thanks to heaven.  
*gratiam mereri*—to merit thanks; to do a thankworthy action.
- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>par pari referre</i>         | } to return like for like. |
| <i>paria paribus respondere</i> |                            |
- bonam* (*praeclaram*) *gratiam referre*—to reward amply; to give manifold recompense for.  
*benefacta maleficiis pensare*—to return evil for good.  
*maleficia benefactis remunerari*  
*pro maleficiis beneficia reddere* } to return good for evil.

## 14. MERIT—VALUE—REWARD

- bene, praeclare* (*melius, optime*) *mereri*<sup>1</sup> *de aliquo*—to deserve well at some one's hands; to do a service to . . .  
*male mereri de aliquo*—to deserve ill of a person; to treat badly.  
*meritum alicuius in* or *erga aliquem*—what a man merits at another's hands (Cic. Fam. I. I. I).  
*nullo meo merito*—I had not deserved it.  
*ex, pro merito*—according to a man's deserts.  
*multum* (*aliquid*) *alicui rei tribuere*—to consider of importance; to set much (some) store by a thing.

<sup>1</sup> *mereri* is a middle verb, and consequently always has an adverb with it.

- multum alicui tribuere*—to value, esteem a person.  
*praemiis* (*amplissimis, maximis*) *aliquem afficere*<sup>1</sup>—to remunerate (handsomely).  
*meritum praemium alicui persolvere*—to reward a man according to his deserts.  
*praemium exponere* or *proponere*—(to encourage) by offering a reward.  
*praemium ponere*—to offer a prize (for the winner).  
*palnam deferre, dare alicui*—to award the prize to . . .  
*palnam ferre, auferre*—to win the prize.  
*pacta merces alicuius rei*—the stipulated reward for anything.  
*mercede conductum esse*—to be hired, suborned.

## 15. REQUESTS—WISHES—COMMISSIONS—ORDERS

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <i>orare et obsecrare aliquem</i>     | } to entreat earnestly; to make urgent requests. |
| <i>magno opere, vehementer, etiam</i> |  |
| <i>atque etiam rogare aliquem</i>     |  |
- precibus aliquem fatigare*—to importune with petitions.  
*supplicibus verbis orare*—to crave humbly; to supplicate.  
*precibus obsequi*—to grant a request.  
*alicui petenti satisfacere, non deesse*—to accede to a man's petitions.  
*magnis* (*infimis*) *precibus moveri*—to be influenced by, to yield to urgent (abject) entreaty.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the numerous phrases of which *afficere* is a part—e.g. *afficere aliquem admiratione, beneficio, exilio, honore, iniuria, laude, poena, supplicio*. Especially important is its passive use—e.g. *affici admiratione*, to admire; *gaudio, voluptate*, to rejoice, be pleased; *dolore*, to be pained, vexed; *poena*, to suffer punishment.

*negare*, more strongly *denegare* }  
*alicui aliquid* }  
*petenti alicui negare aliquid* } to refuse, reject a request.  
*repudiare, aspernari preces ali-*  
*cuius.* }

*nihil tibi a me postulanti recusabo*—I will refuse you nothing.

*aliquid ab aliquo impetrare*—to gain one's point with any one.

*optata mihi contingunt*—my wishes are being fulfilled.

*voluntati alicuius satisfacere, obsequi*—to satisfy a person's wishes.

*ex sententia*—as one would wish; to one's mind.

*aliquid optimis omnibus prosequi* (*vid.* p. 88 note)—to wish prosperity to an undertaking.

*bene id tibi vertat!*—I wish you all success in the matter.

*mandatum, negotium alicui dare* } to entrust a matter to a  
*negotium ad aliquem deferre* } person; to commission.  
*mandatum exsequi, persequi, conficere*—to execute a commission.

*iussa* (usually only in plur.), *imperata facere*—to carry out orders.

## 16. FRIENDSHIP—ENMITY—RECONCILIATION

(cf. xii. 8).

*amicitiam cum aliquo jungere, facere, inire, contrahere*—to form a friendship with any one.

*amicitiam colere*—to keep up, foster a connection.

*uti aliquo amico*—to be friendly with any one.

*est* or *intercedit mihi cum* }  
*aliquo amicitia* } I am on good (bad) terms with  
*sunt* or *intercedunt mihi* } a person.  
*cum aliquo inimicitiae*<sup>1</sup> }

*uti aliquo familiariter*—to be on very intimate terms with . . .

*artissimo amicitiae vinculo* or *summa familiaritate cum aliquo coniunctum esse*—to be bound by the closest ties of friendship.

*vetustate amicitiae coniunctum esse*—to be very old friends.

*amicitiam alicuius appetere*—to court a person's friendship.

*in amicitiam alicuius recipi* }  
*ad alicuius amicitiam se* } to gain some one's friendship;  
*conferre, se applicare* } to become intimate with.

*aliquem (tertium) ad (in) amicitiam ascribere*—to admit another into the circle of one's intimates.

*amicitiam renuntiare* }  
*amicitiam dissuere, dissolvere,* } to renounce, give up a  
*praecidere* } friendship.

*amicissimus meus* or *mihi*—my best friend.

*homo intimus, familiarissimus mihi*—my most intimate acquaintance.

*inimicitias gerere, habere, exercere cum aliquo*—to be at enmity with a man.

*inimicitias cum aliquo suscipere*—to make a person one's enemy.

*inimicitias deponere*—to lay aside one's differences.

*aequi iniqui*—friend and foe.

<sup>1</sup> The singular *inimicitia* is only used to express the abstract idea "enmity."

<i>placare aliquem alicui</i> or <i>in aliquem</i>	} to reconcile two people; to be a mediator.
<i>reconciliare alicuius animum</i> or simply <i>aliquem alicui</i>	
<i>in gratiam aliquem cum aliquo reducere</i>	} to be reconciled; to make up a quarrel.
<i>in gratiam cum aliquo redire</i>	
<i>sibi aliquem, alicuius animum reconciliare</i> or <i>reconciliari alicui</i>	

## 17. AUTHORITY—DIGNITY (cf. xiv. 3)

<i>magna auctoritate esse</i>	} to possess great authority; to be an influential person.
<i>auctoritate valere</i> or <i>florere</i>	
<i>magna auctoritas est in aliquo</i>	} to have great influence with a person; to have considerable weight.
<i>multum auctoritate valere, posse apud aliquem</i>	
<i>magna auctoritas alicuius est apud aliquem</i>	
<i>alicuius auctoritas multum valet apud aliquem</i>	
<i>auctoritatem</i> or <i>dignitatem sibi conciliare, parare</i>	—to gain dignity; to make oneself a person of consequence.
<i>ad summam auctoritatem pervenire</i>	—to attain to the highest eminence.
<i>auctoritatem alicuius amplificare</i> (opp. <i>imminuere, minuere</i> )	—to increase a person's dignity.
<i>auctoritati, dignitati alicuius illudere</i>	—to insult a person's dignity.
<i>dignitas est summa in aliquo</i>	} to be in a dignified position.
<i>summa dignitate praeditum esse</i>	

<i>aliquid alienum (a) dignitate sua</i>	} to consider a thing beneath one's dignity.
or merely <i>a se ducere</i>	
<i>aliquid infra se ducere</i> or <i>infra se positum arbitrari</i>	

## 18. PRAISE—APPROVAL—BLAME—REPROACH

<i>laudem tribuere, impertire alicui</i>	} to praise, extol, commend a person.
<i>laude afficere aliquem</i>	
( <i>maximis, summis</i> ) <i>laudibus efferre aliquem</i> or <i>aliquid</i>	
<i>eximia laude ornare aliquem</i>	} to overwhelm with eulogy.
<i>omni laude cumulare aliquem</i>	
<i>laudibus aliquem (aliquid) in caelum ferre, efferre, tollere</i>	—to extol, laud to the skies.
<i>alicuius laudes praedicare</i>	—to spread a person's praises.
<i>aliquem beatum praedicare</i>	—to consider happy.
<i>omnium undique laudem colligere</i>	} to win golden opinions from every one.
<i>maximam ab omnibus laudem adipisci</i>	
<i>aliquid laudi alicui ducere, dare</i>	—to consider a thing creditable to a man.
<i>aliquem coram, in os</i> or <i>praesentem laudare</i>	—to praise a man to his face.
<i>recte, bene fecisti quod . . .</i>	—you were right in . . . ; you did right to . . .
<i>res mihi probatur</i>	—a thing meets with my approval.
<i>res a me probatur</i>	—I express my approval of a thing.
<i>hoc in te reprehendo</i> (not <i>ob eam rem</i> )	—I blame this in you; I censure you for this.

*vituperationem subire*  
*in vituperationem, reprehensionem* } to suffer reproof; to  
*cadere, incidere, venire* } be criticised, blamed.  
*exprobrare alicui aliquid*  
*aliquid alicui crimini dare,* } to reproach a person with . . .  
*vertere*  
*conqueri, expostulare cum aliquo de aliqua re*—to expostulate with a person about a thing.

## 19. RUMOUR—GOSSIP—NEWS—MENTION

*rumor, fama, sermo est* or *manat*—report says; people say.  
*rumor, fama viget*—a rumour is prevalent.  
*fama serpit (per urbem)*—a report is spreading imperceptibly.  
*rumor increbrescit*—a report, an impression is gaining ground.  
*rumorem spargere* } to spread a rumour.  
*famam dissipare* }  
*dubii rumores afferuntur ad nos*—vague rumours reach us.  
*auditione et fama accepisse aliquid* } to know from hearsay.  
*fando aliquid audivisse* }  
*ex eo audivi, cum diceret*—I heard him say . . .  
*vulgo dicitur, pervulgatum est*—every one says.  
*in ore omnium* or *omnibus (hominum* or *hominibus,* but  
*only mihi, tibi, etc.) esse* } to be in every one's mouth.  
*per omnium ora ferri* }  
*in ore habere aliquid* (Fam. 6. 18. 5)—to harp on a thing, be always talking of it.  
*efferre* or *edere aliquid in vulgus*—to divulge, make public.

*foras efferrī, palam fieri, percrebrescere, divulgari, in medium proferri, exire, emanare*—to become known, become a topic of common conversation (used of things).  
*in sermonem hominum venire* } to be a subject for gossip.  
*in ora vulgi abire* }  
*fabulam fieri*—to be the talk of the town, a scandal.  
*nuntio allato* or *accepto*—on receiving the news.  
*Romam nuntiatum est, allatum est*—news reached Rome.  
*certiorem facere aliquem (alicuius rei* or *de aliqua re)*—to inform a person.  
*mentionem facere alicuius rei* or *de aliqua re*<sup>1</sup>—to mention a thing.  
*mentionem inicere de aliqua re* or }  
*Acc. c. Inf.* } to mention a thing incidentally, casually.  
*in mentionem alicuius rei incidere* }  
*mentio alicuius rei incidit* }

## 20. FAME—REPUTATION

*gloriam, famam sibi comparare*—to gain distinction.  
*gloriam (immortalem) consequi, adipisci*—to win (undying) fame.  
*gloriae, laudi esse* } to confer distinction on a person; to  
*laudem afferre* } redound to his credit.  
*gloria, laude florere*—to be very famous, illustrious.  
*summa gloria florere*—to have reached the highest pinnacle of eminence.

<sup>1</sup> Not *commemorare*, the fundamental meaning of which is “to make a person mindful of . . .,” and implies an emphatic reference to a definite point.

- clarum fieri, nobilitari, illustrari*  
(not the post-classical *clarescere* or *inlarescere*) } to become famous, distinguish oneself.
- gloriam colligere, in summam gloriam venire* }
- aliquem immortalis gloria afficere* } to confer undying fame on, immortalise some one.
- aliquem sempiternae gloriae commendare* }
- immortalitatem consequi, adipisci, sibi parere*—to attain eternal renown.
- gloria duci* } to be guided by ambition.
- laudis studio trahi* }
- laudem, gloriam quaerere* }
- stimulis gloriae concitari*—to be spurred on by ambition.
- gloriae, laudis cupiditate incensum esse, flagrare*—to be consumed by the fires of ambition.
- de gloria, fama alicuius detrahere* } to detract from a person's reputation,
- alicuius gloriae* or simply *alicui* } wilfully underestimate a person.
- obtrectare* }
- alicuius famam, laudem imminuere* }
- obscurare alicuius gloriam, laudem, famam*<sup>1</sup> (not *obscurare aliquem*)—to render obscure, eclipse a person.
- famae servire, consulere*—to have regard for one's good name.
- famam ante collectam tueri, conservare*—to live up to one's reputation.
- bene, male audire (ab aliquo)* } to have a good or bad reputation, be spoken well, ill of.
- bona, mala existimatio est de aliquo* }

<sup>1</sup> In the same way, to improve a man, *alicuius mores corrigere* (not *aliquem c.*); to understand some one, *alicuius orationem* or *quid dicat intellegere*.

- famam crudelitatis subire* (Catil. 4. 6. 12)—to gain the reputation of cruelty.
- infamiam alicui inferre, aspergere, conflare* } to damage a person's character, bring him into bad odour.
- infamem facere aliquem* }
- magnam sui famam relinquere*—to leave a great reputation behind one.
- opinionem virtutis habere*—to have the reputation of virtue.
- existimatio*<sup>1</sup> *hominum, omnium*—the common opinion, the general idea.

## 21. HONOUR—DISGRACE—IGNOMINY

- esse in honore apud aliquem*—to be honoured, esteemed by some one.
- honorem alicui habere, tribuere* } to honour, show respect for, a person.
- aliquem honore afficere, augere, ornare, prosequi* (vid. note, p. 88) }
- aliquem cupiditate honorum inflammare* (or *aliquem ad cupiditatem honorum inflammare*)—to kindle ambition in some one's mind.
- honores concupiscere* (opp. *aspernari*)—to aspire to dignity, high honours.
- honoris causa aliquem nominare* or *appellare*—to speak of some one respectfully.
- statuam alicui ponere, constituere*—to set up a statue in some one's honour.

<sup>1</sup> *existimatio* has two uses: (1) active—opinion held by others, criticism; (2) passive—reputation, character, usually in a good sense, consequently = good reputation without the addition of *bona, integra*, etc.

*aliquem colere et observare* (Att. 2. 19)—to pay respect to, be courteous to a person.

*aliquem ignominia afficere, notare*  
*alicui ignominiam inurere* } to inflict an indignity upon, insult a person.  
*infamiam concipere, subire, sibi conflare*—to incur ignominy.

*vitae splendori (em) maculas (is) aspergere*—to sully one's fair fame.

*notam turpitudinis alicui* or *vitae alicuius inurere*—to injure a man's character, tarnish his honour.

*ignominiam non ferre*—to chafe under an indignity, repudiate it.

*maculam (conceptam) delere, eluere*—to blot out a reproach.

## 22. EFFORT—INDUSTRY—LABOUR—EXERTION

*studiose (diligenter, enixe, sedulo, maxime) dare operam, ut . . .*—to take great pains in order to . . .

*egregiam operam (multum, plus*  
*etc. operae) dare alicui rei*  
*operam alicui rei tribuere, in*  
*aliquid conferre* } to expend great labour on a thing.

*operam (laborem, curam) in*  
*or ad aliquid impendere*  
*multum operae ac laboris consumere in aliqua re*—to exert oneself very energetically in a matter.

*studium, industriam* (not *diligentiam*) *collocare, ponere in aliqua re*—to apply oneself zealously, diligently to a thing.

*incumbere in (ad) aliquid*—to be energetic about, throw one's heart into a thing.

*opus*<sup>1</sup> *facere* (De Senect. 7. 24)—to do work (especially agricultural).

*opus aggredi*  
*ad opus faciendum accedere* } to take a task in hand, engage upon it.

*res est multi laboris et sudoris*—the matter involves much labour and fatigue.

*desudare et elaborare in aliqua re* (De Senect. 11. 38)—to exert oneself very considerably in a matter.

*labori, operae non parcere*—to spare no pains.

*laborem non intermittere*—to work without intermission.

*nullum tempus a labore intermittere*—not to leave off work for an instant.

*lucubrare* (Liv. 1. 57)—to work by night, burn the midnight oil.

*inanem laborem suscipere*  
*operam (et oleum) perdere* or  
*frustra consumere* } to lose one's labour.

*rem actam* or simply *actum agere* (proverb.)—to have all one's trouble for nothing.

*labore supersedere (itineris)* (Fam. 4. 2. 4)—to spare oneself the trouble of the voyage.

*patiens laboris*—capable of exertion.

*fugiens laboris*—lazy.

*operae pretium est* (c. Inf.), *tanti est*—it is worth while.

*acti labores iucundi* (proverb.)—rest after toil is sweet.

<sup>1</sup> *opus* always means the concrete work on which one is engaged; *labor* is the trouble, fatigue, resulting from effort; *opera* is the voluntary effort, the trouble spent on an object. Thus *laborare* = not simply to work, but to work energetically, with exertion and consequent fatigue; *operari*, to be busy with a thing. Terence thus distinguishes *opus* and *opera*: *quod in opere faciundo operae consumis tuae*. Cf. Verg. Aen. 1. 455 *operumque laborem miratur* = the trouble which such huge works must have cost.

*contentionem adhibere*—to exert oneself.  
*omnes nervos<sup>1</sup> in aliqua re*  
*contendere*  
*omnibus viribus or nervis con-*  
*tendere, ut*  
*omni ope atque opera or omni*  
*virium contentione eniti, ut*  
*contendere et laborare, ut*  
*pro viribus eniti et laborare,*  
*ut*

to strain every nerve, do one's utmost in a matter.

### 23. BUSINESS—LEISURE—INACTIVITY—IDLENESS

*negotium suscipere*—to undertake an affair.  
*negotium obire, exsequi*—to execute, manage a business, undertaking.  
*negotium conficere, expedire, transigere*—to arrange, settle a matter.  
*negotia agere, gerere*—to be occupied with business, busy.  
*multis negotiis implicatum, districtum, distentum, obrütum esse*—to be involved in many undertakings; to be much occupied, embarrassed, overwhelmed by business-claims.  
*negotiis vacare*—to be free from business.

<sup>1</sup> *nervi* properly=sinews, muscles, not nerves the existence of which was unknown to the ancients. Metaphorically *nervi* denotes not only strength in general but also specially—(1) vital power, elasticity, e.g. *omnes nervos virtutis elidere* (Tusc. 2. 11. 27), *incidere*, to paralyse the strength of virtue; (2) motive power, main-spring, essence, of a thing, e.g. *vectigalia nervi rei publicae sunt* (Imp. Pomp. 7. 17), *nervi belli pecunia* (Phil. 5. 2. 15).

*occupatum esse in aliqua re*  
*intentum esse alicui rei* } to be engaged upon a matter.  
*negotium alicui facessere* (Fam. 3. 10. 1)—to give a person trouble, inconvenience him.  
*magnum negotium est* c. Inf.—it is a great undertaking to . . .  
*nullo negotio*—without any trouble.  
*otiosum esse*  
*in otio esse or vivere*  
*otium habere*  
*otio frui* } to be at leisure.  
*otio abundare*—to have abundance of leisure.  
*otium sequi, amplexari*—to be a lover of ease, leisure.  
*otiosum tempus consumere in aliqua re*—to spend one's leisure hours on an object.  
*otio abuti<sup>1</sup> or otium ad suum usum transferre*—to use up, make full use of one's spare time.  
*(in) otio languere et hebescere*  
*otio diffluere* } to grow slack with inactivity, stagnate.  
*desidia et languori se dedere*  
*ignavia<sup>2</sup> et socordiae se dare* } to abandon oneself to inactivity and apathy.  
*per luxum et ignaviam aetatem agere*—to pass one's life in luxury and idleness.

<sup>1</sup> *abuti* properly=to consume, make full use of. From this is developed the rarer meaning to use in excess, abuse=*perverse, intemperanter, immoderate uti*. Abuse, misuse=*pravus usus, vitium male utentium, insolens mos*. *abusus* is only found in the Jurists, and *abusio* is a technical term of rhetoric=*κατάρρησις*.

<sup>2</sup> The original meaning of *ignavia* (*in-gnavus*, cf. *navus, navare*) is not cowardice but laziness.



## 24. PLEASURE—RECREATION

*voluptatem ex aliqua re capere* or *percipere*—to derive pleasure from a thing.

*voluptate perfundi*—to revel in pleasure, be blissfully happy.

*voluptatibus frui*  
*voluptates haurire* } to take one's fill of enjoyment.

*se totum voluptatibus dedere, tradere*—to devote oneself absolutely to the pursuit of pleasure.

*homo voluptarius* (Tusc. 2. 7. 18)—a devotee of pleasure; a self-indulgent man.

*voluptatis illecebris deleniri*  
*voluptatis blanditiis corrumpi* } to be led astray, corrupted by the allurements of pleasure.

*in voluptates se mergere*—to plunge into a life of pleasure.

*animum a voluptate sevocare*—to hold aloof from all amusement.

*voluptates (corporis)*—sensual pleasure.

*voluptatis* or *animi causa* (B. G. 5. 12)—for one's own diversion; to satisfy a whim.

*deliciis diffluere*—to wanton in the pleasures of sense.

*animum relaxare, reficere, recreare* or simply *se reficere, se recreare, refici, recreari (ex aliqua re)*—to recruit oneself, seek relaxation.

*animum* or simply *se remittere*  
*animo* or simply *sibi indulgere* } to indulge oneself.

## VI. THE MIND ; ITS FUNCTIONS

## 1. GENIUS—TALENT—INTELLIGENCE

*magno animo esse*—to be magnanimous, broad-minded.

*animum attendere ad aliquid*—to turn one's attention to a thing.

*diligenter attendere (aliquid)*—to attend carefully.

*alias res* or *aliud agere*—to be inattentive.

*animo adesse*<sup>1</sup>—(1) to be attentive; (2) to keep one's presence of mind.

*vir magno ingenio, ingeniosus*  
*vir magno ingenio praeditus* } a man of ability.

*ingenio valere*—to be talented, gifted.

*ingenio abundare*—to be very talented.

*natura et ingenium*—natural gifts.

*ingenium acuere*—to sharpen the wits.

*ingenii acumen*—penetration; sagacity.

*ingenii tarditas* (opp. *celeritas*)—dulness of intellect.

*ingenii infirmitas* or *imbecillitas*—weakmindedness.

*mentis compotem esse*—to be of sane mind.

*mente captum esse, mente alienata esse*—to be out of one's mind.

*sanae mentis esse*—to be of sound mind.

*mentis quasi luminibus officere* (*vid.* p. 208) or *animo*

*caliginem offundere*—to obscure the mental vision.

*intellegentia* or *mente multum valere*<sup>2</sup>—to possess great ability.

<sup>1</sup> For the second meaning cf. Cicero, *ades animo et omittit timorem, Scipio*.

<sup>2</sup> *captus*, in the meaning ability, capacity, only occurs in the phrase *ut captus est servorum*; while *capacitas* merely means capacity, content, e.g. *vasorum*.

*ad intellegentiam communem* or *popularem accommodare aliquid*—to accommodate something to the standard of the popular intelligence.

## 2. IMAGINATION—THOUGHT

*animo, cogitatione aliquid fingere* (or simply *fingere*, but without *sibi*),  
*informare* } to form an idea of  
a thing, imagine,  
conceive.

*animo concipere aliquid*

*animo, cogitatione aliquid praecipere* (Off. I. 23. 81)—to form a conception of a thing beforehand.

*cogitatione sibi aliquid depingere*—to picture to oneself.

*ingenium, cogitatio*—imagination.

*ingenii vis* or *celeritas*—vivid, lively imagination.

*rerum imagines*

*res cogitatione fictae* or *depictae* } creatures of the imagination.

*opinionum commenta, ineptiae, monstra, portenta*—extravagant fictions of fancy.

*animo, mente, cogitatione aliquid comprehendere, complecti*—to grasp a thing mentally.

*in eam cogitationem incidere*—to happen to think of . . .

*haec cogitatio subit animum* } an idea strikes me.

*illud succurrit mihi*

*mihi in mentem venit alicuius rei*—something comes into my mind.

*aliquid animo meo obversatur* (cf. p. 27, s. v. *oculi*)—a vague notion presents itself to my mind.

*aliquem ad eam cogitationem adducere ut*—to induce a person to think that . . .

*alicuius animum ab aliqua re abducere*—to draw away some one's attention from a thing.

*cogitationem, animum in aliquid intendere* (Acad. 4. 46)—to direct one's attention . . .

*omnes cogitationes ad aliquid conferre*—to give all one's attention to a thing.

*mentem in aliqua re defigere*—to fix all one's thoughts on an object.

*in cogitatione defixum esse*—to be deep in thought.

*cogitationes in res humiles abicere* (De Amic. 9. 32) (opp. *alte spectare, ad altiora tendere, altum, magnificum, divinum suspicere*)—to study the commonplace.

## 3. CONCEPTIONS—IDEALS—PERFECTION

*notiones animo (menti) insitae, innatae*—innate ideas.

*intellegentiae adumbratae*<sup>1</sup> or *incohatae* (De Leg. 1. 22. 59)  
—vague, undeveloped ideas.

*notionem* or *rationem alicuius rei in animo informare* or *animo concipere*—to form a conception, notion of a thing.

*absolutus et perfectus*—absolutely perfect.

*omnibus numeris absolutus* (N. D. 2. 13)—perfect in every detail.

*ad summum perducere* } to bring to the highest perfection.

*perficere et absolvere*

*ad perfectionem, (ad summum) pervenire*—to attain perfection.

*absolutio et perfectio* (not *summa perfectio*)—ideal perfection.

<sup>1</sup> *adumbrare* is a technical term of painting = to make a sketch, outline of an object; then metaphorically, to merely hint at a thing. Its opposite is *exprimere*, technical term of sculpture, = figuratively, to represent exactly, clearly. It never has the simple meaning "to express."

*cogitatione, non re*—ideally, not really.

*undique expleta et perfecta forma*  
*species optima or eximia, speci-*  
*men, also simply species, forma* } an ideal.

*comprehensam quandam animo speciem (alicuius rei) habere*  
 —to have formed an ideal notion of a thing.

*singularem quandam perfectionis imaginem animo concipere*  
 —to conceive an ideal.

*imaginem perfecti oratoris adumbrare*—to sketch the ideal  
 of an orator.

*civitas optima, perfecta Platonis*  
*illa civitas Platonis commenticia*  
*illa civitas, quam Plato finxit* } Plato's ideal republic.

#### 4. OPINION—PREJUDICE—CONJECTURE

*in sententia manere, permanere, perseverare, perstare*—to  
 abide by, persist in one's opinion.

*illud, hoc teneo*—I abide by this opinion.

*a sententia sua discedere*  
*de sententia sua decedere* } to give up one's opinion.

*(de) sententia desistere*

*de sententia deici, depelli, deterreri*—to be forced to change  
 one's mind.

*de sententia aliquem deducere, movere*—to make a man  
 change his opinion.

*aliquem ad suam sententiam perducere* or *in suam sententiam*  
*adducere*—to win a man over to one's own way of  
 thinking.

*ad alicuius sententiam accedere, sententiam alicuius sequi*—  
 to adopt some one's opinion.

*idem sentire* (opp. *dissentire ab aliquo*)—to hold the same  
 views.

*sententiam suam aperire*<sup>1</sup>—to freely express one's opinions.

*sententiam fronte celare, tegere*—not to betray one's feel-  
 ings by one's looks.

*dic quid sentias*<sup>2</sup>—give me your opinion.

*in hac sum sententia, ut . . . putem*—I think that . . .

*plura in eam sententiam disputare*—to discuss a subject  
 more fully on the same lines.

*ut mea fert opinio*  
*ut mihi quidem videtur* } according to my opinion.

*mea (quidem) sententia*

*quot homines, tot sententiae*—many men, many minds.

*opiniones falsas animo imbibere*  
*opinionibus falsis imbui* } to be imbibing false  
 opinions.

*opinionis error*—erroneous opinion.

*opinio praeiudicata*, also simply *opinio* (not *praeiudicium* =  
 a preliminary decision)—prejudice.

*opinio confirmata, inveterata*—a rooted opinion.

*opinionum pravitate infici*—to be filled with absurd pre-  
 judices.

*opinionum commenta* (N. D. 2. 2. 5)—chimeras.

*monstra* or *portenta*—marvellous ideas; prodigies.

*coniectura assequi, consequi, aliquid coniectura colligere*—to  
 conjecture.

*quantum ego coniectura assequor, augūror*—as far as I can  
 guess.

*coniecturam alicuius rei facere* or *capere ex aliqua re*—to  
 infer by comparison, judge one thing by another.

<sup>1</sup> *se aperire* = to betray oneself; cf. *se indicare* (Liv. 2. 12).

<sup>2</sup> Not *sententiam dicere*, which is used of senators giving their  
 vote; cf. *suffragium ferre*.

*de se (ex se de aliis) coniecturam facere*—to judge others by oneself.

*aliquid in coniectura positum est*  
*aliquid coniectura nititur, con-*  
*tinetur (Div. 1. 14. 24)* } it is a matter of con-  
 jecture, supposition.

*probabilia coniectura sequi*—to try to conjecture probabilities.

*aliquid mihi nec opinanti, insperanti accidit*—a thing has happened contrary to my expectation.

### 5. TRUTH—ERROR

*verum dicere, profiteri*—to speak the truth, admit the truth.

*omnia ad veritatem*<sup>1</sup> *dicere*—to be truthful in all one's statements.

*veritatis amans, diligens, studiosus*—truthful; veracious.

*a vero aversum esse (Catil. 3. 1. 29)*—to be averse to truth.

*a veritate deflectere, desciscere*—to swerve from the truth.

*veri videndi, investigandi cupiditas*—love of truth.

*veri inquisitio atque investigatio*—zealous pursuit of truth.

*a vero abduci*—to be led away from the truth.

*proxime ad verum accedere*—to be very near the truth.

*a vero non abhorrere*  
*veri simile esse* } to be probable.

*haec speciosiora quam veriora sunt*—this is more plausible than true.

*vera et falsa (a falsis) diiudicare*—to distinguish true and false.

<sup>1</sup> *verum* = the truth, concrete; *veritas* = truth in the abstract.

*vera cum falsis confundere*—to confuse true with false.

*veritas*—veracity.

*re (vera), reapse (opp. specie)*—in truth; really.

*in errore versari*—to be mistaken.

*magno errore teneri*  
*in magno errore versari*  
*vehementer errare* } to be in gross error, seriously misled.

*erroribus implicari (Tusc. 4. 27. 58)*—to fall into error.

*per errorem labi*, or simply *labi*—to take a false step.

*aliquem in errorem inducere, rapere*—to lead a person into error.

*errorem animo imbibere*—to get a mistaken notion into the mind.

*errorem cum lacte nutricis sugere (Tusc. 3. 1. 2)*—to imbibe error from one's mother's breasts.

*error longe lateque diffusus*—a wide-spread error.

*errorem tollere*  
*errorem amputare et*  
*circumcidere* } to banish an error, do away with a false impression.

*errorem stirpitis extrahere*—to totally eradicate false principles.

*errorem deponere, corrigere*—to amend, correct one's mistake.

*alicui errorem demere, eripere, extorquere*—to undeceive a person.

*nisi fallor*  
*nisi (animus) me fallit* } if I am not mistaken.

*nisi omnia me fallunt*—unless I'm greatly mistaken.

## 6. CHOICE—DOUBT—SCRUPLE

*optionem alicui dare* (Acad. 2. 7. 19)—to give a person his choice.

*optionem alicui dare, utrum . . . an*—to offer a person the alternative of . . . or . . .

*in dubium vocare* } to throw doubt upon a thing.  
*in dubio ponere* }

*in dubium venire*—to become doubtful.

*quod aliquam (magnam) dubitationem habet* (Leg. Agr. 1. 4. 11)—a thing which is rather (very) dubious.

*dubitatio mihi affertur, inicitur*—a doubt arises in my mind.

*dubitationem alicui tollere*—to relieve a person of his doubts.

*aliquid in medio, in dubio relinquere* (Cael. 20. 48) } to leave a thing undecided.  
*aliquid dubium, incertum relinquere* }

*sine dubio* (not *sine ullo dubio*)—without doubt, beyond all doubt.

*sine ulla dubitatione*—without any hesitation; without the least scruple.

*scrupulum ex animo alicuius evellere* (Rosc. Am. 2. 6)—to relieve a man of his scruple.

*unus mihi restat scrupulus* (Ter. Andr. 5. 4. 37) (cf. too *religio*, p. 179)—one thing still makes me hesitate.

## 7. KNOWLEDGE—CERTAINTY—PERSUASION

*certo (certe) scio*<sup>1</sup> (Arch. 12. 32)—I know for a fact.

*probe scio, non ignoro* }  
*non sum ignarus, nescius* } I know very well.  
(not *non sum inscius*) }

*me non fugit, praeterit*—I am not unaware.

*quantum scio* } as far as I know.  
*quod sciam* }

*hoc (not tantum) certum est*—this much is certain.

*aliquid compertum habere*—to know a thing for certain.

*illud pro certo affirmare licet*—this much I can vouch for.

*mihi exploratum est, exploratum (certum) habeo*—I am quite certain on the point.

*inter omnes constat*—it is a recognised fact.

*mihi persuasum est*<sup>2</sup> } I am persuaded, convinced.  
*mihi persuasi* }

*sic habeto* }  
*persuade tibi* } convince yourself of this; rest  
*velim tibi ita persuadeas* } assured on this point.  
*sic volo te tibi persuadere* }

*addūcor, ut credam*—I am gradually convinced that . . .

*non possum adduci, ut (credam)*—I cannot make myself believe that . . .

*ex animi mei sententia* (*vid.* p. 179)—according to my strong conviction.

*suo iudicio uti*—to act in accordance with one's convictions.

<sup>1</sup> With *certe scio*, which is the form Cicero usually employs, the certitude lies in our knowledge, *certum est me scire*; with *certo scire* the certitude lies in the object of our knowledge. *certo* rarely occurs except with *scio*.

<sup>2</sup> Caesar occasionally uses *persuasum sibi habere*.

## 8. PLAN—ADVICE—DELIBERATION

*consilium capere, inire (de aliqua re, with Gen. gerund., with Inf., more rarely ut)*—to form a plan, make a resolution.

*consilio desistere*—to give up a project, an intention.

*consilium abicere or deponere*—to let a plan fall through.

*a consilio deterreri aliqua re*—to be deterred from one's intention by something.

*mediocribus consiliis uti*—to adopt half-measures.

*consilium, sententiam mutare*—to alter one's views, intentions.

*suo consilio uti*<sup>1</sup>—to go one's own way, proceed independently.

*magna moliri*—to be busy with ambitious projects.

*consilia cum aliquo communicare*<sup>2</sup>—(1) to communicate one's plans to some one; (2) to make common cause with a person. Similarly *c. causam, rationem*.

*consilia inter se communicare*—to take common counsel.

*aliquem in or ad consilium adhibere*—to consult a person, take his advice.

<sup>1</sup> *uti* is similarly used in several phrases, especially with the meaning of having, showing, enjoying, practising, proving, etc., e.g. *uti ventis secundis, adversis; praesenti animo uti*, to show presence of mind; *perpetua felicitate*, to enjoy . . . ; *prudencia, severitate, crudelitate*, to show . . . ; *bona valetudine, prospero fortunae statu*, to enjoy . . . ; cf. v. 6.

<sup>2</sup> *communicare (aliquid cum aliquo)* means properly to share a thing with some one. From this are developed the two senses—1. to give some one something, e.g. *consilia, laudem, gloriam alicuius rei*; 2. to receive a share of a thing, e.g. *pericula, paupertatem*. "To communicate," i.e. to announce, inform, is represented by *dicere, tradere, narrare, exponere, certiolem facere*, etc.

*consilium habere (de aliqua re)*—to deliberate together (of a number of people).

*consultare or deliberare (de aliqua re)*—to deliberate, consider (of individuals).

*consiliis arcanis interesse* (Liv. 35. 18)—to be present at secret consultations.

*consilium dare alicui*  
*auctorem esse alicui, ut* } to give a person advice.

*aliquem consilio (et re) iuvare*—to give a person the advantage of one's advice (and actual support).

*consilii mei copiam facio tibi*—I put myself at your disposal as regards advice.

*consilium petere ab aliquo*—to apply to a person for advice.

*consilii inopem esse*—to be perplexed.

*omnia consilia frigent* (Verr. 2. 25)—advice is useless in this case; the situation is very embarrassing.

*nullo consilio, nulla ratione, temere*—without reflection; inconsiderately; rashly.

*secum (cum animo) reputare aliquid*  
*considerare in, cum animo, secum aliquid*  
*agitare (in) mente or (in) animo aliquid* } to think over, consider a thing.

*aliquid cadit in deliberationem* (Off. 1. 3. 9)—a subject becomes matter for reflection.

*re diligenter considerata, perpensa*  
*omnibus rebus circumspectis*  
*inīta subductaque ratione* } after mature deliberation.

## 9. RESOLVE—DESIGN—INTENTION

*in animo habeo or mihi est in animo* c. Inf.—I am resolved; it is my intention.

*certum (mihi) est*—I am determined.

- certum deliberatumque est*  
*stat mihi sententia* (Liv. 21. 30) } I am firmly resolved.  
*incertus sum, quid consilii capiam*—I am undecided . . .  
*mihi non constat* (with indirect question)—I have not  
 made up my mind.  
*propositum est mihi* c. Inf.—I intend, propose to . . .  
*propositum, consilium tenere* (opp. *a proposito deterreri*)—  
 to abide by one's resolution.  
*propositum*<sup>1</sup> *assequi, peragere*—to carry out one's plan.  
*magna sibi proponere* or *magna spectare*—to have a high  
 object in view; to be ambitious.  
*in incepto* or *conatu perstare* }  
*in proposito susceptoque con-* } to persevere in one's resolve  
*silio permanere* }  
*incepto* or *conatu desistere*—to give up one's project.  
*parare aliquid*—to take measures for . . .  
*animum inducere* c. Inf. (*in animum inducere* rare)—  
 to persuade oneself to . . .  
*a me impetrare non possum, ut*—I cannot bring myself  
 to . . .  
*descendere ad aliquid, ad omnia* (*vid. note, p. 54*)—to con-  
 sent to . . ., lend oneself to . . .  
*descendere ad extrema consilia* (Fam. 10. 33. 4)—to have  
 recourse to extreme measures.

## 10. OBJECT—AIM—HESITATION—DELAY

*consilium est* c. Inf. or *ut* } my intention is . . .  
*id sequor, ut* }

<sup>1</sup> In classical prose *propositum* is still semi-adjectival and has not yet acquired all the functions of a substantive; consequently it cannot be joined to a genitive, an adjective, or a pronoun. Cf. the treatment of *factum, dictum*, etc., in Augustan Latin.

- spectare aliquid* or *ad aliquid*—to have an object in view.  
*res eo spectat, ut*—the matter tends towards . . ., has  
 this object.<sup>1</sup>  
*res spectat ad vim (arma)*—there seems a prospect of  
 armed violence; things look like violence.  
*id quod voluit consecutus est* } he attained his object.  
*ad id quod voluit pervenit* }  
*quid tibi vis?*—what do you mean to do?  
*quid hoc sibi vult?* } what is the meaning of this?  
*quid hoc rei est?* }  
*eo consilio, ea mente, ut*—with the intention of . . .  
*de industria, dedita opera* (opp. *imprudens*)—designedly;  
 intentionally.  
*ad id ipsum*<sup>2</sup>—with this very object.  
*infecta re* (Liv. 9. 32)—to no purpose; ineffectually.  
*moram alicui rei afferre, inferre, facere*—to retard, delay  
 a thing.  
*in mora alicui esse*—to detain a person.  
*nullam moram interponere, quin* (Phil. 10. 1. 1)—to make  
 all possible haste to . . .  
*sine mora* or *nulla mora interposita*—without delay.  
*diem ex die ducere, differre*—to put off from one day to  
 another.

## 11. REMEMBRANCE—FORGETFULNESS

*memoriâ tenere aliquid* } to remember a thing per-  
*memoriam alicuius rei tenere* } fectly.

<sup>1</sup> Note *Athenae a Persis petuntur*, the object of the Persian invasion is Athens (Nep. Them. 2. 6).

<sup>2</sup> The aim, tendency of a writing or a poem is *consilium, quo liber scriptus est, quo carmen compositum est, or quod quis in libro scribendo secutus est, not consilium libri.*

*recenti memoria tenere aliquid*—to have a vivid recollection of a thing.

*memoriâ (multum) valere (opp. memoriâ vacillare)*  
*memorem esse (opp. obliuiosum esse)* } to have a good memory.

*memoria tanta fuit, ut*—he had such an extraordinary memory that . . .

*memoriâ labi*—to make a slip of the memory.

*memoriae mandare aliquid*<sup>1</sup>—to impress on the memory.

*ex memoria (opp. de scripto)*—from memory; by heart.

*memoriter*—(1) with good memory; (2) from personal recollection.

*memoria custodire*—to keep in mind.

*memoriam alicuius rei renovare, revocare (redintegrare)*—to recall a thing to one's recollection.

*memoriam alicuius rei repetere* } to recall to mind a thing or  
*in memoriam alicuius redire* } person.

*in memoriam alicuius redigere, reducere aliquid (not revocare)*  
 —to recall a thing to a person's mind.

*memoria et recordatio*—vivid recollection.

*grata memoria aliquem prosequi*<sup>2</sup>—to show a thankful appreciation of a person's kindness.

*nomen alicuius grato animo prosequi*—to think of a person with a grateful sense of his goodness.

*memoriam alicuius rei repraesentare (opp. memoriam alicuius rei deponere, abicere)*—to picture to oneself again.

<sup>1</sup> Distinguish this expression from *ediscere* which = to learn by heart; also from *memoriae prodere, tradere* = to hand down as tradition (*vid.* p. 110).

<sup>2</sup> *Prosequi* used figuratively, with an ablative, occurs in several phrases—e.g. *prosequi aliquem honore; verbis honorificis; beneficiis, officiis, studiis suis; omnibus, votis, lacrimis.*

*memoriam alicuius rei conservare, retinere*—to retain the recollection of a thing.

*memoriam alicuius pie inviolateque servare*—to show an affectionate regard for a person's memory.

*gratam (gratissimam) alicuius memoriam retinere*—to retain a (most) pleasant impression of a person.

*numquam ex animo meo memoria illius rei discedet*—the memory of this will never fade from my mind.

*aliquid in memoria nostra penitus insidet (de Or. 2. 28. 122)*—a thing has been vividly impressed on my memory.

*memoriam eius nulla unquam delebit (obscurabit) obliuio (Fam. 2. 1)*  
*semper memoria eius in (omnium) mentibus haerebit* } nothing will ever make me forgetful of him.

*nomen suum posteritati aliqua re commendare, propagare, prodere*—to win renown amongst posterity by some act.

*memoriam nominis sui immortalitati tradere, mandare, commendare*—to immortalise one's name.

*post hominum memoriam*  
*post homines natos* } within the memory of man.

*memoriae causa, ad (not in) memoriam*<sup>1</sup> (*Brut.* 16. 62)—in memory of . . .

*obliuio alicuius rei me capit*—I forget something.

*aliquem in obliuionem alicuius rei adducere (pass. in obliuionem venire)*—to make a person forget a thing.

*aliquid excidit e memoria, effluit, excidit ex animo*—a thing escapes, vanishes from the memory.

<sup>1</sup> One can also say *monumenti causa*—e.g. *aliquid alicui monumenti causa relinquere.* Cf. such turnings as *alicuius memoriam aliqua re prosequi, celebrare, renovare.*



*memoria alicuius rei excidit, abiit, abolevit*—the recollection of a thing has been entirely lost.

*obliterari*<sup>1</sup> (Liv. 26. 41)

*memoria alicuius rei obscuratur,*

*obliteratur, evanescit*

*oblivioni esse, dari*

*in oblivionem adduci*

*oblivione obrui, deleri, exstingui*

*in oblivione iacere* (of persons)

*aliquid ab oblivione vindicare*—to rescue from oblivion.

*mementote* with Acc. c. Inf.—do not forget.

to be forgotten, pass into oblivion.

## 12. THEORY—PRACTICE—EXPERIENCE

*ratione, doctrina* (opp. *usu*) *aliquid cognitum habere*—to have a theoretical knowledge of a thing.

*ad artem, ad rationem revocare aliquid* (De Or. 2. 11. 44)

—to reduce a thing to its theoretical principles; to apply theory to a thing.

*doctrinam ad usum adiungere*—to combine theory with practice.

*in rebus atque in usu versatum esse*—to have had practical experience.

*usu*<sup>2</sup> *praeditum esse*—to possess experience.

*magnum usum in aliqua re habere*—to have had great experience in a thing.

*multarum rerum usus*—varied, manifold experience.

<sup>1</sup> This and the following expressions are useful to express the passive of *oblivisci*.

<sup>2</sup> Not *experientia*, which in classical prose means attempt, proof.

*usu rerum (vitae, vitae commu-*

*nis) edocti scimus*

*experti scimus, didicimus*

*usu cognitum habemus*

} we know from experience.

*res ipsa, usus rerum (cotidie) docet*—everyday experience tells us this.

*(rerum) imperitum esse*—to have had no experience of the world.

*multa acerba expertus est*<sup>1</sup>—he has had many painful experiences.

*usus me docuit*—experience has taught me.

## VII. THE ARTS AND SCIENCES

### I. SCIENTIFIC KNOWLEDGE IN GENERAL—LITERATURE

*optima studia, bonae, optimae, liberales, ingenuae artes, disciplinae*—the sciences; the fine arts.

*litterarum*<sup>2</sup> *studium* or *tractatio* (not *occupatio*)—the study of belles-lettres; literary pursuits.

*homines litterarum studiosi* } learned, scientific, literary  
*homines docti* } men.

<sup>1</sup> *experiri* is only used of personal experience.

<sup>2</sup> *littera* in sing. = letter of the alphabet, e.g. *litteram nullam ad me misit*. In plur. = 1. letters of the alphabet, characters (cf. viii. 9); 2. a letter (*epistola*); 3. writings, books, e.g. *graecae de philosophia litterae*; 4. literature, *graecas litteras discere*; 5. literary pursuits; 6. science; 7. culture, erudition, learning, *erant in eo plurimae litterae, neque eae vulgares, sed interiores quaedam et reconditae*.

- artium studia* or *artes vigent* (not *florent*)—learning, scientific knowledge is flourishing.
- litterae iacent, neglectae iacent*<sup>1</sup>—scholarship, culture, literature is at a low ebb.
- litteras colere*—to be engaged in the pursuit of letters.
- litteras amplecti*  
*litteras adamasse* ( only in perf. and plup.) } to be an enthusiastic devotee of letters.
- in studio litterarum versari*—to be engaged in literary pursuits.
- in aliquo litterarum genere versari*—to be engaged in some one branch of study.
- summo studio in litteris versari*—to be an ardent student of . . .
- se totum litteris tradere, dedere*—to devote oneself entirely to literature.
- se totum in litteras* or *se litteris abdere*—to be quite engrossed in literary studies.
- in litteris elaborare* (De Sen. 8. 26)—to apply oneself very closely to literary, scientific work.
- in litteris acquiescere* or *conquiescere*—to find recreation in study.
- aetatem in litteris ducere, agere*—to devote one's life to science, study.
- omne (otiosum) tempus in litteris consumere*—to devote all one's leisure moments to study.
- omne studium in litteris collocare, ad litteras conferre*—to employ all one's energies on literary work.

<sup>1</sup> *iacere* metaphorically is used not only of things neglected and abandoned, but of persons (cf. *frigere*) who have lost all their political influence.

- optimarum artium studio incensum esse*—to be interested in, have a taste for culture.
- litterarum studio trahi*  
*trahi, ferri ad litteras* } to feel an attraction for study.
- litterarum studia remittere*—to relax one's studies.
- intermissa studia revocare*—to resume one's studies.
- primis (ut dicitur)*<sup>1</sup> or *primoribus labris gustare* or *attingere litteras*—to have a superficial knowledge, a smattering of literature, of the sciences.
- litterae*—literature.
- litterae ac monumenta*, or simply *monumenta*—written records; documents.
- litterae latinae*<sup>2</sup>—Roman literature.
- clarissima litterarum lumina*—shining lights in the literary world.
- graecis litteris studere*—to study Greek literature.
- multum (mediocriter) in graecis litteris versari*—to be well (slightly) acquainted with Greek literature.

## 2. LEARNING—ERUDITION

- vir* or *homo doctus, litteratus*—a man of learning; a scholar; a savant.
- vir doctissimus*—a great scholar.
- vir perfecte planeque eruditus*—a man of profound erudition.
- vir omni doctrina eruditus*—a man perfect in all branches of learning.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Pro Caelio 12, 28 *extremis ut dicitur digitis attingere*.

<sup>2</sup> *latinus* is only used of language and literature, *Romanus* of nationality.

- multi viri docti*, or *multi et ii docti* (not *multi docti*)—many learned men ; many scholars.
- omnes docti, quivis doctus, doctissimus quisque*—all learned men.
- nemo doctus*—no man of learning.
- nemo mediocriter doctus*—no one with any pretence to education.
- latinis litteris* or *latine doctus*—acquainted with the Latin language.
- bene*<sup>1</sup> *latine doctus* or *sciens*—a good Latin scholar.
- doctrina abundare* (De Or. 3. 16. 59)—to be a man of great learning.
- a doctrina mediocriter instructum esse*—to have received only a moderate education (lit. on the side of learning).
- doctrina exquisita, subtilis, elegans*<sup>2</sup>—sound knowledge ; scholarship.
- doctrina recondita*—profound erudition.
- studia, quae in reconditis artibus versantur* (De Or. 1. 2. 8)—abstruse studies.
- magnam doctrinae speciem prae se ferre*—to pass as a man of great learning.
- vita umbratilis* (*vid.* p. 98)—the contemplative life of a student.

<sup>1</sup> For the use of adverbs to modify adjectives and other adverbs *vid.* Nägelsbach Lat. Stil. p. 278 ; cf. *bene multi, bene mane, bene penitus* (Verr. 2. 70. 169), *impie ingratus* (Tusc. 5. 2. 6) etc. Such combinations are especially frequent in Tacitus, Velleius, Seneca, and Quintilian. For *latine* by itself cf. Cic. Opt. Gen. 4 *latine, id est pure et emendate, loqui*. If the style is to be criticised, adverbs can be added—e.g. *bene, perbene, pessime, eleganter*, etc., cf. vii. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Not *solida*, which means properly entire, massive—e.g. *marmor solidum, crateres auro solidi*, then metaph. e.g.—*solida laus, utilitas*.

- litterarum scientiam* (only in sing.) *habere*—to possess literary knowledge.
- scientiam alicuius rei consequi* } to acquire knowledge of a  
*scientia comprehendere aliquid* } subject.
- penitus percipere et comprehendere aliquid* (De Or. 1. 23. 108)—to have a thorough grasp of a subject.
- scientia augere aliquem*—to enrich a person's knowledge.
- multa cognita, percepta habere,*  
*multa didicisse* }  
*multarum rerum cognitione im-* } to be well-informed, eru-  
*butum esse* (opp. *litterarum* } dite.  
or *eruditionis expertem esse*  
or [*rerum*] *rudem esse*) }

### 3. CULTURE—CIVILISATION

- animum, ingenium excolere* (not *colere*)—to cultivate the mind.
- animi, ingenii cultus* (not *cultura*)—mental culture.
- optimis studiis* or *artibus, opti-*  
*marum artium studiis erudi-* } to have received a liberal  
*tum esse* } education.
- litteras scire*
- litterae interiores et reconditae, artes reconditae*—profound scientific education.
- sunt in illo, ut in homine Romano, multae litterae* (De Sen. 4. 12)—for a Roman he is decidedly well educated.
- litteris leviter imbutum* or *tinctum esse*—to have received a superficial education.
- omni vita atque victu excultum atque expolitum esse* (Brut. 25. 95)—to have attained to a high degree of culture.

*omnis cultus et humanitatis ex-*  
*pertem esse*<sup>1</sup> } to be quite uncivilised.  
*ab omni cultu et humanitate*  
*longe abesse* (B. G. I. I. 3) }  
*homines, gentem a fera agrestique vita ad humanum cultum*  
*civilemque deducere* (De Or. I. 8. 33)—to civilise  
 men, a nation.

#### 4. EDUCATION—INSTRUCTION—SCHOOL— PROFESSION

*liberaliter, ingenue, bene educari*—to receive a liberal  
 education.  
*severa disciplina contineri*—to be brought up under strict  
 discipline.  
*aliquem ad humanitatem informare* or *instituere*—to teach  
 a person refinement.  
*mores alicuius corrigere*—to improve a person.  
*in viam reducere aliquem*—to bring a person back to the  
 right way.  
*in viam redire*—to return to the right way.  
*litteras discere ab aliquo*—to be educated by some one.  
*institui* or *erudiri ab aliquo* } to receive instruction from  
*disciplina alicuius uti, magistro* } some one.  
*aliquo uti* }  
*e disciplina alicuius profectum esse*—to be brought up in  
 some one's school.  
*puerum alicui erudiendum* or *in disciplinam tradere*—to en-  
 trust a child to the tuition of . . .  
*operam dare* or simply *se dare alicui, se tradere in discip-*

<sup>1</sup> Not *incultum esse*, which refers only to external appearance.

*linam alicuius, se conferre, se applicare ad aliquem*—  
 to become a pupil, disciple of some one.  
*multum esse cum aliquo* (Fam. 16. 21)—to enjoy close  
 intercourse with . . . (of master and pupil).  
*ludus* (*discendi* or *litterarum*)—an elementary school.  
*schola*—a school for higher education.  
*scholam frequentare*—to go to a school.  
*disciplina* (*institutio*) *puerilis* (not *liberorum*)—the teaching  
 of children.  
*pueros elementa* (*prima*) *docere*—to teach children the  
 rudiments.  
*primis litterarum elementis imbui*—to receive the first ele-  
 ments of a liberal education.  
*doctrinae, quibus aetas puerilis* }  
*impertiri solet* (Nep. Att. } the usual subjects taught  
 I. 2) } to boys.  
*artes, quibus aetas puerilis ad* }  
*humanitatem informari solet* }  
*erudire aliquem artibus, litteris* (but *erudire aliquem in*  
*iure civili, in re militari*)—to teach some one  
 letters.  
*natum, factum esse ad aliquid* (*faciendum*)—to be born for  
 a thing, endowed by nature for it.  
*adversante et repugnante natura* or *invitâ Minervâ* (*ut aiunt*)  
*aliquid facere* (Off. I. 31. 110)—to do a thing which  
 is not one's vocation, which goes against the  
 grain  
*crassa* or *pingui Minerva* (proverb.)—with no intelligence  
 or skill.  
*calcaria alicui adhibere, admovere*; *stimulos alicui admovere*  
 —to spur, urge a person on.  
*frenos adhibere alicui*—to restrain some one.

- bona indole* (always in sing.) } to be gifted, talented (not  
*praeditum esse* } *praeditum esse* by itself).  
*ingenio valere* }
- summo ingenio praeditum esse*—to possess rich mental endowments.
- in aliqua re progressus facere, proficere, progredi*—to make progress in a subject.
- aliquid efficere, consequi in aliqua re* (De Or. I. 33. 152)—to obtain a result in something.
- adulescens alios bene de se sperare iubet, bonam spem ostendit* or *alii de adulescente bene sperare possunt*—he is a young man of great promise.
- adulescens bonae (egregiae) spei*—a promising youth.
- magna est exspectatio ingenii tui*—we expect a great deal from a man of your calibre.
- desudare in scholae umbra* or *umbraculis*<sup>1</sup>—to exert oneself in the schools.
- genus vitae (vivendi) or aetatis degendae deligere*<sup>2</sup>—to choose a career, profession.
- viam vitae ingredi* (Flacc. 42. 105)—to enter upon a career.
- philosophiam, medicinam profiteri* } to be a philosopher,  
*se philosophum, medicum (esse)* } physician by profes-  
*profiteri* } sion.
- qui ista profitentur*—men of that profession.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *umbra, umbracula (-orum)*, and *umbratilis* (vid. vii. 2, *vita umbratilis*), used of the retired life of a savant as opposed to *sol, lux ori* or *forensis*. Cf. De Legg. 3. 6. 14 *Phalereus ille Demetrius mirabiliter doctrinam ex umbraculis eruditorum otioque non modo in solem atque in pulverem sed in ipsum discrimen aciemque produxit.*

<sup>2</sup> The *locus classicus* on the choice of a profession is De Officiis I. 32. 115-122.

## 5. EXAMPLE—PATTERN—PRECEDENT

- exemplum clarum, praeclarum* } a good,<sup>1</sup> brilliant example ;  
*exemplum luculentum* } a striking example.  
*exemplum illustre* }
- exemplum magnum, grande*—a weighty example, precedent.
- exemplum afferre* } to quote an example.  
*exemplo uti* }
- aliquem (aliquid) exempli causa*<sup>2</sup> *ponere, proferre, nominare, commemorare*—to cite a person or thing as an example.
- aliquid exemplis probare, comprobare, confirmare*—to quote precedents for a thing.
- aliquid exemplis ostendere*—to demonstrate by instances.
- exempla petere, repetere a rerum gestarum memoria* or *historiarum (annalium, rerum gestarum) monumentis*—to borrow instances from history.
- exempla a rerum Romanarum (Graecarum) memoria petita*—examples taken from Roman (Greek) history.
- multa exempla in unum (locum) colligere*—to collect, accumulate instances.
- ex infinita exemplorum copia unum (pauca) sumere, decerpere (eligere)*—to choose one from a large number of instances.

<sup>1</sup> Not *bonum exemplum*, which means an example morally good for us to follow.

<sup>2</sup> "For example" must not be translated by *exempli causa*, which is only used in complete sentences with such verbs as *ponere, afferre, proferre, nominare*. *verbi causa (gratia)* = "for instance," "we will say," usually refers to a single expression, e.g. *quid dicis igitur? miserum fuisse verbi causa M. Crassum?* (Tusc. I. 4. 12). Often examples are introduced by such words as *ut, velut, in his*, etc., e.g. *bestiae quae gignuntur in terra, veluti crocodili* (N. D. 2. 48. 124).

- a Socrate exemplum virtutis petere, repetere*—to quote Socrates as a model of virtue.
- similitudines afferre*—to cite parallel cases.
- auctore aliquo uti ad aliquid*  
*auctorem aliquem habere ali-*  
*cuius rei* } to have as authority for a thing.
- auctoritatem alicuius sequi*—to be guided by another's example.
- auctoritas et exemplum* (Balb. 13. 31)—standard and pattern.
- sibi exemplum alicuius proponere ad imitandum* or simply *sibi aliquem ad imitandum proponere*—to set up some one as one's ideal, model.
- sibi exemplum sumere ex aliquo* or *exemplum capere de aliquo*—to take a lesson from some one's example.
- ad exemplum alicuius se conformare*—to shape one's conduct after another's model.
- exemplum edere, prodere*  
*exemplo esse* } to set an example.
- exemplum in aliquo* or *in aliquem statuere* } to inflict an exemplary punishment on some one.
- exemplum (severitatis) edere in aliquo* (Q. Fr. 1. 2. 2. 5) }
- bene (male) praecipere alicui*—to inculcate good (bad) principles.
- praecepta dare, tradere de aliqua re*—to give advice, directions, about a matter.
- ad praecipendi rationem delābi* (Q. Fr. 1. 1. 6. 18)—to adopt a didactic tone.
- aliquid in animo haeret, penitus insedit* or *infixum est*—a thing is deeply impressed on the mind.

- aliquid animo mentique penitus mandare* (Catil. 1. 11. 27)—to impress a thing on one's memory, mind.
- demittere aliquid in pectus* or *in pectus animumque suum*—to take a thing to heart.
- hoc verbum alte descendit in pectus alicuius*—what he said made a deep impression on . . .

## 6. PHILOSOPHY

- se conferre ad philosophiam, ad philosophiae or sapientiae studium* (Fam. 4. 3. 4)—to devote oneself to philosophy.
- animum appellere* or *se applicare ad philosophiam*—to apply oneself to the study of philosophy.
- philosophiae (sapientiae) studio teneri* (Acad. 1. 2. 4)—to be enamoured of philosophy.
- in portum philosophiae confugere*—to take refuge in philosophy.
- in sinum philosophiae compelli*—to be driven into the arms of philosophy.
- philosophia (neglecta) iacet* (vid. p. 92, note)—philosophy is neglected, at low ebb.
- philosophiam latinis litteris illustrare* (Acad. 1. 1. 3)—to write expositions of philosophy in Latin.
- Ciceronis de philosophia libri*—Cicero's philosophical writings.
- decreta, inventa philosophorum*—the tenets, dogmas of philosophers.
- quae in philosophia tractantur*—philosophical subjects.
- praecepta philosophorum (penitus) percepta habere*—to be well acquainted with the views of philosophers.
- illae sententiae evanuerunt*—those views are out of date.

*illae sententiae iam pridem explosae et eiectae sunt* (Fin. 5. 8. 23)—those ideas have long ago been given up.  
*schola, disciplina, familia; secta*—a sect, school of thought.  
*sectam alicuius sequi* (Brut. 31. 120)  
*disciplinam alicuius profiteri* } to be a follower, disciple of some one.  
*qui sunt a Platone* or *a Platonis disciplina; qui profecti sunt a Platone; Platonici*—disciples of Plato, Platonists.  
*Solo, unus de septem (illis)*—Solon, one of the seven sages.  
*Pythagorae doctrina longe lateque fluxit* (Tusc. 4. 1. 2)—Pythagoras' principles were widely propagated.  
*scholas habere, explicare* (Fin. 2. 1. 1)—to give lectures.  
*scholis interesse*—to attend lectures.  
*tradere (aliquid de aliqua re)*—to teach.  
*audire Platonem, auditorem esse Platonis*—to attend Plato's lectures.

## 7. THE PARTS OF PHILOSOPHY

*physica*<sup>1</sup> (-orum) (Or. 34. 119); *philosophia naturalis*—physics; natural philosophy.  
*dialectica* (-ae or -orum) (pure Latin *disserendi ratio et scientia*)—logic, dialectic.  
*disserendi praecepta tradere*—to teach logic.  
*disserendi elegantia*—logical minuteness, precision.  
*disserendi subtilitas* (De Or. 1. 1. 68)—dialectical nicety.  
*disserendi spinae* (Fin. 4. 28. 79)—subtleties of logic; dilemmas.  
*disserendi peritus et artifex* } an accomplished dialectician.  
*homo in dialecticis versatissimus* }

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Acad. 1. 5. 19 *philosophandi ratio triplex; una de vita et moribus, altera de natura et rebus occultis, tertia de disserendo.*

*disserendi artem nullam habere*—to know nothing of logic.  
*dialecticis ne imbutum*<sup>1</sup> *quidem esse*—to be ignorant of even the elements of logic.  
*ratione, eleganter* (opp. *nulla ratione, ineleganter, confuse*)  
*disponere aliquid*—to arrange on strictly logical principles.  
*philosophia, quae est de vita et moribus* (Acad. 1. 5. 19)  
*philosophia, in qua de bonis rebus et malis, deque hominum vita et moribus disputatur* } moral science; ethics.  
*philosophia, quae in rerum contemplatione versatur, or quae artis praeceptis continetur*—theoretical, speculative philosophy.  
*philosophia*,<sup>2</sup> *quae in actione versatur*—practical philosophy.  
*omnes philosophiae loci*—the whole domain of philosophy.

## 8. SYSTEM—METHOD—PRINCIPLES

*ratio; disciplina, ratio et disciplina; ars*—system.  
*ad artem redigere aliquid*  
*ad rationem, ad artem et praecepta* } to systematise.  
*revocare aliquid* (De Or. 1. 41)  
*arte conclusum esse*—to have been reduced to a system.  
*ratio et doctrina*—systematic, methodical knowledge.  
*artificio et via tradere aliquid*—to give a scientific explanation of a thing.

<sup>1</sup> *imbuere* is properly to give the first touch to, tinge, bathe, e.g. *gladii sanguine imbuti*. Metaph. it = (1) to fill with, e.g. *religione, pietate, superstitione, crudelitate*; (2) to teach, initiate, e.g. *animum honestis artibus*, and is used especially of a superficial knowledge.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Sen. Ep. 25. 10 *philosophia activa*.

*artificiose redigere aliquid*  
*ad rationis praecepta accommo-*  
*dare aliquid* } to treat with scientific  
 exactness; to classify.

*totam rationem evertere* (pass. *iacet tota ratio*)—to upset the whole system.

*ratione et via, via et ratione progredi, disputare* (Or. 33. 116)  
 to proceed, carry on a discussion logically.

*novam rationem ingredi*—to enter on a new method.

*a certa ratione proficisci*—to be based on a sound principle.

*a falsis principiis proficisci*—to start from false premises.

*ad philosophorum* or *philosophandi rationes revocare aliquid*  
 —to deal with a subject on scientific principles.

*perpetuitas et constantia* (Tusc. 5. 10. 31)—logical consistency.

#### 9. SPECIES—DEFINITION—CLASSIFICATION— CONNECTION

*partes*<sup>1</sup> *generibus subiectae sunt*—the species is subordinate to the genus.

*genus univcrsum in species certas partiri et dividere* (Or. 33. 117)—to analyse a general division into its specific parts.

*genere, non numero* or *magnitudine differre*—to differ qualitatively not quantitatively.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Cic. De Or. 1. 42 for the definition. *genus autem id est, quod sui similes communiōne quadam, specie autem differentes, duas aut plures complectitur partes. partes autem sunt, quae generibus eis ex quibus manant subiciuntur; omniaque quae sunt vel generum vel partium nomina, definitionibus, quam vim habeant, est exprimendum. est enim definitio rerum earum, quae sunt eius rei propriae, quam definire volumus, brevis et circumscripta quaedam explicatio.*

*spinae partiendi et definiendi* (Tusc. 5. 8. 22)—minute, captious subdivisions and definitions.

*rem (res) definire*—to define a thing.

*a definitione proficisci*—to start from a definition.

*involutae rei notitiam definiendo aperire* (Or. 33. 116)—to make an obscure notion clear by means of definition.

*sub metum subiectum esse*—to be comprised under the term "fear."

*constituere, quid et quale sit, de quo disputetur*—to determine the nature and constitution of the subject under discussion.

*in ordinem redigere aliquid*—to systematise, classify a thing.

*conexum et aptum esse inter se*—to be closely connected with each other.

*cohaerere, coniunctum esse cum aliqua re*—to be closely connected with a thing.

*arte (artissime) coniunctum esse* } to be very intimately re-  
*apte (aptissime) cohaerere* } lated.

*continuatio seriesque rerum, ut alia ex alia nexa et omnes inter se aptae colligataeque sint* (N. D. 1. 4. 9)—systematic succession, concatenation.

*diffusum, dissipatum esse*—to have no coherence, connection.

*confusum, perturbatum esse*—to be confused.

*rem dissolutam conglutinare, coagmentare*—to reunite disconnected elements.



## 10. PROOF—REFUTATION

*argumentum*<sup>1</sup> *firmum, magnum*—a strong, striking proof.

*argumentum afferre*—to bring forward a proof.

*argumentum immortalitatis afferre* (not *pro*)—to quote an argument in favour of immortality.

*argumentum afferre, quo animos immortales esse demonstratur*  
—to bring forward a proof of the immortality of the soul.

*argumento huic rei est, quod*—a proof of this is that . . .

*aliquid planum facere* (Ad Herenn. 2. 5)—to demonstrate, make a thing clear.

*aliquid alicui probare* (or c. Acc. c. Inf.)—to prove one's point to a person's satisfaction.

*argumentis confirmare, comprobare, evincere aliquid* (or c. Acc. c. Inf.)—to prove a thing indisputably.

*argumentum ducere, sumere ex aliqua re* or *petere ab aliqua re*  
—to derive an argument from a thing.

*argumentum premere* (not *urgere*)—to persist in an argument, press a point.

*loci* (τόποι) *argumentorum* (De Or. 2. 162)—the points on which proofs are based; the grounds of proof.

*argumenta refellere, confutare*—to refute arguments.

*rationem*<sup>1</sup> *afferre* (Verr. 3. 85. 195)—to bring forward an argument (based on common-sense).

## 11. CONCLUSION—HYPOTHESIS—INFERENCE

*concludere, colligere, efficere, cogere ex aliqua re*—to draw a conclusion from a thing.

<sup>1</sup> *argumentum*=a proof resting on facts; *ratio*=an argument drawn from the general reasonableness of the proposition.

*acute, subtiliter concludere*—to draw a subtle inference.

*ratio* or *rationis conclusio efficit*—the conclusion proves that . . .

*ratiocinatio, ratio*—the syllogism; reasoning.

*prima*<sup>1</sup> (*superiora*); *consequentia* (Fin. 4. 19. 54)—premises; consequences.

*conclusiuncula fallax* or *captio*—a fallacious argument; sophism.

*positum est a nobis primum* (c. Acc. c. Inf.)—we start by presupposing that . . .

*hoc posito*—on this supposition, hypothesis.

*hoc probato consequens est*—it follows from what we have shown.

*sequitur* (not *ex quo seq.*) *ut* } it follows from this that . . .  
*ex quo, unde, hinc efficitur ut* }

## 12. DEBATE—CONTROVERSY

*disputatio, quaestio*—systematic, scientific discussion.

*disputare*<sup>2</sup> (*de aliqua re, ad aliquid*)—to discuss, investigate a subject scientifically.

*subtiliter disputare*—to thoroughly discuss.

*in utramque partem, in contrarias partes disputare* (De Or. 1. 34)—to discuss both sides of a question.

*in nullam partem disputare*—to say nothing either for or against an argument.

<sup>1</sup> In a syllogism the technical term for the major premise is *propositio* or *propositio major*; for the minor, *propositio minor*; for the conclusion, *conclusio*.

<sup>2</sup> *disputare*=to discuss, considering the arguments *pro* and *con*, used of a number of people with different opinions. *disserere de aliqua re*=to discourse on a matter for the benefit of those present; but in both cases the substantive is *disputatio*.

- non repugno*—I have nothing to say against it.  
*pertinacem* (opp. *clementem*) *esse in disputando*—to be dogmatic; positive.  
*opponere alicui aliquid*—to object, to adduce in contradiction.  
*dare, concedere aliquid*—to grant, admit a thing.  
*sumere* (opp. *reicere*) *aliquid*—to assume a thing.  
*tenere aliquid; stare in aliqua re*—to insist on a point.  
*obtinere aliquid*—to maintain one's assertion, prove oneself right.  
*in controversia (contentione) esse, versari* } to be at variance  
*in controversiam cadere* } with.  
*in controversiam vocare, adducere aliquid*—to make a thing the subject of controversy.  
*in controversiam vocari, adduci, venire* (De Or. 2. 72. 291)  
 —to be contested, become the subject of debate.  
*in controversia relinquere aliquid*—to leave a point undecided.  
*controversiam (contentionem) habere cum aliquo*—to maintain a controversy with some one.  
*in contentione ponitur, utrum . . . an*—it is a debated point whether . . . or . . .  
*id, de quo agitur* or *id quod cadit in controversiam*—the point at issue.  
*controversiam sedare, dirimere, componere, tollere*—to put an end to, settle a dispute.  
*controversiam diiudicare*—to decide a debated question.  
*transigere aliquid cum aliquo*—to come to an understanding with a person.  
*res mihi tecum est*—I have a point to discuss with you.  
*sine (ulla) controversia*—indisputably; incontestably.

- hoc est a (pro) me*—this goes to prove what I say.  
*res ipsa docet*—the very facts of the case show this.  
*res ipsa (pro me apud te) loquitur*—the matter speaks for itself.  
*res confecta est*—the question is settled, finished.

## 13. AGREEMENT—CONTRADICTION

- consentire, idem sentire cum aliquo*—to agree with a person.  
*dissentire, dissidere ab* or *cum aliquo*—to disagree with a person.  
*omnes (uno ore) in hac re consentiunt*—all agree on this point.  
*una et consentiens vox est*—all are unanimous.  
*una voce; uno ore*  
*uno, communi, summo* or *omnium* } unanimously.  
*consensu* (Tusc. 1. 15. 35) }  
*re concinere, verbis discrepare*—to agree in fact but not in word.  
*hoc convēnit inter nos*—we have agreed on this point.  
*hoc mihi tecum convēnit* (Att. 6. 1. 14)—I agree with you there.  
*quā convēnit?*—how is this consistent? how are we to reconcile this . . . ?  
*summa est virorum doctissimorum consensio* (opp. *dissensio*)  
 —the learned are most unanimous in . . .  
*constantia* (opp. *inconstantia*) (Tusc. 5. 11. 32)—consistency.  
*inter se pugnare* or *repugnare*—to be mutually contradictory.

*secum pugnare* (without *sibi*); *sibi*  
*repugnare* (of things) } to contradict oneself,  
*a se dissidere* or *sibi non constare* } be inconsistent.  
 (of persons)

*pugnantia loqui* (Tusc. 1. 7. 13)—to make contradictory,  
 inconsistent statements.

*dicere contra aliquem* or *aliquid* (not *contradicere alicui*)—  
 to contradict some one.

## 14. PARTICULAR SCIENCES

(HISTORY, MYTHOLOGY, CHRONOLOGY, GEOGRAPHY,  
 MATHEMATICS, NATURAL SCIENCE, ASTRONOMY.)

*res Romanae*<sup>1</sup> } Roman history (*i.e.* the events in  
*res gestae Romanorum* } it).  
*historia*—history (as a science).  
*historia Romana*<sup>2</sup> or *rerum Romanarum historia*—Roman  
 history (*i.e.* the exposition, representation of it by  
 writers).  
*memoria rerum Romanarum*—Roman history (as tradition).  
*historiam* (-as) *scribere*—to write a history.  
*res populi Romani perscribere*—to write a history of  
 Rome.

<sup>1</sup> But *res Romana* = the Roman power, Rome.

<sup>2</sup> *historia* has several different senses. (1) The narration,  
 exposition of the facts (*res gestae, res*), cf. *rerum exemplum*, historic  
 precedent; *res facta*, historic fact. (2) Historical composition, e.g.  
*historiam scribere, historia graeca* = either a history written in Greek  
 or a history of Greece (*rerum graecarum historia*); *historia latina*,  
 history written in Latin; *historia romana* or *rerum romanarum*  
*historia* = a history of Rome. (3) A place famous in history, e.g.  
*quacunq̄ue ingredimur, in aliqua historia pedem ponimus*. In the  
 plural *historiae* means specially histories, anecdotes (*narratiunculae*),  
 memoirs, e.g. *Taciti historiae*.

*rerum scriptor*<sup>1</sup> } an historian.  
*rerum auctor* (as authority) }

*evolvere historias, litterarum (veterum annalium) monu-*  
*menta*—to study historical records, read history.

*memoriae traditum est, memoriae (memoria) proditum*  
*est* (without *nobis*)—tradition, history tells us.

*tradunt, dicunt, ferunt*—they say; it is commonly  
 said.

*accepimus*<sup>2</sup>—we know; we have been told.

*historiae prodiderunt* (without *nobis*)—history has handed  
 down to us.

*apud rerum scriptores scriptum videmus, scriptum est*—we  
 read in history.

*duplex est memoria de aliqua re*—a twofold tradition pre-  
 vails on this subject.

*rerum veterum memoria*  
*memoria vetus* (Or. 34. 120)  
*veterum annales*  
*veterum annalium monumenta*  
*antiquitatis memoria* } ancient history.

*recentioris aetatis memoria*—modern history.

*memoria huius aetatis (horum)* } the history of our own  
*temporum* } times; contemporary  
*nostra memoria* (Cael. 18. 43) } history.

*omnis memoria, omnis memoria aetatum, temporum,*  
*civitatum* or *omnium rerum, gentium, temporum,*  
*saeculorum memoria*—universal history.

<sup>1</sup> *historicus* means an erudite student of history, one engaged on  
 historical research. As an adjective its use in Cicero is limited,  
 being only used when opposed to *oratorius*, e.g. *genus historicum*,  
 historic style (Brut. 83. 286).

<sup>2</sup> *scimus, cognovimus* (= we know by experience) are not used of  
 historical knowledge.

- memoriam annalium* or *temporum replicare*—to consult history.
- aetas heroica*<sup>1</sup> (Tusc. 5. 3. 7) } the mythical period;  
*tempora heroica* (N. D. 3. 21. 54) } the heroic age.
- fabulae, historia fabularis*—mythology.
- repetere ab ultima* (*extrema, prisca*) *antiquitate* (*vetustate*),  
*ab heroicis temporibus*—to go back to the remote ages.
- ut a fabulis ad facta veniamus*—to pass from myth to history.
- historicorum fide contestata memoria*—historic times.
- historiae, rerum fides*—historic truth.
- narrare aliquid ad fidem historiae*—to give a veracious and historic account of a thing.
- res historiae fide comprobata*—an acknowledged historical fact.
- incorrupta rerum fides*—genuine historical truth.
- ad historiam* (*scribendam*) *se conferre* or *se applicare*—to devote oneself to writing history.
- homo in historia diligens*—a conscientious historian.
- memoriam rerum gestarum* (*rerum Romanarum*) *tenere*—to be well versed in Roman history.
- domestica* (*externa*) *nosse*—to be acquainted with the history of one's own land.
- temporum ratio, descriptio, ordo*—chronology.
- temporum ordinem servare* } to observe the chronological  
*servare et notare tempora* } order of events.
- res temporum ordine servato narrare*—to narrate events in the order of their occurrence.

<sup>1</sup> *heroicus* only of time. *herous*=epic, e.g. *versus herous* (De Or. 3. 49. 191)=a dactylic hexameter; *pes herous* a dactyl; "epic" of other things is usually *epicus*, e.g. *carmen epicum*; *poetae epici*, or *epici* alone. For "heroic" of an action, cf. *praeclarum atque divinum factum*; *factum illustre et gloriosum*, etc.

- temporibus errare* (Phil. 2. 9. 23)—to make a chronological mistake.
- ad temporum rationem aliquid revocare*—to calculate the date of an event.
- diligentem esse in exquirendis temporibus*—to be exact in calculating dates.
- terrarum* or *regionum descriptio* (*geographia*)—geography.
- Africae situm paucis exponere*—to give a brief exposition of the geography of Africa.
- regionum terrestrium aut maritimarum scientia*—geographical knowledge.
- mathematica* (-ae) or *geometria* (-ae), *geometrica* (-orum) (Tusc. 1. 24. 57)—mathematics.
- mathematicorum ratione concludere aliquid*—to draw a mathematical conclusion.
- formas* (not *figuras*) *geometricas describere*—to draw geometrical figures.
- se conferre ad naturae investigationem*—to devote oneself to the study of a natural science.
- astrologia* (pure Latin *sidera, caelestia*)—astronomy.
- spectator siderum, rerum caelestium* or *astrologus*<sup>1</sup>—an astronomer.
- arithmetica*<sup>2</sup> (-orum) } arithmetic.  
*numeri* (-orum) }

<sup>1</sup> It is only in later Latin after *astrologus* had acquired the meaning of astrologer, magician, that *astronomus* came to be used (=astronomer).

<sup>2</sup> In Cicero always neut. plur., e.g. *in arithmetiis satis versatus*; later writers use the fem. sing. The pure Latin word is *numeri*, cf. De Fin. 1. 21. 72 *an ille se, ut Plato, in musicis, geometria, numeris, astris contereret?* So De Fin. 5. 29. 87 *cur Plato Aegyptum peragravit, ut a sacerdotibus barbaris numeros et caelestia acciperet?* Cf. Nägelsb. Lat. Stil. p. 46.

*bis bina quot sint non didicisse*—to be absolutely ignorant of arithmetic.

## 15. ART IN GENERAL

*artis opus* ; *opus arte factum* or *perfectum*—a work of art.  
*opus summo artificio factum* } a master-piece of classical  
*opus omnibus numeris absolutum* } work.

*artem exercere*—to follow an artistic profession, practise an art.

*artem tradere, docere*—to teach an art.

*artem profiteri*—to profess an art.

*artium (liberalium) studium*, or simply *studium*—a taste for the fine arts.

*artis praecepta*, or also simply *ars*—the rules of art ; aesthetics.

(*artis, artium*) *intellegens, peritus*<sup>1</sup> (opp. *idiota*, a layman) a connoisseur ; a specialist.

*existimator (doctus, intellegens, acerrimus)*—a (competent, intelligent, subtle) critic.

*in existimantium arbitrium venire* (Brut. 24. 92)—to come before the tribunal of the critics.

*iudicium facere*—to criticise.

*sensum, iudicium habere*—to be a man of taste.

*elegantia in illo est*—he possesses sound judgment in matters of taste.

*iudicium subtile, elegans, exquisitum, intellegens*—good taste ; delicate perception.

*iudicium acuere*—to cultivate one's powers of criticism.

<sup>1</sup> *idiota*=properly uninitiated, not the same as *rudis, indoctus, imperitus*.

*abhorrere ab artibus* (opp. *delectari artibus*)—to have no taste for the fine arts.

*veritatem*<sup>1</sup> *imitari* (Div. 1. 13. 23)—(1) to make a lifelike, natural representation of a thing (used of the artist) ; (2) to be lifelike (of a work of art).

*in omni re vincit imitationem veritas*—in everything nature defies imitation.

*aliquid ad verum exprimere*—to make a copy true to nature.

*morum ac vitae imitatio*—a lifelike picture of everyday life.

*aliquid e vita ductum est*—a thing is taken from life.

## 16. POETRY—MUSIC—PAINTING—SCULPTURE

*poëma condere, facere, componere* } to write poetry.  
*versus facere, scribere* }

*carmina, versus fundere* (De Or. 3. 50)—to write poetry with facility.

*carmen epicum*—epic poetry.

*poëta epicus*—an epic, heroic poet.

*poësis scaenica*—dramatic poetry.

*poëta scaenicus*—a dramatic poet.

*scriptor tragoediarum, comoediarum*, also (*poëta*) *tragicus, comicus*<sup>2</sup>—a writer of tragedy, comedy.

*scriptor fabularum*<sup>3</sup>—a writer of fables.

<sup>1</sup> *veritas* means not merely truth (opp. *mendacium*), but also reality (opp. *opinio, imitatio*). Thus we often find the combination *res et veritas ipsa* (Tusc. 5. 5. 13), *natura rerum et ipsa veritas*.

<sup>2</sup> *tragicus, comicus* as adjectives=occurring in tragedy, comedy—e.g. *Orestes tragicus* ; *senes comici*. Comic in the ordinary sense=*ridiculus*, cf. *homo ridiculus*.

<sup>3</sup> Not *fabulator*, which=a gossip, teller of anecdotes.



- fabulam docere* (διδάσκειν) (of the writer) (opp. *fabulam discere*—to study a piece, of the actor)—to get a piece played, rehearse it.
- fabulam agere*—to act a play (said of the actors).
- fabulam edere*—to bring out a play, put it on the stage (used of the man who finds the money).
- fabulam dare*—to produce a play (of the writer).
- in scaenam producere aliquem*—to introduce a character on the stage.
- in scaenam prodire*—to come upon the stage.
- in scaenam redire*—to reappear on the scene.
- de scaena decedere*—to retire from the stage.
- in scaenam aliquid inducere*—to bring a thing upon the stage.
- familia, grex, caterva histrionum*—a theatrical company.
- dominus gregis*—the manager.
- theatrum*<sup>1</sup>—the playhouse.
- theatra reclamant*—the spectators protest.
- populum facilem, aequum habere*—to have an appreciative audience.
- plaudere* (not *applaudere*) } to applaud, clap a person.  
*plausum dare* (alicui) }
- clamores (coronae) facere, excitare*—to elicit loud applause.
- saepius revocatur* (Liv. 7. 2. 9)—he is encored several times.
- fabulam exigere* (Ter. Andr. Prol.)—to hiss a play.
- fabula cadit*—a piece is a failure, falls flat.

<sup>1</sup> *theatrum*=(1) the playhouse, theatre; (2) the audience, house. It is used metaphorically for the sphere of activity, theatre, scene, e.g. *theatrum magnum habet ista provincia* (Cic.); *nullum theatrum virtuti conscientia majus* (ibid.)

- histrionem exsibilare, explodere, eicere, exigere*—to hiss an actor off the stage.
- histrioni acclamare*<sup>1</sup>—to interrupt an actor by hooting him.
- partes agere alicuius*<sup>2</sup>—to play the part of some one.
- agere servum, lenonem*—to act the rôle of a slave, pander.
- actor primarum (secundarum, tertiarum) partium*—the actor who plays the leading part.
- tragoedia* or *fabula Antígona* (not *Antígona trag.* or *fab.*)—the Antigone.
- in Sophoclis* (not *Sophoclea*) *Aiace* or *apud Sophoclem in Aiace*—in Sophocles' Ajax.
- caterva, chorus*—the Chorus in Tragedy.
- carmen chori, canticum*—a choric ode in a tragedy.
- loci melici*—the lyric portions of a tragedy.
- diverbiū*—stage dialogue.
- canticum*—a choric ode.
- ludi circenses, scaenici*—performances in the circus; theatrical performances.
- ludos apparare*—to institute games.
- ludos facere, edere* (*Iovi*)—to give public games in honour of Jupiter.

<sup>1</sup> Livy is the first writer who uses *acclamare* in a good sense.

<sup>2</sup> Also used metaphorically of the part played in life, e.g. *partes suscipere, sustinere, dare, tribuere, defendere, tueri*. Similarly *persona* (properly mask) is used in several phrases, e.g. *personam alicuius agere, ferre, tenere*; *personam suscipere* or *induere*; *personam tueri* (Phil. 8. 10); *personam alicui imponere* (Sull. 3. 8). *persona* thus got the meaning of personality, individuality, character, and lastly in a concrete sense a personage of distinction. N.B.—It never represents our "person," cf. many persons were present, *multi (homines) aderant*.

- ludos instaurare*—to revive public games.
- munus gladiatorium edere, dare*  
(or simply *munus edere, dare*) } to give a gladiatorial  
*gladiatores dare* } show.
- familia*<sup>1</sup> *gladiatoria* (Sest. 64. 134)—a band, troupe of gladiators under the management of a lanista.
- ludus gladiatorius*—a school for gladiators.
- gladiatoribus* (Att. 2. 19. 3)—at the gladiatorial games.
- celebritas ludorum*—crowded games.
- magnificentia ludorum* } sumptuous public games.  
*ludi apparatusissimi* }
- ludi Olympica* (not *ludi Olympici*), *Pythia*—the Olympian, Pythian games.
- Olympia vincere* (Ὀλύμπια νικᾶν)—to win a prize at the Olympian games.
- ludi gymnici* } gymnastic contests.  
*certamina gymnica* }
- stadium currere* (Off. 3. 10. 42)—to run a foot-race.

## VIII. SPEECH AND WRITING

## 1. SPEECH IN GENERAL

- ars dicendi*—the art of speaking; oratory.
- ad dicendum se conferre*—to devote oneself to oratory.
- dicendi*<sup>2</sup> *praecepta tradere*—to teach rhetoric.

<sup>1</sup> Hence *familiam ducere*, metaphorically to be at the head of a movement, to play the leading part, e.g. *in iure civili* (Cic.) For other phrases drawn from the wrestling-school *vid.* ix. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Note the way in which the Latin language prefers a concrete expression in the plural to represent our abstract "rhetoric," cf. *musica* (-orum), *astra, numeri, soni* = music, astronomy, arithmetic, acoustics (*vid.* vii. 14).

- rhetor, dicendi magister*—a teacher of rhetoric.
- facultas dicendi*—oratorical talent.
- natum, factum esse ad dicendum*—to be a born orator.
- facilem et expeditum esse ad dicendum* (Brut. 48. 180)—to be a ready, fluent speaker.
- rudem, tironem ac rudem* (opp. *exercitatum*) *esse in dicendo*—to be an inexperienced speaker.
- disertum esse* (De Or. 1. 21. 94)—to be fluent.
- eloquentem esse* (De Or. 1. 21. 94)—to be a capable, finished speaker.
- eloquentia valere* } to be very eloquent.  
*dicendi arte florere* }
- eloquentiae laude florere*—to be a distinguished orator.
- vis dicendi*—oratorical power.
- multum dicendo valere, posse*—to have great weight as a speaker.
- eloquentiae principatum tenere* } to be considered the fore-  
*primum or principem inter ora-* } most orator.  
*tores locum obtinere* }
- oratorum principem esse*
- orationem conficere*—to compose a speech.
- orationem commentari* (Fam. 16. 26)—to prepare, get up a speech.
- oratio meditata* (Plin. 26. 3. 7)—a prepared speech.
- subito, ex tempore* (opp. *ex praeeparato*) *dicere*—to speak extempore.
- oratio subita*—an extempore speech.
- oratio perpetua*—a continuous discourse.
- oratio accurata*<sup>1</sup> *et polita*—a carefully prepared speech.
- oratio composita*—an elaborate speech.

<sup>1</sup> *accuratus* is only used of things, never of persons.



- contentio* (opp. *sermo*) (Off. 2. 48)—animated address ; emotional language.
- copiose dicere*—to speak very fluently.
- ornate dicere*—to speak well, elegantly.
- libere dicere* (Verr. 2. 72. 176)—to speak frankly, independently.
- plane, aperte dicere*—to speak openly, straightforwardly.
- perspicue, diserte dicere*—to speak in clear, expressive language.
- missis ambagibus dicere*—to speak without circumlocution.
- accommodate ad persuadendum dicere*—to be a persuasive speaker.
- aggredi ad dicendum*<sup>1</sup>—to come forward to make a speech ; to address the house.
- verba facere apud*<sup>2</sup> *populum, in contione*—to address a meeting of the people.
- in contionem (in rostra) escendere*<sup>3</sup> (only of Romans)—to mount the rostra.
- orationem habere* (Tusc. 5. 33. 94)—to make a speech.
- initium dicendi facere*—to begin to speak.
- finem dicendi facere*—to cease speaking.
- perorare*—(1) to make one's peroration ; (2) to deliver the closing speech (in a case where several speeches have been made).

<sup>1</sup> *surgere ad dicendum* is only used of some one who has been till now seated (De Or. 2. 78. 316).

<sup>2</sup> *apud* is used of appearing before an official assembly, e.g. *apud populum, apud senatum, apud iudices*. *coram* is used of an informal casual meeting.

<sup>3</sup> *escendere* is more common than *ascendere*, cf. *in contionem escendere* (Cic. Att. 4. 2. 3 ; Liv. 2. 7. 7, etc. etc.) Similarly *in rostra escendere* (Cic. Liv.), *in tribunal escendere* (Liv.) Later *suggestum, rostra escendere* (Tac. Ann. 15. 59 ; *ibid.* 13. 5).

- animos audientium permovere, inflammare*—to make an impression on one's audience.
- animos tenere*—to rivet the attention of . . .
- audientiam sibi (orationi) facere*—to obtain a hearing.
- solutum et expeditum esse ad dicendum*—to be never at a loss for something to say.
- lingua promptum esse*—to have a ready tongue.
- celeritas in respondendo*—readiness in debate, in repartee.
- bonis lateribus*<sup>1</sup> *esse*—to have good lungs.
- linguae solutio*—volubility.

## 2. STYLE—EXPRESSION

- genus dicendi (scribendi) ; oratio*<sup>2</sup>—style.
- genus dicendi grave* or *grande, medium, tenue*<sup>3</sup> (cf. Or. 5. 20 ; 6. 21)—elevated, moderate, plain style.
- fusum orationis genus*—a running style.
- inconditum dicendi genus* (Brut. 69. 242)—a rough, unpolished style.

<sup>1</sup> *latus* is never used in the singular in good Latin with the meaning "lungs," "breath," "vigour," cf. Cic. *iam me dies, vox, latera deficient si . . .* In a somewhat similar way *lacerti* is used of oratorical vigour, e.g. *ipse hastas . . . oratoris lacertis viribusque torquet* (De Or. 1. 57. 242).

<sup>2</sup> Not *stilus*, which means the writing instrument the stylus, hence the expression *stilum vertere* (Verr. 2. 3. 41), to erase what has been written. Metaphorically it denotes—(1) the action of writing, e.g. *stilus optimus est et praestantissimus dicendi effector et magister* ; (2) the manner of writing, mode of composition, e.g. *unus enim sonus est totius orationis et idem stilus*.

<sup>3</sup> Speeches belong according to their subject-matter to *genus deliberativum* (συμβουλευτικόν), *genus iudiciale* (δικαικόν), or *genus demonstrativum* (ἐπιδεικτικόν), cf. Cic. de Inv. 1. 5. 7 ; Arist. Rhet. bk. iii.

- inflatum orationis genus* } a bombastic style.  
*oratio altius exaggerata* }  
*elatio atque altitudo orationis*—the exalted strain of the speech.
- exsurgere altius* or *incitatus ferri*—to take a higher tone (especially of poets and orators).
- magnifice loqui, dicere*—(1) to speak vehemently, passionately; (2) to speak pompously, boastfully.
- magniloquentia, granditas verborum*—pathos; passion.
- tragoediae*—tragic pathos.
- expedita et facile currens oratio* } an easy, fluent style.  
*oratio aequabiliter fluens* }
- flumen*<sup>1</sup> *orationis* (De Or. 2. 15. 62)—flow of oratory.
- siccitas, sanitas orationis* } the plain style.  
*verborum tenuitas, oratio subtilis* }
- oratio exilis, ieiuna, arida, exsanguis*—the dry, lifeless style.
- ornatus orationis, verborum*—well-chosen language, grace of style.
- elegantia orationis*—tasteful description.
- oratio pura, pura et emendata*—pure, correct language.
- integritas, sinceritas orationis* (not *puritas*)—purity of style.
- oratio inquinata*<sup>2</sup> (De Opt. Gen. Or. 3. 7)—incorrect language.
- orationes Catonis antiquitatem redolent* (Brut. 21. 82)—Cato's speeches sound archaic.
- ex illius orationibus ipsae Athenae redolent*—there is a flavour of Atticism about his discourse.
- oratio soluta* (not *prosa*) or simply *oratio*—prose.

<sup>1</sup> On the other hand, *oratio fluit* (De Or. 3. 49. 190)=the language has no rhythm.

<sup>2</sup> Not *impura*, which means unchaste, obscene.

- oratio numerose cadit*—his style has a well-balanced cadence.
- numeris orationem astringere, vincire*—to make a speech rhythmical.
- lumina, flores dicendi* (De Or. 3. 25. 96)—flowers of rhetoric; embellishments of style.
- sententias (verbis) explicare, aperire*—to explain one's sentiments.
- sententiae reconditae et exquisitae* (Brut. 97. 274)—profound sentiments.
- ubertas* (not *divitiae*) *et copia orationis*—a full and copious style of speech.
- crebritas* or *copia* (opp. *inopia*) *sententiarum* or simply *copia*—richness of ideas.
- sententiis abundans*<sup>1</sup> or *creber* (opp. *sententiis inanis*)—rich in ideas.
- adumbrare aliquid* (Or. 14. 43)—to roughly sketch a thing.
- exprimere aliquid verbis* or *oratione* (*vid.* p. 77, note)—to express clearly, make a lifelike representation of a thing.
- exponere aliquid* or *de aliqua re*—to give an account of a thing (either orally or in writing).
- sententiae inter se nexae*  
*perpetuitas verborum*  
*contextus orationis* (not *nexus*,  
*conexus sententiarum*) } the connection.
- ratio sententiarum*  
*ratio, qua sententiae inter se*  
*excipiunt* } the connection of thought.

<sup>1</sup> Not *dives* which Cicero uses only absolutely and almost always of persons, cf. however *animus hominis dives* (Parad. 6. 44), *divitior mihi et affluentior videtur esse vera amicitia*, (De Am. 16. 58).

- vitam alicuius exponere*—to give an account of a man's life.  
*vitam alicuius depingere*—to make a sketch of a man's life.  
*de ingenio moribusque alicuius exponere*—to make a character-sketch of a person.  
*summo colore aliquid illustrare*—to depict a thing in lively colours.  
*ante oculos ponere aliquid*—to bring a thing vividly before the eyes.  
*oculis* or *sub oculis*, *sub aspectum subicere aliquid*—to represent a thing vividly.  
*rerum sub aspectum paene subiectio* (De Or. 3. 53. 202)—graphic depiction.  
*perlustrare*, *lustrare oculis aliquid*—to scrutinise, examine closely.  
*sic exponere aliquid, quasi agatur res (non quasi narretur)*—to represent a thing dramatically.  
*aliquem disputantem facere, inducere, fingere (est aliquis apud aliquem disputans)*—to introduce a person (into a dialogue) discoursing on . . .  
*in uno conspectu ponere aliquid* } to give a general idea of a  
*sub unum aspectum subicere* } thing.  
*aliquid*  
*in brevi conspectu ponere aliquid*—to make a short survey of a thing.  
*uno conspectu videre aliquid*—to have a general idea of a thing.  
*breviter tangere, attingere aliquid*—to touch briefly on a thing.  
*strictim, leviter tangere, attingere, perstringere aliquid* } to make a cursory mention  
*quasi praeteriens, in transitu* } of a thing; to mention by  
*attingere aliquid* } the way (not *obiter* or *in transcurso*).

- res summas attingere* } to dwell only on the main  
*summatim aliquid exponere* } points.  
*multa verba facere* }  
*multum, nimium esse (in ali-* } to go deeply into a matter,  
*qua re)* (De Or. 2. 4. 17) } discuss it fully.  
*pluribus verbis, copiosius explicare, persequi*<sup>1</sup> *aliquid*—to give a full, detailed account of a thing.  
*fusius, uberius, copiosius disputare, dicere de aliqua re*—to speak at great length on a subject, discuss very fully.  
*breviter, paucis explicare aliquid* } to explain a matter  
*rem paucis absolvere* (Sall. Jug. } briefly, in a few words  
 17. 2) } (not *paucis verbis*).  
*rebus ipsis par est oratio* } the circumstances are de-  
*rebus verba respondent* } scribed in language worthy  
 of them.  
*copiam quam potui persecutus sum*—I have exhausted all my material.  
*verbis non omnia exsequi posse*—to be unable to say all one wants.  
*in medium proferre aliquid*—to bring a subject forward into discussion.  
*in medio ponere (proponere)*—to publish, make public.  
*silentio praeterire (not praetermittere) aliquid*—to pass over in silence.  
*significare aliquem* or *aliquid* }  
*significatione appellare aliquem* } to allude to a person or  
*describere aliquem* (Cael. 20. 50) } thing (not *alludere*).  
*leviter significare aliquid*—to hint vaguely at a thing.

<sup>1</sup> *persequi* is often used in the meaning to expound, treat of either orally or in writing, e.g. *alicuius vitam, alicuius laudes versibus, res Hannibalis*.

*ordine narrare, quomodo res gesta sit*—to detail the whole history of an affair.

*dicendo ornare aliquid*—to embellish a narrative.

*rhetorice, tragice ornare aliquid* (Brut. 11. 43)—to add rhetorical, dramatic embellishments to a subject.

*digressus, digressio, egressio* } a digression, episode.  
*quod ornandi causa additum est* }

*includere in orationem aliquid* } to interpolate, insert  
*inserere orationi aliquid* } something.  
*interponere aliquid* (De Am. 1. 3) }

*dicendo augere, amplificare aliquid* (opp. *dicendo extenuare aliquid*)—to lend lustre to a subject by one's description.

*in maius ferre, in maius extollere aliquid*—to exaggerate a thing.

*in maius accipere aliquid*—to overestimate a thing.

*digredi (a proposito)* (De Or. 2. 77. 311)—to digress, deviate.

*studio alicuius rei provectus sum*—my zeal for a thing has led me too far.

*longe, alte (longius, altius) repetere* (either absolute or *ab aliqua re*)—to go a long way back (in a narrative).

*oratio longius repetita* (De Or. 3. 24. 91)—a rather recondite speech.

*accedere ad cotidiani sermonis genus*—to adopt the language of everyday life.

*ad vulgarem sensum* or *ad communem opinionem orationem accommodare* (Off. 2. 10. 35)—to express oneself in popular language.

## 3. DELIVERY—VOICE

*actio* (Brut. 38)—delivery.

*pronuntiatio*<sup>1</sup> c. Gen.—artistic delivery; declamation.

*actio paulum claudicat*<sup>2</sup>—the delivery is rather halting, poor.

*haerere, haesitare* (Catil. 2. 6. 13)—to stop short, hesitate.

*perturbari, permoveri*—to be nervous, embarrassed.

*de scripto orationem*<sup>3</sup> *habere, dicere* (opp. *sine scripto, ex memoria*)—to read a speech.

*interpellare aliquem (dicentem)*—to interrupt.

*vox magna, clara* (Sulla 10. 30)—a strong, loud voice.

*vox gravis, acuta, parva, mediocris*—a deep, high, thin, moderate voice.

*vox canōra* (Brut. 63. 234)—a melodious, ringing voice.

*vox lenis, suppressa, summissa*—a gentle, subdued voice.

*vocem mittere (sonitum reddere* of things)—to speak, utter a sound.

*vocem summittere*—to lower one's voice.

*contentio, remissio vocis*—raising, lowering the voice.

*vocem intercludere* (Just. 11. 8. 4)—to prevent some one from speaking.

*nulla vox est ab eo audita*—no sound passed his lips.

*magna voce clamare*—to shout at the top of one's voice.

*clamorem tollere* (Liv. 3. 28)—to raise a shout, a cry.

*gestum* (always in the sing.) *agere*—to gesticulate.

<sup>1</sup> Not *declamatio* which = an oratorical exercise. Distinguish *pronuntiare* (De Or. 1. 59. 251), to declaim a thing according to the rules of rhetoric; and *declamare* = to go through rhetorical exercises as a practice in speaking.

<sup>2</sup> *claudicare* often metaph. of things which are unequal, weak, e.g. *amicitia claudicat* (Fin. 1. 69).

<sup>3</sup> But to read a speech *orationem legere* (Brut. 51. 191); to read with expression, *recitare* (Phil. 10. 2. 5).

## 4. SUBJECT-MATTER—ARGUMENT

*non habeo argumentum scribendi*  
*deest mihi argumentum ad scri-*  
*bendum* (Att. 9. 7. 7) } I have nothing to write  
 about.

*non habeo, non est quod scribam*  
*res* (opp. *verba*) *mihi suppetit*—I have abundance to say.  
*materia mihi crescit*—my subject grows as I write.

*res componere ac digerere*—to arrange and divide the  
 subject-matter.

*dispositio rerum* (De Inv. 1. 7. 9)—the arrangement of the  
 subject-matter.

*materia rerum et copia uberrima*  
*infinita et immensa materia* } abundance of material.

*materiam ad ornatum praebere*—to afford matter for  
 elaboration, embellishment.

*id quod (mihi) propositum est*  
*res proposita* } a theme, subject proposed  
 for discussion.

*id quod quaerimus (quaeritur)*  
*institutum* or *id quod institui*

*a proposito aberrare, declinare, deflectere, digredi, egredi*—to  
 digress from the point at issue.

*ad propositum reverti, redire*  
*ad rem redire* } to come back to the point.

*sed redeat, unde aberravit oratio*  
*sed ad id, unde digressi sumus,*  
*revertamur* } but to return from the  
 digression we have  
 been making.

*verum ut ad id, unde digressa est*  
*oratio, revertamur*

*mihi propositum est* c. Inf. (or *mihi proposui, ut*)—the task  
 I have put before myself is . . .

*ponere*—to propose, set a theme.

*ponere alicui, de quo disputet*—to set some one a theme for  
 discussion.

*ponere iubere, qua de re quis audire velit* (Fin. 2. 1. 1)—to  
 let those present fix any subject they like for  
 discussion.

## 5. QUESTION—ANSWER

*quaestionem ponere, proponere*—to propose a subject of  
 debate, put a question.

*quaestionem poscere* (Fin. 2. 1. 1)—to get a question  
 submitted to one.

*hoc loco existit quaestio, quaeritur*—at this point the  
 question arises.

*nunc id quaeritur, agitur*—the question now is . . .

*res, de qua nunc quaerimus, quaeritur*—the question at  
 issue.

*magna quaestio est* (followed by an indirect question)—it  
 is a difficult point, disputed question.

*quaerendum esse mihi visum est*—the question has forced  
 itself on my mind . . .

*quaestionem solvere*—to decide, determine a question.

*quaestio ad exitum venit*—the question has been settled.

*ad interrogata respondere*<sup>1</sup>—to answer questions.

*bene interrogare*—to cross-examine cleverly, put leading  
 questions.

*percontanti non deesse* (De Or. 1. 21. 97)—to answer every  
 question.

<sup>1</sup> Note to answer (a thing) *respondere ad aliquid* or *alicui rei*; to  
 answer (a person) always *alicui*. So *dicere alicui* to speak to a person,  
 but *scribere ad aliquem*.

*responsum ab aliquo ferre, auferre*—to extract an answer from some one.

*respondere in hanc sententiam*<sup>1</sup>—to answer to this effect.

## 6. HUMOUR—EARNEST

*ioco uti* (Off. 1. 29. 103)—to make a joke.

*haec iocatus sum, per iocum dixi*—I said it in jest.

*animo prompto esse ad iocandum*—to be humorously inclined.

*extra iocum, remoto ioco* (Fam. 7. 11. 3)—joking apart.

*facete dicere*—to be witty.

*facetiis uti, facetum esse*—to make witty remarks.

*facete et commode dicere*—to indulge in apt witticisms.

*breviter et commode dictum*—a short, pointed witticism.

*facete dictum*—a witticism, bon mot.

*arcessitum dictum* (De Or. 2. 63. 256)—a far-fetched joke.

*dicta dicere in aliquem*—to make jokes on a person.

*aspergere sales orationi* (Or. 26. 87)—to intersperse one's speech with humorous remarks.

*aliquid ad ridiculum convertere*—to make a joke of a thing.

*(homo) ridiculus* (Plaut. Stich. 1. 3. 21)—a wit; a joker.

*lepos in iocando*—humour.

*iucunde esse* (Deiot. 7. 19)—to be in a good temper.

*se dare iucunditati*—to let oneself be jovial.

*sibi displicere* (opp. *sibi placere*)—to be in a bad temper.

*ioca et seria agere*—to be now jesting, now in earnest.

*serio dicere* (Plaut. Bacch. 1. 1. 42)—to say in earnest . . .

*severitatem adhibere*—to show that one is serious.

<sup>1</sup> *responsum dare* only of answers given by oracles or lawyers.

*ineptum esse* (De Or. 2. 4. 17)—to be silly, without tact.  
*nimum diligentem esse*<sup>1</sup>—to be pedantic.

## 7. LANGUAGE—USE OF LANGUAGE—TRANSLATION—GRAMMAR

*lingua graeca latinâ locupletior (copiosior, uberior) est*—the Greek language is a richer one than the Latin.

*commercium linguae*—intercourse of speech.

*volubilitas, solutio linguae*—volubility.

*vitium orationis, sermonis* or simply *vitium*—a mistake, solecism.

*saepe (crebro, multa) peccavit, erravit, lapsus est*—he has made several mistakes.

*eiusdem linguae societate coniunctum esse cum aliquo* (De Or. 3. 59. 223)—to be united by having a common language.

*orationis expertem esse*—to be unable to express one's ideas.

*sermo patrius* (Fin. 1. 2. 4)—native tongue; vernacular.

*consuetudo sermonis, loquendi*—the usage of language.

*cotidiani sermonis usus*  
*communis sermonis consuetudo*  
*sermo familiaris et cotidianus* } the ordinary usage of language, everyday speech.

*aliquid a consuetudine sermonis latini abhorret, alienum est*  
—the expression is not in accordance with Latin usage.

<sup>1</sup> Such words as "pedantry," "pedant" can be expressed very variously in Latin, cf. N. D. 3. 31. 71 *posse acerbos e Zenonis schola exire*; Pro Mur. 9. 19 *multorum difficultatem exorbuit*; Brut. 38. 143 *erat in Crasso latine loquendi sine molestia diligens elegantia*.

*consuetudo vitiosa et corrupta* (opp. *pura et incorrupta*)  
*sermonis*—incorrect usage.

*incorrupta latini sermonis integritas*<sup>1</sup> (Brut. 35. 132)—pure,  
correct Latin.

*sermo latinus* (opp. *sermo parum latinus*) (cf. p. 94, note)  
—good Latin.

*latine loqui* (Brut. 45. 166)—(1) to speak Latin, (2) to  
speak good Latin (also *bene latine*), (3) to express  
oneself clearly.

*graece* or *graeca lingua loqui*—to speak the Greek lan-  
guage.

*latinam linguam scire* or *didicisse* } to know Latin.  
*latine scire*

*latine commentari*—to write treatises in Latin.

*aliquid e graeco in latinum (sermonem) convertere, vertere,*  
*transferre*—to translate from Greek into Latin.

*Platonem vertere convertere*—to translate Plato.

*ab* or *de* (not *ex*) *Platone vertere, convertere, transferre*—to  
translate from Plato.

*ex Platonis Phaedone haec in latinum conversa sunt*—what  
follows has been translated into Latin from Plato's  
Phaedo.

*aliquid (graeca) latine reddere* or *sermone latino interpretari*  
—to render something in Latin.

*ad verbum transferre, exprimere* } to translate literally, word  
*verbum e verbo exprimere* } for word (not *verbo*  
*verbum pro verbo reddere* } *tenus*.)  
*totidem verbis transferre*

*his fere verbis, hoc fere modo convertere, transferre*—to  
translate freely.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Cic. ad Herenn. 4. 12. 17 *latinitas est quae sermonem purum  
conservat ab omni vitio remotum.*

*liber (scriptoris) conversus, translatus*—the work when  
translated; translation (concrete).

*interpretatio, translatio* (not *versio* or *conversio*)—the pro-  
cess of translation.

*interpres*—the translator.

*leges dicendi* } the rules of speech, grammar.  
*praecepta<sup>1</sup> grammaticorum* }

*grammaticus*<sup>2</sup> (De Or. 1. 3. 10)—a linguist, philologist.

*emendate scribere*—to write correctly, in faultless style.

*latine scribere*<sup>3</sup> (Opt. Gen. Or. 2. 4)—to write good Latin.

## 8. SENTENCE—PERIOD—WORDS—PROVERBS —SYLLABLES

*enuntiatio, enuntiatum, sententia*—the sentence, proposi-  
tion.

*compositio, structura verborum*—the structure of the  
sentence.

*ambitus, circuitus, comprehensio, continuatio (verborum,  
orationis)*, also simply *periodus*—the period.

*constructio, structura verborum, forma dicendi*—the con-  
struction.

*adiungi, addi coniunctivo* (Marc. Cap. 3. 83)—to be used  
with the conjunctive mood.

<sup>1</sup> Not *regula*, which means a level, standard, e.g. *regula ad  
quam iudicia rerum diriguntur* (Cic.)

<sup>2</sup> The adverb *grammatice* is used with *loqui, scribere*=to speak,  
write correctly; *grammatista* and also *litterator* are used of element-  
ary teachers.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *latine docere philosophiam*, to teach philosophy in Latin;  
Fin. 3. 12. 40 *latine scire*, to know Latin (cf. ἑλληνιστὶ ξυνιέναι  
Xen. Anab. 7. 6. 8). Also *latine didicisse, latine oblivisci* (Caec.  
22. 62), in which Dräger supposes an ellipse of *loqui* or *dicere*.

- copia, ubertas verborum*—profusion of words.  
*verbis abundantem esse, abundare*—to be rich in words.  
*inopia verborum*—poverty of expression.  
*lectissimis verbis uti* (De Or. 3. 37)—to employ carefully chosen expressions.  
*prisca, obsoleta* (opp. *usitata*), *ambigua verba*—obsolete, ambiguous expressions.  
*locutio* (Brut. 74. 258)—a phrase.  
*verbo, nomine; re, re quidem vera*—nominally; really.  
*si verba spectas*—literally.  
*verbis alicuius*, e.g. *salutare* (Liv. 9. 36)—in some one's name; on some one's behalf (not *nomine alicuius*).  
*haec verba sunt* (Ter. Phorm. 3. 2. 32)—these are mere empty phrases.  
*inanis verborum sonitus*—mere words; empty sound.  
*inanium verborum flumen*—senseless rant.  
*flosculi, rhetorum pompa*—fine, rhetorical phrases.  
*voces iacere* (Sall. Iug. 11)—to let fall an expression.  
*nullum (omnino) verbum facere*—to not say a word.  
*ne verbum* (without *unum*) *quidem de aliquo facere*—to say not a syllable about a person.  
*verba facere (de aliqua re, apud aliquem)*—to speak on a subject.  
*verbum ex aliquo elicere*—to extract a word from some one.  
*verbis concertare* or *altercari cum aliquo* (B. C. 3. 19. 6)—to hold an altercation with a man.  
*verborum concertatio*—an altercation, debate.  
*pauca dicere (pauca verba dicere* only of the orator)—to say only a few words.  
*omnia verba huc redeunt*—all this means to say.

- nullum verbum ex ore eius excidit* (or simply *ei*)—no word escaped him.  
*verbo parum valere* (Tusc. 3. 5. 11)—to be unable to find a suitable expression.  
*verbum prorsus nullum intellegere*—not to understand a single word.  
*huic rei deest apud nos vocabulum*—we have no expression for that.  
*inducere novum verbum in latinam linguam*—to introduce a new word into the Latin language.  
*verba parere, fingere, facere*—to invent, form words.  
*nominum interpretatio*—etymology (not *etymologia*).  
*vocabulum*,<sup>1</sup> *verbum, nomen ducere ab, ex . . .*—to form, derive a word from . . . (used of the man who first creates the word).  

<i>verbum ductum esse a . . . putare</i>	} to derive a word from . . . (used of an etymologist).
<i>originem verbi repetere a . . .</i>	

*nomina enodare* or *verborum origines quaerere, indagare*—to give the etymological explanation of words.  
*nomen amicitiae* (or simply *amicitia*) *dicitur ab amando*—the word *amicitia* comes from *amare*.  
*in aliqua re dici*—to be used in speaking of a thing.  

<i>quid significat, sonat haec vox?</i>	} what is the meaning, the original sense of this word?
<i>quae est vis huius verbi?</i>	
<i>quae notio or sententia subiecta est huic voci?</i>	
<i>vis et notio verbi, vocabuli</i>	

—the fundamental meaning of a word.

<sup>1</sup> *verbum derivare* means to form new words from words which exist already, e.g. by adding a syllable, *Atrides* from *Atrous*. For word-building, cf. Cic. De Or. 3. 37 and 38; Hor. A. P. 46.



- vox, nomen carendi* or simply *carere hoc significat* (Tusc. 1. 36. 88)—the word *carere* means . . .
- quem intellegimus sapientem?*—what do we understand by “a wise man”?
- quae intellegitur virtus* } what do we mean by “virtue”?  
*quid est virtus?* }
- idem valere, significare, declarare*—to have the same meaning.
- vocabula idem fere declarantia*—synonyms.
- vocabulum latius patet*—the word has a more extended signification.
- vocabulum angustius valet*—the word has a narrow meaning.
- iracundiam sic (ita) definiunt, ut ulciscendi libidinem esse dicant* or *ut u. libido sit* or *iracundiam sic definiunt, ulc. libidinem*—anger is defined as a passionate desire for revenge.
- in bonam (malam) partem accipere aliquid*—to take a thing in good (bad) part.
- aemulatio dupliciter dicitur, ut et in laude et in vitio hoc nomen sit*—the word *aemulatio* is employed with two meanings, in a good and a bad sense.
- verba ac litteras* or *scriptum (legis) sequi* (opp. *sententia* the spirit)—to hold by the letter (of the law).
- hoc vocabulum generis neutri* (not *neutrius*) *est*—this word is neuter.
- ordo verborum* (Or. 63. 214)—the order of words.
- vocabulum proprium*—the proper term; a word used strictly.
- verbum translatum* (Or. 27. 92)—a figurative expression; a word used metaphorically.
- translatio*—a metaphor.

- verba composita*<sup>1</sup>—well-arranged words.
- verborum immutatio*—a trope; metonymy.
- continua translatio* (Or. 27. 94)—an allegory; continuous metaphor.
- simili uti*—to employ a comparison, simile.
- dissimulatio* (Off. 1. 30. 108)—irony.
- vetus (verbum) est* (c. Acc. c. Inf.)—it was said long ago that . . .
- ut est in proverbio* }  
*ut or quod or quomodo aiunt,* } as the proverb says.  
*ut or quemadmodum dicitur* }
- in proverbii consuetudinem* or simply *in proverbium venire*—to pass into a proverb.
- proverbii locum obtinere* (Tusc. 4. 16. 36)—to be used as a proverb.
- hoc est Graecis hominibus in proverbio*—this is a proverb among the Greeks.
- bene illo Graecorum proverbio praecipitur*—that Greek proverb contains an excellent lesson.
- vetamur vetere proverbio*—an old proverb tells us not to . . .
- proverbium vetustate* or *sermone tritum* (*vid.* p. 11, note)—an old proverb which every one knows.
- syllabam, litteram producere* (opp. *corripere*) (Quintil. 9. 4. 89)—to lengthen the pronunciation of a syllable or letter.
- haec vox longa syllaba terminatur, in longam syllabam cadit, exit*—this word ends in a long syllable.
- oriri a longa* (De Or. 1. 55. 236)—to begin with a long syllable.
- <sup>1</sup> Compound words = *verba copulata, iuncta* (Or. 48. 159), *coniuncta*, cf. Cic. De Or. 3. 38. 154.

- syllabarum auceps*—a verbal, petty critic; a caviller.  
*verborum aucupium* or *captatio*—minute, pedantic carping at words.  
*litteras exprimere* (opp. *obscurare*)—to pronounce the syllables distinctly.  
*ad litteram, litterate*—to the letter; literally.  
*litterarum*<sup>1</sup> *ordo* } the alphabet.  
*litterae, elementa* }  
*ad litteram* or *litterarum ordine digerere*—to arrange in alphabetical order.

## 9. WRITING—WRITERS—BOOKS

- litteris mandare* or *consignare aliquid* (Acad. 2. 1. 2)—to put down in writing.  
*litteris persequi* (*vid.* p. 127, note) *aliquid*—to treat in writing.  
*scriptor* (not *auctor* = guarantor)—the writer, author.  
*scribere*—to take to writing, become an author.  
*ad scribendum* or *ad scribendi* }  
*studium se conferre* } to become a writer, embrace a literary career.  
*animum ad scribendum applicare, applicare* }  
*librum scribere, conscribere*—to write a book.  
*librum conficere, componere* (De Sen. 1. 2)—to compose, compile a book.  
*librum edere* (Div. 1. 3. 6)—to publish a book.  
*librum evolvere, volvere* } to open a book.  
*volumen explicare* }

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *quarta elementorum littera*, the fourth letter of the alphabet (Suet. Iul. 56).

- librum mittere ad aliquem* (Fin. 1. 3. 8)—to dedicate a book to some one.  
*index, inscriptio*<sup>1</sup> *libri*—the title of a book.  
*liber inscribitur*<sup>2</sup> *Laelius* (Off. 2. 9. 30)—the book is entitled “Laelius.”  
*Cicero dicit in Laelio (suo) or in eo* (not *suo*) *libro, qui inscribitur Laelius*—Cicero says in his “Laelius.”  
*est liber de . . .*—there exists a book on . . .  
*exstat liber* (notice the order of the words)—the book is still extant.  
*liber intercidit, periit*—the book has been lost.  
*liber deperditus*—a book which has been entirely lost sight of.  
*liber perditus*—a lost book of which fragments (*reliquiae*, not *fragmenta*) remain.  
*liber qui fertur alicuius*—a book which is attributed to some one.  
*nescio quis*—an anonymous writer.  
*liber refertur ad nescio quem auctorem*—the book is attributed to an unknown writer.  
*hic liber est de amicitia* (not *agit*) or *hoc libro agitur de am.*—the book treats of friendship.  
*libro continetur aliquid* } the book contains something  
*libro scriptor complexus est* } . . . (not *continet aliquid*).  
*aliquid* }  
*in extremo libro* (Q. Fr. 2. 7. 1)—at the end of the book.
- <sup>1</sup> Not *titulus* which means—(1) an inscription on a tomb, monument; (2) public notice, e.g. an advertisement of a sale, *sub titulum misit lares* (Ov.); (3) metaph. title, honour, e.g. *consulatus, coniugis*. It is only in very late writers that it = a title of a book.  
<sup>2</sup> The perfect *inscriptus est* is only used when the writer himself is speaking of his book, e.g. *de senectute disputavi eo libro, qui Cato maior inscriptus est*, “. . . which I have entitled *Cato maior*.”

- liber mihi est in manibus*  
*librum in manibus habere* } to be engaged on a book.  
 (Acad. 1. 1. 2)
- liber, oratio in manibus est*—the book, speech can easily be obtained.
- librum in manus sumere*—to take up a book in one's hands.
- librum de manibus ponere*<sup>1</sup>—to lay down a book (*vid.* p. 189, note).
- perpolire, limare diligenter librum, opus*—to polish, finish a work with the greatest care.
- extrema manus accedit operi* (active *extremam manum imponere operi*)—to put the finishing touch to a work.
- liber accurate, diligenter scriptus*—a carefully written book.
- aliquid, multa ex Ciceronis libris excerpere* (not *excerpere librum*)—to make extracts from Cicero's writings.
- aliquid in commentarios suos referre* (Tusc. 3. 22. 54)—to enter a thing in one's note-book.
- librum annotare, interpolare, distinguere*—to furnish a book with notes, additional extracts, marks of punctuation.
- se abdere in bibliothecam suam*—to bury oneself in one's library.
- Platonem legere, lectitare*—to read Plato.
- locum Platonis afferre, proferre* (not *citare*)—to quote a passage of Plato.
- scriptor hoc loco dicit*—our (not *noster*) author tells us at this point.
- Cicero loco quodam haec dicit*—Cicero says this somewhere.

<sup>1</sup> Distinguish the two verbs *ponere*=to set down for a moment temporarily, and *deponere* to lay aside, abandon altogether. Cf. *vincere* and *devincere*, *perdere* and *deperdere*.

- Platonem legere et cognoscere*—to study Plato.
- legendo percurrere aliquid*—to read cursorily.
- apud Platonem scriptum videmus*,<sup>1</sup> *scriptum est* or simply *est*—we read in Plato.
- in Platonis Phaedone scriptum est*—in Plato's "Phaedo" we read.
- verba, oratio, exemplum scriptoris*—the text of the author (not *textus*).
- legentes, ii qui legunt*<sup>2</sup>—the reader.
- languorem, molestiam legentium animis afferre*—to weary, bore the reader.
- liber plenus delectationis*—a very charming book.
- alicuius mens in scriptis spirat*—a man's soul breathes through his writings.
- mendum (scripturae)* (Fam. 6. 7. 1)—a clerical error, copyist's mistake.
- mendose scriptum*—full of orthographical errors.
- labi in scribendo*—to make a mistake in writing.
- mendosum esse* (Verr. 2. 4. 77)—(1) to make frequent mistakes in writing; (2) to be full of mistakes (speaking of a passage).
- inducere verbum* (Phil. 13. 19. 43)—to strike out, delete a word.

<sup>1</sup> *legere* in this connection only in the perfect.

<sup>2</sup> Not *lector*, which means a professional reader, cf. De Or. 2. 55. 223. Similarly "audience"=*ii qui audiunt* or *audientes* (usually in the oblique cases). Words in *-tor* and *-trix* always denote those who do something habitually or for some permanent object. Thus of functionaries—*ensor*, *dictator*, *quaestor*; of artisans—*factor* sculptor, *institor* retail dealer, *mercator* wholesale merchant, *structor* mason; of people who are always showing some distinguishing quality or defect—*calumniator*, *ratiocinator*; of those who have performed a feat so remarkable as to confer on them a durable characteristic—*creator urbis* (Romulus), *servator Graeciae* (Themistocles), *Cimbrorum victor* (Marius), etc.

## 10. LETTERS

*epistulam (litteras) dare, scribere, mittere ad aliquem*—to write a letter to some one.

*epistula ad Atticum data, scripta, missa* or *quae ad A. scripta est*—a letter to Atticus.

*epistulam dare alicui ad aliquem*—to charge some one with a letter for some one else.

*epistulam reddere alicui* (Att. 5. 21. 4)—to deliver a letter to some one (used of the messenger).

*epistularum commercium*  
*litterae missae et allatae* } correspondence.

*colloqui cum aliquo per litteras*—to correspond with some one.

*litteras inter se dare et accipere*—to be in correspondence with . . .

*litteras perferre aliquo*—to take a letter somewhere.

*epistulam signare, obsignare*—to seal, fasten a letter.

*epistulam solvere, aperire, resignare* (of Romans also *linum incidere*)—to open a letter.

*epistulam intercipere* (Att. 1. 13. 2)—to intercept a letter.

*epistulam deprehendere*—to take forcible possession of a letter.

*litteras recitare* (Att. 8. 9. 2)—to read a letter aloud (in public).

*litterae hoc exemplo* (Att. 9. 6. 3)—a letter, the tenor of which is . . .

*litterae in hanc sententiam* or *his verbis scriptae sunt*—the terms, contents of the letter are as follows.

*Kalendis Ianuariis Romā (dabam)*—Rome, January 1st.

*dies* (fem. in this sense)—the date.

*pater optime*<sup>1</sup> or *carissime, mi pater* (vid. p. 197)—my dear father.

*litteras reddere datas a. d. X. Kal. Octob.*—to deliver a letter dated September 22nd.

## IX. THE EMOTIONS

## 1. DISPOSITION—EMOTION IN GENERAL

*animi affectio* or *habitus* (De Inv. 2. 5)—humour; disposition.

*ita*<sup>2</sup> *animo affectum esse*—to be so disposed.

*animos tentare* (Cluent. 63. 176)—to try to divine a person's disposition.

*animum alicuius* or simply *aliquem flectere*—to make a person change his intention.

*animi motus, commotio, permotio*—the emotions, feelings.

*aliqua re moveri, commoveri*—to be moved by a thing.

*alicuius animum commovere*—to touch a person's heart, move him.

*alicuius animum pellere*—to make an impression on a person's mind.

*motus excitare in animo* (opp. *sedare, exstinguere*)—to excite emotion.

*commotum* or *concitatum esse*—to be moved, agitated.

*commotum perturbatumque esse*—to be greatly agitated.

*alicuius mentem turbare, conturbare, perturbare*—to upset a person.

*quid tibi animi est?*—what sort of humour are you in?

<sup>1</sup> Neither *amatus* nor *dilectus* can be used in this connection.

<sup>2</sup> But not *magno, laeto*, etc., *animo affici*.

## 2. JOY—PAIN.

*afficere aliquem gaudio, laetitia* } to give pleasure to some  
*afferre alicui laetitiam* } one.  
*laetitiam capere* or *percipere ex* } to take pleasure in a  
*aliqua re* } thing.  
*delectari aliqua re* }

*in sinu gaudere* (Tusc. 3. 21. 51)—to rejoice in secret.

*gaudio perfundi*<sup>1</sup>—to be filled with delight.

*cumulum gaudii alicui afferre* (vid. p. 50) (Fam. 16. 21. 1)  
 —to add the crowning point to a person's joy.

*gaudio, laetitia exsultare*—to utter cries of joy.

*laetitia gestire* (Tusc. 4. 6. 13)—to be transported with  
 joy.

*effusa*<sup>2</sup> *laetitia* } a transport of joy.  
*laetitia gestiens* }

*gaudio, laetitia efferri*—to be beside oneself with joy.

*animum alicuius ad laetitiam excitare*—to put a man in a  
 pleasurable frame of mind.

*nimio gaudio paene desipere*—to almost lose one's reason  
 from excess of joy.

*doleo aliquid, aliqua re, de and*  
*ex aliqua re*

*aegre, graviter, moleste fero* } I am pained, vexed, sorry.  
*aliquid* (or with Acc. c. Inf.)  
*or quod* }

<sup>1</sup> *gaudio compleri* (Fin. 5. 14. 69) is rare in Cicero; *gaudio impleri* does not occur. Speaking generally, *complere, implere, replere*, should not be used of the emotions.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *effusa fuga*, headlong flight; *effusi sumptus*, lavish expenditure (Rosc. Am. 24. 68), *cursus effusus* (Liv. 9. 41. 17).

*tuam vicem*<sup>1</sup> *doleo*—I am sorry for you.

*dolore affici*—to feel pain.

*dolorem capere* (*percipere*) *ex aliqua re*—to be vexed about  
 a thing.

*doloribus premi, angi, ardere, cruciari, distineri et divelli*—  
 to feel acute pain.

*dolorem alicui facere, afferre, commovere*—to cause a person  
 pain.

*acerbum dolorem alicui inurere*—to cause any one very  
 acute pain.

*acer morsus doloris est* (Tusc. 2. 22. 53)—the pain is very  
 severe.

*dolorem in lacrimas effundere*—to find relief in  
 tears.

*dolori indulgere*—to give way to grief.

*dolor infixus animo haeret* (Phil. 2. 26)—grief has struck  
 deep into his soul.

*dolore confici, tabescere*—to be wasted with grief; to die of  
 grief.

*dolores remittunt, relaxant*—the pain grows less.

*dolori resistere*—to struggle against grief.

*callum obducere*<sup>2</sup> *dolori* (Tusc. 2. 15. 36)—to render  
 insensible to pain.

*animus meus ad dolorem obduru*t (Fam. 2. 16. 1)—I have  
 become callous to all pain.

*dolorem abicere, deponere, depellere*—to banish grief.

<sup>1</sup> *vicem* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun has the meaning  
 "on account of," "with regard to," especially with verbs expressing  
 the emotions, e.g. *doleo, timeo, irascor*.

<sup>2</sup> Note too *consuetudo callum obduxit stomacho meo* (Fam. 9. 2. 3),  
 habit has made me callous. *callum* properly is the thick nerveless  
 skin which covers the bodies of animals.

*dolorem alicui eripere* (Att. 9. 6. 4)—to free a person from his pain.

*cum magno meo dolore*—to my sorrow.

### 3. VEXATION—CARE—EQUANIMITY— CONTENTMENT—AFFLICTION

*in aegritudine, sollicitudine esse*  
*aegritudine, sollicitudine affici*  
*sollicitum esse* } to be vexed, mortified,  
anxious.

*nihil omnino curare*  
*non laborare de aliqua re* } not to trouble oneself about a  
thing.

*aliquid me sollicitat, me sollicitum habet, mihi sollicitudini est, mihi sollicitudinem affert*—something harasses me, makes me anxious.

*aegritudo exest animum planeque conficit* (Tusc. 3. 13. 27)  
—anxiety gnaws at the heart and incapacitates it.

*aegritudine, curis confici*—to be wasting away with grief.

*aegritudine afflictum, debilitatum esse, iacere*—to be bowed down, prostrated by grief.

*aegritudinem alicuius elevare*  
*aliquem aegritudine levare* } to comfort another in his  
trouble.

*quieto, tranquillo, securo animo esse*—to enjoy peace of mind.

*rebus suis, sorte sua contentum esse*—to be contented.

*satis habeo, satis mihi est* c. Inf.—I am content to . . .

*paucis, parvo contentum esse*—to be satisfied with a little.

*fortunae meae me paenitet*<sup>1</sup>—I am discontented with my lot.

<sup>1</sup> The evidence of inscriptions and the best MSS. seems to point to the derivation of *paenitet*, not from *poena* (cf. *punitio, impunitus*), but from the root contained in *penes, penetrare, penitus*; its original meaning would thus be, "to be touched, affected within, at heart" (Bréal).

*non me paenitet, quantum profecerim*—I am not dissatisfied with my progress.

*in luctu esse* (Sest. 14. 32)—to suffer affliction.

*in sordibus luctuque iacere*—to be in great trouble, affliction.

*mors alicuius luctum mihi attulit*—some one's death has plunged me in grief.

*in maximos luctus incidere*—to be overwhelmed by a great affliction.

*magnum luctum haurire* (without *ex*)—to undergo severe trouble, trials.

*luctum percipere ex aliqua re*—to feel sorrow about a thing.  
*omnem luctum plane abstergere*—to banish all sad thoughts.

*luctum deponere* (Phil. 14. 13. 34)—to lay aside one's grief.

*vel maximos luctus vetustate tollit diuturnitas* (Fam. 5. 16. 5)—time assuages the most violent grief.

### 4. FEAR—TERROR—ANXIETY

*timorem, terrorem alicui inicere*, more strongly *incutere*—to inspire fear, terror.

*timor aliquem occupat* (B. G. 1. 39)—fear comes upon some one.

*in timore esse, versari*—to be in fear.

*in timorem venire, pervenire*—to become frightened.

*metus aliquem exanimat* (Mil. 24. 65)—a man is paralysed with fear.

*exalbescere metu*—to grow pale with fear.

*metu fractum et debilitatum, percussum esse*—to be completely prostrated by fear.

- abicere, omittere timorem*—to banish one's fears.  
*a metu respirare* (Cluent. 70. 200) } to recover from one's  
*ex metu se recreare, se colligere* } fright.  
*respirandi spatium dare*—to give time for recovery.  
*terror incidit alicui*  
*terror invadit in aliquem* (rarely) } terror, panic seizes some  
*alicui, after Livy aliquem* } one.  
*in terrorem conicere aliquem*—to overwhelm some one with  
 terror.  
*(animo) angi* (Brut. 27)—to be very uneasy; to fret.  
*cura sollicitat angitque aliquem*—anxiety troubles and  
 torments one.  
*angoribus premi*—to be tormented with anxiety.  
*angoribus confici* (Phil. 2. 15. 37)—to be worn out, almost  
 dead with anxiety.

5. COURAGE—DISCOURAGEMENT—  
 PUSILLANIMITY—PRIDE—ARROGANCE—  
 INSOLENCIE

- bono animo esse*  
*bonum animum habere* } to be brave, courageous.  
*animus alicui accedit, crescit* } to take courage.  
*animum capere, colligere* }  
*animum recipere* (Liv. 2. 50)—to take courage again.  
*animo forti esse*—to be brave by nature.  
*fortem te praebe*—be brave!  
*alacri et erecto animo esse*—to show a brisk and cheerful  
 spirit.  
*animum facere, addere alicui*—to succeed in encouraging  
 a person

- animum alicuius confirmare*—to strengthen, confirm a  
 person's courage.  
*animum alicui augere* (B. G. 7. 70)—to increase a person's  
 courage.  
*animum alicuius redintegrare*—to re-inspire courage.  
*animus frangitur, affligitur, percellitur, debilitatur*—their  
 spirits are broken.  
*animos militum accendere*—to fire with courage.  
*animi cadunt*—their courage is ebbing.  
*animo cadere, deficere* } to lose courage; to despair.  
*animum demittere* }  
*erigere alicuius animum* or *aliquem*—to encourage a  
 person.  
*excitare animum iacentem et afflictum* (opp. *frangere*  
*animum*)—to inspire the spiritless and prostrate  
 with new vigour.  
*animo esse humili, demisso* (more strongly *animo esse fracto,*  
*perculso et abiecto*) (Att. 3. 2)—to be cast down,  
 discouraged, in despair.  
*inflatum, elatum esse aliqua re*—to be proud, arrogant  
 by reason of something.  
*insolentia, superbia inflatum esse*—to be puffed up with  
 pride.  
*magnos spiritus sibi sumere* (B. G. 1. 33)—to be haughty.  
*spiritus alicuius reprimere*—to lower a person's pride.  
*insolentius se efferre*—to behave arrogantly.  
*elatus se gerere*—to give oneself airs.  
*sibi sumere aliquid* (Planc. 1. 3)—to take upon oneself.  
*contumacius se gerere*—to display a proud obstinacy.  
*libera contumacia Socratis* (Tusc. 1. 29. 71)—the frank  
 but defiant demeanour of Socrates (before his  
 judges).

6. PRESENCE OF MIND—COMPOSURE—  
DESPAIR

*praesenti animo uti* (*vid.* p. 84, note)—to possess presence of mind.

*aequo* (*aequissimo*) *animo ferre aliquid*—to endure a thing with (the greatest) sang-froid.

*humane, modice, moderate, sapienter, constanter ferre aliquid*—to bear a thing with resignation, composure.

(*animo*) *paratum esse ad aliquid*—to be resigned to a thing.

*omnia perpeti paratum esse*—to be ready to endure anything.

*ad omnes casus se comparare*—to prepare oneself for all contingencies.

*animum alicuius de statu, de gradu demovere* (more strongly *depellere, deturbare*)—to disconcert a person.

*de statu suo or mentis deici* }  
(Att. 16. 15) } to lose one's composure; to  
*de gradu deici, ut dicitur*<sup>1</sup> } be disconcerted.  
*perturbari (animo)* }

*sui (mentis) compotem non esse* }  
*non esse apud se*<sup>2</sup> (Plaut. Mil.) } to lose one's head, be  
4. 8. 26) } beside oneself.

*mente vix constare* (Tusc. 4. 17. 39)—to compose oneself with difficulty.

*animo adesse* (Sull. 11. 33)—to be quite unconcerned.

<sup>1</sup> These expressions are metaphors from the fencing-school. *gradus* is the position taken up by a combatant, so *gradu depelli, deici*=to be driven out of one's ground.

<sup>2</sup> Used especially in the comic poets.

*ad se redire*—to regain one's self-possession.

*constantiam servare* }  
*mente consistere* } to be calm, self-possessed.

*desperare*<sup>1</sup> *suis rebus*—to despair of one's position.

*ad (summam) desperationem pervenire, adduci* (B. C. 2. 42)  
—to be plunged into the depths of despair.

*desperatio rerum (omnium)* (Catil. 2. 11. 25)—absolute despair; a hopeless situation.

*quid (de) me fiet?* (Ter. Heaut. 4. 3. 37)—what will become of me?

*actum est de me*—it's all over with me; I'm a lost man.

## 7. HOPE—EXPECTATION

*spem habere* }  
*spe duci, niti, teneri* } to cherish a hope.

*magna me spes tenet* (with Acc. c. Inf.) (Tusc. 1. 41. 97)  
—I have great hopes that . . .

*sperare videor*—I flatter myself with the hope . . .

*bene, optime (meliora) sperare de aliquo* (Nep. Milt. 1. 1)—  
to hope well of a person.

*in spem venire, ingredi, adduci* }  
*spem concipere animo* } to conceive a hope.

*spem redintegrare* (B. G. 7. 25)—to revive a hope.

*spem alicui facere, afferre, inicere*—to inspire any one with hope.

<sup>1</sup> *desperare* is used, generally with *de*, more rarely with the accusative, in the meaning "to no longer count upon a thing," e.g. *reditum, pacem*; or with the dative, especially with *sibi, suis rebus, salutem, fortunam suam*. Note the use of *desperatus*, "abandoned," "given up," "despaired of," e.g. *desperati morbi* (Cic.), *aegroti ac paene desperata res publica* (Cic.)



- ad spem aliquem excitare, erigere*—to awaken new hope in some one.
- in maximam spem aliquem adducere* (Att. 2. 22. 3)—to inspire some one with the most brilliant hopes.
- in meliorem spem, cogitationem aliquem inducere* (Off. 2. 15. 53)—to induce some one to take a brighter view of things.
- spem proponere alicui*—to lead some one to expect . . .
- spes affulget* (Liv. 27. 28)—a ray of hope shines on us.
- spem falsam alicui ostendere*—to rouse a vain, groundless hope in some one's mind.
- spem alicui adimere, tollere, auferre, eripere*—to deprive a person of hope.
- spem praecidere, incidere* (Liv. 2. 15)—to cut off all hope.
- spem perdere*  
*spe deici, depelli, deturbari* } to lose hope.
- spes ad irritum cadit, ad irritum redigitur*—expectation is overthrown.
- spem abicere, deponere*—to give up hoping.
- inani, falsa spe duci, induci*—to be misled by a vain hope.
- spes me frustratur*—hope has played me false.
- spes extenuatur et evanescit*—hope is vanishing by degrees.
- spem alicuius fallere* (Catil. 4. 11. 23)—to deceive a person's hopes.
- spem alicui* or *alicuius minuere*—to weaken, diminish a person's hope.
- spem alicuius confirmare*—to strengthen a person in his hopes.
- spem alere*—to entertain a hope.
- spem habere in aliquo*  
*spem suam ponere, collocare in aliquo* } to set one's hope on some one.

- inter spem metumque suspensum esse*—to hover between hope and fear.
- praeter spem, exspectionem*—contrary to expectation.
- exspectionem*<sup>1</sup> *sui facere, commovere*—to cause oneself to be expected.
- exspectionem explere* (De Or. 1. 47. 205)—to fulfil expectation.
- exspectioni satisfacere, respondere*—to respond to expectations.
- exspectione alicuius rei pendere (animi)* (Leg. Agr. 2. 25. 66)—to be in suspense, waiting for a thing.
- exspectione torqueri, cruciari*—to suffer torments of expectation, delay.
- suspensio animo exspectare aliquid*—to be waiting in suspense for . . .
- aliquem in summam exspectionem adducere* (Tusc. 1. 17. 39)—to rouse a person's expectation, curiosity to the highest pitch.

#### 8. PITY—PARDON—WANT OF FEELING— CRUELTY

- misericordiam alicui commovere*  
*misericordiam alicuius concitare* } to excite some one's pity.
- ad misericordiam aliquem allicere, adducere, inducere*—to arouse feelings of compassion in some one.
- misericordia moveri, capi* (De Or. 2. 47)—to be touched with pity.
- misericordiam implorare*—to implore a person's sympathy, pity.

<sup>1</sup> Att. 1. 4. 5 *crebras exspectiones tui commoves*—i.e. you are leading us to expect your arrival.

*indulgere vitiis alicuius*—to be indulgent to a person's faults.

*alicui veniam dare (alicuius rei)*—to pardon some one.

*omnem humanitatem exuisse, ab-  
iecissee (Lig. 5. 14)*  
*omnem humanitatis sensum amis-  
sisse* } to be quite insensible to  
all feelings of human-  
ity.

*omnis humanitatis expertem esse*—to be absolutely wanting in sympathy.

*omnem humanitatem ex animo extirpare (Amic. 13. 48)*  
—to stifle, repress all humane sentiments in one's mind.

*nullam partem sensus habere*—to possess not the least spark of feeling.

*crudelitate uti (vid. p. 84, note)*—to behave with cruelty.  
*crudelitatem exercere in aliquo* } to exercise one's cruelty  
*crudelitatem adhibere in aliquem* } on some one.

*animadvertere in aliquem*—to inflict punishment on a person.

#### 9. LOVE—LONGING—ADMIRATION— ENTHUSIASM

*carum habere aliquem*  
*in amore habere aliquem*  
*amore prosequi, amplecti aliquem*  
*carum esse alicui*  
*carum atque iucundum esse alicui* } to feel affection for a  
person.  
} to be dear to some one.  
*adamasse aliquem (only in Perf. and Plup.) (Nep. Dion  
2. 3)*—to become devoted to some one.

*aliquem toto pectore,<sup>1</sup> ut dicitur, amare (Leg. 18. 49)*—to love some one very dearly, with all one's heart.

*aliquem ex animo or ex animi sententia amare (Q. Fr. 1. 1. 5)*—to love deeply.

*amore captum, incensum, inflammatum esse, ardere*—to be fired with love.

*amorem ex animo eicere*—to banish love from one's mind.

*mel ac deliciae alicuius (Fam. 8. 8. 1)*  
*amores et deliciae alicuius* } somebody's darling.

*in amore et deliciis esse alicui (active in deliciis habere aliquem)*—to be some one's favourite.

*aliquem in sinu gestare (aliquis est in sinu alicuius) (Ter. Ad. 4. 5. 75)*—to love and make a bosom friend of a person.

*aliquis, aliquid mihi curae or cordi<sup>1</sup> est*—somebody, something is never absent from my thoughts.

*curae habere aliquid*—to have laid something to heart; to take an interest in a thing.

*nihil antiquius or prius habeo quam ut (nihil mihi antiquius or potius est, quam ut)*—there is nothing I am more interested in than . . .

*desiderio alicuius rei teneri, affici (more strongly flagrare, incensum esse)*—to long for a thing, yearn for it.

*desiderio exardescere*—to be consumed with longing.

*admirationi esse*  
*admiratione affici<sup>2</sup>*  
*admirationem habere (Quintil. 8. 2. 6)* } to be admired.

<sup>1</sup> *pectus* metaphorically only occurs in isolated phrases, e.g. *toto pectore, cogitare, tremere*. Its commonest substitute is *animus*. Similarly *cor* metaphorically is only used in the phrase *cordi est*.

<sup>2</sup> *admiratione affici* also means "to be filled with admiration."

*magna est admiratio alicuius*—some one is the object of much admiration.

*admirationem alicui movere*—to fill a person with astonishment.

*admiratione incensum esse*—to be fired with admiration.

*admirabilia* (= *παράδοξα*)—paradoxes; surprising things.

*studio ardere alicuius* or *alicuius rei* (De Or. 2. 1. 1)—to have enthusiasm for a person or thing.

*studio alicuius rei aliquem incendere*—to make some one enthusiastic for a thing.

*ardor, inflammatio animi, incitatio mentis, mentis vis incitatio*—enthusiasm.

*ardorem animi restinguere*—to damp, chill enthusiasm.

*ardor animi resēdit, cōsedit*—his enthusiasm has abated, cooled down.

10. BELIEF—CONFIDENCE—LOYALTY—PROTECTION—PROMISE—VERACITY

(*fides, fiducia*)

*fidem*<sup>1</sup> *habere alicui*—to believe a person.

*fidem alicuius rei facere alicui*—to make some one believe a thing.

*fidem tribuere, adiungere alicui rei*—to believe in, trust in a thing.

<sup>1</sup> *fides* has six principal meanings: A. subjectively—(1) in an active sense, belief, confidence, which some one holds; (2) passive, veracity, credit which one enjoys; (3) neutral, good faith, sincerity, loyalty, conscientiousness, and especially of the protection which one expects by appealing to a man's loyalty. B. (4) active, ratification, sanction; (5) passive, the thing promised, surety, guarantee; (6) neutral, authenticity, certitude, truth of a thing. Cf. Haacke, Lat Stil. 40-41.

*fidem abrogare, derogare alicui*—to rob a person of his credit.

*fidem alicuius imminuere, infirmare* (opp. *confirmare*)—to weaken, destroy a man's credit.

*fiduciam in aliquo ponere, collocare* } to put confidence in  
*confidere alicui* (but *aliqua re*) } some one.

*fiduciam (alicuius rei) habere*—to have great confidence in a thing.

*fiducia sui* (Liv. 25. 37)—self-confidence.

*committere aliquid alicui* or *alicuius fidei*—to entrust a thing to a person's good faith.

*totum se committere, tradere alicui*—to put oneself entirely in some one's hands.

*fidem colere, servare*—to preserve one's loyalty.

*fidem praestare alicui*—to keep faith with a person, keep one's word.

*in fide manere* (B. G. 7. 4. 5)—to remain loyal.

*fidem laedere, violare, frangere*—to break one's word.

*fidem alicuius labefactare* (Cluent. 60. 194)—to make a person waver in his loyalty.

*de fide deducere* or *a fide abducere aliquem*—to undermine a person's loyalty.

*fide data et accepta* (Sall. Iug. 81. 1)—having exchanged pledges, promises.

*se conferre, se tradere, se permittere in alicuius fidem*—to put oneself under some one's protection.

*confugere ad aliquem, ad fidem alicuius*—to flee for refuge to some one.

*in fidem recipere aliquem* (B. G. 2. 15. 1)—to take a person under one's protection.

*fidem alicuius obsecrare, implorare*—to implore some's one protection.

- fidem addere alicui rei*—to confirm, ratify, sanction something.
- fidem publicam dare, interponere* (Sall. Iug. 32. 1)—to guarantee the protection of the state; to promise a safe-conduct.
- fidem dare alicui* (opp. *accipere*) (c. Acc. c. Inf.)—to give one's word that . . .
- fidem servare* (opp. *fallere*)—to keep one's word (not *tenere*).
- fidem persolvere*  
*fidem (promissum) praestare* } to fulfil a promise.
- fidem interponere* (Sall. Iug. 32. 5)—to pledge one's word to . . .
- fidem prodere*  
*fidem frangere* } to break one's word.
- promisso stare*—to abide by one's undertaking.
- fide obstrictum teneri* (Pis. 13. 29)—to be bound by one's word; to be on one's honour.
- fidem facere, afferre alicui rei* (opp. *demere, de-, abrogare fidem*)—to make a thing credible.
- aliquid fidem habet* (*vid.* also *fides* under History, p. 112)  
 —a thing finds credence, is credible.
- sponsoriam facere, sponsorem esse pro aliquo*—to be security for some one.
- praestare aliquem, aliquid, de aliqua re* or Acc. c. Inf.—to be answerable for a person, a thing.

## 11. SUSPICION—PRESENTIMENT

- suspicionem movere, excitare, incitare, dare alicui*—to rouse a person's suspicions.
- suspicionem habere de aliquo*—to suspect a person.

- suspicionem alicuius rei habere*—to be suspected of a thing.
- suspicio (alicuius rei) cadit in aliquem, pertinet ad aliquem*  
 —suspicion falls on some one.
- aliquem in suspicionem adducere (alicui), aliquem suspectum reddere*—to make a person suspected.
- in suspicionem vocari, cadere*—to become the object of suspicion.
- in suspicionem alicui venire*—to be suspected by some one.
- suspicionem a se removere, depellere, propulsare* (Verr. 3. 60. 140)—to clear oneself of a suspicion.
- suspicionem ex animo delere*—to banish all feeling of prejudice from the mind.
- suspicio insidet in animo ejus*  
*suspicio ei penitus inhaeret* } he is in a suspicious mood.
- suspicio tenuissima, minima*—the faintest suspicion.
- a suspicione alicuius rei abhorrere*—to have no presentiment of a thing.
- animus praesagit malum*  
*animus praesagio malum* } my mind forebodes misfortune.

## 12. HATRED—JEALOUSY—ENVY

- invisum esse alicui*  
*odio, invidiae esse alicui*  
*in invidia esse alicui*  
*in odio esse apud aliquem* } to be hated by some one.
- invidia flagrare, premi*—to be detested.
- in odium, in invidiam venire alicui*  
*invidiam colligere (aliqua re)*  
*alicuius odium subire, suscipere, in*  
*se convertere, sibi conflare*  
*in alicuius odium incurrere* } to incur a person's hatred.

- in invidiam, odium (alicuius) vocare aliquem* } to make a person odious, unpopular.
- in invidiam adducere aliquem* }  
*invidiam alicui conflare* (Catil. I. 9. 23) }  
*invidiam, odium ex-, concitare alicui, in aliquem* }
- capitali odio dissidere ab aliquo* (De Am. I. 2)—to be separated by a deadly hatred.
- odium explere aliqua re* (Liv. 4. 32)—to glut one's hatred.
- odium implacabile suscipere in aliquem*—to conceive an implacable hatred against a man.
- odio* or *invidia alicuius ardere*—to be consumed with hatred.
- odium inveteratum habere in aliquem* (Vat. 3. 6)—to cherish an inveterate animosity against some one.
- odio inflammatum, accensum esse*—to be fired with a passionate hatred.
- odium alicuius inflammare*—to kindle hatred in a person's heart; to fill some one with hatred (not *implere*, vid. p. 146, note).
- odium restinguere, exstinguere*—to stifle, drown one's hatred.

## 13. DISCONTENT—ANGER—REVENGE—FURY

- aegre, graviter, moleste, indigne ferre aliquid*—to be discontented, vexed at a thing; to chafe.
- indignitas, atrocitas rei* (Mur. 25. 51)—the revolting nature of an action.
- o facinus indignum!* (Ter. Andr. I. I. 118)—monstrous!

- ira incensum esse* }  
*iracundia inflammatum esse* } to be fired with rage.  
*ira ardere* (Flacc. 35. 88) }
- iracundia exardescere, effervescere*—to be transported with passion.
- iracundia efferri*—to be carried away by one's anger.
- ira defervescit* (Tusc. 4. 36. 78)—his anger cools.
- virus acerbitalis suae effundere in aliquem* (De Amic. 23. 87) } to vent one's anger, spite on some one.
- iram in aliquem effundere* }  
*iram, bilem evomere in aliquem* }
- irae indulgere* (Liv. 23. 3)—to give free play to one's anger.
- praecipitem in iram esse* (Liv. 23. 7)—to be short-tempered; to be prone to anger.
- animum explere*—to cool one's anger.
- iracundiam continere, cohibere, reprimere*—to restrain, master one's passion.
- iram restinguere, sedare*—to calm one's anger.
- animum alicuius ab iracundia revocare*—to prevent some one from growing angry, appease his anger,
- stomachum, bilem alicui movere*—to excite a person's wrath.
- ulcisci aliquem*,<sup>1</sup> *poenas expetere ab aliquo*—to revenge oneself on some one.
- ulcisci aliquid, poenas alicuius rei expetere*—to revenge oneself for a thing.
- ulcisci aliquem pro aliquo* or *pro aliqua re* } to revenge oneself on another for a thing  
*poenas alicuius* or *alicuius rei* } or on some one's behalf.  
*repetere ab aliquo* }

<sup>1</sup> *ulcisci aliquem* also means to avenge some one; to exact satisfaction on his behalf.

*iniurias persequi* (Verr. 2. 3. 9)—to avenge an insult.  
*impellere aliquem in furorem*—to make some one furious.  
*furore inflammari, incendi*—to become furious.  
*furore incensus, abreptus, impulsus*—in a transport of rage.  
*indignatio aliquem incedit*—to be filled with indignation.  
*indignationes* (Liv. 25. 1. 9)—signs of irritation, of discontent.

## X. VIRTUES AND VICES

### I. VIRTUE—MORALITY

*vita honesta (turpis)*—a virtuous (immoral) life.  
*honesta expetere; turpia fugere*—to follow virtue; to flee from vice.  
*virtute praeditum, ornatum esse* (opp. *vitiis obrutum esse*)—to be virtuous.  
*virtutem (iustitiam, pietatem) colere*—to cultivate virtue.  
*viam virtutis ingredi* (Off. 1. 32. 118)—to walk in the ways of virtue.  
*omnia consilia et facta ad virtutem referre*<sup>1</sup> (Phil. 10. 10. 20)—to make virtue the standard in every thought and act.  
*virtutem sequi, virtutis studiosum esse*—to strive to attain virtue.  
*virtutis perfectae perfecto munere fungi* (Tusc. 1. 45. 109)—to live a perfect life.

<sup>1</sup> For "thoughts and deeds," cf. Or. 3. 43. 182 *mores instituta et facta*; Prov. Cons. 8. 20 *consilia et facta*; Fin. 2. 14. 5 *studia et facta*; Verr. 5. 14. 35 *mentes hominum et cogitationes*.

*virtutem pristinam retinere* } to live as scrupulously  
*nihil ex pristina virtute remittere* } moral a life as ever.  
*summum bonum*<sup>1</sup> *in virtute ponere*—to consider virtue the highest good.  
*virtus hoc habet, ut . . .*—this is a characteristic of virtue, it . . .  
*a virtute discedere or deficere* } to deviate from the path of  
*honestatem deserere* } virtue.  
*a maiorum virtute desciscere, degenerare, deflectere*—to deteriorate.  
*a parentibus degenerare*—to degenerate (from one's ancestors).  
*corrumpi, depravari*—to be demoralised, corrupted.  
*excitare aliquem ad virtutem*—to rouse in some one an enthusiasm for virtue.  
*bonitas* (Fin. 5. 29. 65)—kindheartedness.  
*naturae bonitas* (Off. 1. 32. 118)—innate goodness, kindness.  
*naturae bona*—natural advantages.

### 2. VICE—CRIME

*omni vitio carere*—to be free from faults.  
*vitia erumpunt (in aliquem)* (De Amic. 21. 76)—his vices betray themselves.  
*animum vitiis dedere*—to abandon oneself to vice.  
*vitiis, sceleribus contaminari or se contaminare* (Off. 3. 8. 37)—to be tainted with vice.  
*vitiis, sceleribus inquinatum, contaminatum, obrutum esse*—to be vicious, criminal.

<sup>1</sup> Note too *finis bonorum et malorum*=the highest good and the greatest evil.

- vitia extirpare et funditus tollere*—to eradicate vice.
- vita omnibus flagitiis,<sup>1</sup> vitiis dedita* } a life defiled by every  
*vita omnibus flagitiis inquinata* } crime.
- natura proclivem esse ad vitia*—to have a natural propensity to vice.
- scelera moliri* (Att. 7. 11)—to meditate crime.
- scelus facere, committere, admittere*—to commit crime.
- facinus facere, committere*—to do a criminal deed.
- scelere se devincire, se obstringere,*  
*astringi* } to commit a crime and so  
 make oneself liable to  
*scelus (in se) concipere, suscipere* } the consequences of it.
- scelus edere in aliquem* (Sest. 26. 58)—to commit a crime against some one.
- scelus scelere cumulare* (Catil. 1. 6. 14)—to heap crime on crime.
- scelus<sup>1</sup> supplicio expiare*—to expiate a crime by punishment.

## 3. DESIRE—PASSION—SELF-CONTROL

- cupiditate alicuius rei accensum, inflammatum esse*—to be fired with desire of a thing.
- cupiditate alicuius rei ardere, flagrare*—to have an ardent longing for a thing.
- cupiditatem alicuius accendere*  
*aliquem ad cupiditatem incitare* } to rouse a person's  
*aliquem cupiditate inflammare* } interest, cupidity.

<sup>1</sup> *flagitium* is a crime against oneself, e.g. drunkenness. *scelus* is a sin against society at large, e.g. theft, murder. *nefas* a sin against God, e.g. sacrilege, parricide. *facinus* any unusual action, then generally a crime, outrage.

- cupiditatibus occaecari* (Fin. 1. 10. 33)—to be blinded by passions.
- libidine ferri*—to be carried away by one's passions.
- se (totum) libidinibus dedere*—to abandon oneself (entirely) to debauchery.
- cupiditatibus servire, pārere*—to be the slave of one's desires.
- praecipitem ferri aliqua re* (Verr. 5. 46. 121)—to be carried away by something.
- homo impotens sui*  
*homo effrenatus, intemperans* } a man of no self-control,  
 self-indulgent.
- sibi imperare or continere et*  
*coercere se ipsum* } to have self-control; to  
 restrain oneself, mas-  
*animum regere, coercere, cohibere* } ter one's inclinations.  
*animum vincere* (Marcell. 3. 8) }
- imperare cupiditatibus*  
*coercere, cohibere, continere,* } to overcome one's passions.  
*domitas habere cupiditates* }
- refrenare cupiditates, libidines*—to bridle one's desires.
- effrenatae cupiditates*  
*indomitae animi cupiditates* } unrestrained, unbridled lust.
- cupiditates explere, satiare*—to satisfy one's desires.
- libidinem alicuius excitare*—to arouse some one's lust.
- libido dominatur.* (Or. 65. 219)—the passions win the day.
- libido consedit*—the storm of passion has abated.
- cupiditates deferbuerunt* (Cael. 18. 43)—the passions have cooled down.
- animi perturbationes extirpare*—to eradicate passion from the mind.

## 4. WRONG—INSULT—OUTRAGE—OFFENCE

(cf. p. 57)

- iniuriam inferre, facere alicui* } to wrong a person.  
*iniuria afficere aliquem* }
- iniuria lacessere aliquem*—to provoke a person by a gratuitous insult.
- iniuria abstinere* (Off. 3. 17. 72)—to refrain from doing a wrong, an injustice.
- iniuriam accipere*—to be the victim of an injustice.
- iniuriam ferre, pati*—to suffer wrong.
- iniurias defendere, repellere, propulsare*—to repel an injury.
- iniurias neglegere*—to leave a wrong unpunished, to ignore it.
- ab iniuria aliquem defendere*—to protect any one from wrong.
- satisfacere alicui pro (de) iniuriis*—to give some one satisfaction for an injury.
- contumelia aliquem afficere*—to insult some one.
- voces (verba) contumeliosae* } insulting expressions.  
*verborum contumeliae* }
- contumeliosis vocibus prosequi aliquem* (vid. p. 88, note)—to use insulting expressions to any one.
- maledictis aliquem onerare, lacerare*—to heap abuse on some one.
- offendere aliquem, alicuius animum* }  
*offendere apud aliquem* (Cluent. 23. 63) } to hurt some one's feelings.  
*in offensionem alicuius incurrere* }  
 (Verr. 1. 12. 35)
- offendi aliqua re (animus offenditur)*—to feel hurt by something.

- offendere in aliquo* (Mil. 36. 99)—to have something to say against a person, to object to him.
- offendere<sup>1</sup> in aliqua re* (Cluent. 36. 98)—to take a false step in a thing; to commit an indiscretion.
- offensionem habere*—to give offence to, to shock a person (used of things, vid. p. 65).
- res habet aliquid offensionis*—there is something repulsive about the thing.

## 5. VIOLENCE—AMBUSCADE—THREATS

- vim adhibere, facere alicui*—to use violence against some one.
- vim inferre alicui*—to do violence to a person.
- vim et manus afferre alicui* (Catil. 1. 8. 21)—to kill with violence.
- vim vi depellere* }  
*vi vim illatam defendere* } to meet force by force.
- insidias collocare, locare* (Mil. 10. 27)—to set an ambush.
- insidias alicui parare, facere, struere, instruere, tendere*—to waylay a person.
- aliquem in insidiis locare, collocare, ponere*—to place some one in ambush.
- aliquem in insidias elicere, inducere*—to draw some one into an ambush.
- subsidiere in insidiis* (Mil. 19. 49)—to place oneself in ambush.

<sup>1</sup> Notice too *offendere caput* (Quintil. 6. 3. 67), *pedem* (B. Hisp. 23), to strike one's head, foot against anything; *offendere aliquem imparatum* (Fam. 2. 3), to find some one unprepared, cf. καταλαμβάνειν.



*minitari* (*minari*) *alicui mortem, crucem et tormenta, bellum*  
—to threaten some one with death, crucifixion,  
torture, war.

*minitari alicui igni ferroque* (Phil. 13. 9. 21)—to threaten  
with fire and sword.

*denuntiare*<sup>1</sup> *bellum, caedem* (Sest. 20. 46)—to threaten  
war, carnage.

*minas iacere, iactare* } to use threats.  
*minis uti* }

## 6. APPEARANCE—DECEIT—FALSEHOOD— DERISION

*speciem alicuius rei habere*—to have the appearance of  
something.

*speciem alicuius rei praeberere* } to give the impression of . . .  
*speciem prae se ferre*<sup>2</sup> } have the outward aspect  
of . . .

*in speciem* }  
*specie* (De Amic. 13. 47) } apparently; to look at.  
*per speciem (alicuius rei)* }

*per simulationem, simulatione alicuius rei*—under pretext,  
pretence of . . .

*simulare morbum*—to pretend to be ill.

*dissimulare*<sup>3</sup> *morbum*—to pretend not to be ill.

<sup>1</sup> "Threaten" in the sense of to be at hand, to be imminent, is rendered by some such word as *imminere, impendere, instare*, e.g. *bellum imminet*. For the meaning to seem likely, to promise, cf. *coniuratio rem publicam peruersura videtur*, the conspiracy threatens to overthrow the state.

<sup>2</sup> *prae se ferre* followed by Acc. and Inf. = to manifest, display, e.g. *Romanum esse semper prae me tuli*.

<sup>3</sup> *simulo* = I pretend to be what I am not, cf. ἀλαζών, a braggart; *dissimulo* = I pretend not to be what I am, cf. εἶρων, a mock-modest person. *Quae non sunt simulo, quae sunt ea dissimulantur*.

*aliquis simulat aegrum* or *se esse aegrum*—some one feigns  
illness.

*aliter sentire ac loqui (aliud sentire, aliud loqui)*—to  
think one thing, say another; to conceal one's  
opinions.

*per dolum* (B. G. 4. 13)—by craft.

*dolis et fallaciis* (Sall. Cat. 11. 2)—by the aid of fraud and  
lies.

*sine fuce ac fallaciis* (Att. 1. 1. 1)—without any disguise,  
frankly.

*verba dare alicui* (Att. 15. 16)—to deceive a person, throw  
dust in his eyes.

*mendacium dicere* } to tell lies.  
*falsa (pro veris) dicere* }

*ludere, irridere, deridere aliquem* } to make sport of, rally a  
*illudere alicui* or *in aliquem* } person.  
(more rarely *aliquem*) }

*ludibrio esse alicui*—to serve as some one's butt.

*in ludibrium verti* (Tac. Ann. 12. 26)—to become an  
object of ridicule; to be laughed at.

*omnibus artibus aliquem ludificari, eludere*—to fool a person  
thoroughly.

*per ludibrium*—in sport, mockery.

## 7. DUTY—INCLINATION

*officium suum facere, servare,*  
*colere, tueri, exsequi, praestare* }  
*officio suo satisfacere* (Div. in } to do one's duty.  
Caec. 14. 47) }

*officio suo fungi*

*omnes officii partes exsequi* } to fulfil one's duty in every  
*nullam officii partem deserere* } detail.  
*diligentem esse in retinendis officiis*—to be exact, punctual  
 in the performance of one's duty.

*officium suum deserere, neglegere* }  
*ab officio discedere* } to neglect one's duty.  
*de, ab officio decedere* }  
*officio suo deesse* (Fam. 7. 3)

*ad officium redire*—to return to one's duties.

*in officio manere* (Att. 1. 3)—to remain faithful to one's  
 duty.

*contra officium est* c. Inf.—it is a breach of duty to . . .

*ab officio abduci, avocari*—to let oneself be perverted  
 from one's duty.

*salvo*<sup>1</sup> *officio* (Off. 3. 1. 4)—without violating, neglecting  
 one's duty.

*multa et magna inter nos officia*<sup>2</sup> *intercedunt* (Fam. 13. 65)  
 —we are united by many mutual obligations.

*in aliquem officia conferre* }  
*aliquem officiis suis complecti,* } to be courteous, obliging to  
*prosequi* } some one.

*officiosum esse in aliquem*  
*litterae officii* or *humanitatis plenae*—a most courteous  
 letter.

<sup>1</sup> Notice *salvis legibus* (Fam. 1. 4), without breaking the law;  
*salva fide* (Off. 3. 4. 44), without breaking one's word.

<sup>2</sup> *officium* is used of anything which one feels bound to do, either on  
 moral grounds or from a desire to please others (especially those in  
 authority). Thus the word denotes not merely duty, sense of duty,  
 faithful performance of duty, submissiveness (cf. xvi. 13), but also  
 courteous, obliging behaviour, complaisance, mark of respect.  
 Objectively it has the meaning of an office, service, command, e.g.  
*officium maritimum*.

*studere alicui rei, studiosum esse* }  
*alicuius rei* }  
*studio alicuius rei teneri* } to have an inclination  
*propensum, proclivem esse ad* } for a thing.  
*aliquid* (opp. *alienum, aversum*  
*esse, abhorrere ab aliqua re*) }  
*studiis suis obsequi* (De Or. 1. 1. 3)—to follow one's  
 inclinations.  
*sibi* or *ingenio suo indulgere* (Nep. Chabr. 3)—to indulge  
 one's caprice.

#### 8. REASON—CONSCIENCE—REMORSE

*rationis participem* (opp. *exper-*  
*tem*) *esse* } to be endowed with  
*ratione praeditum esse, uti* } reason.

*prudenter, considerate, consilio agere* (opp. *temere, nullo con-*  
*silio, nulla ratione*)—to act reasonably, designedly.  
*sapere* (Off. 2. 14. 48)—to be a man of sense, judg-  
 ment.

*resipiscere* (Att. 4. 5. 2) } to recover one's reason, be  
*ad sanitatem reverti, redire* } reasonable again.  
*ad bonam frugem se recipere* }  
*ad sanitatem adducere, revocare aliquem*—to bring some  
 one back to his senses.

*satin* (= *satisne*) *sanus es?*—are you in your right mind?  
*rationi repugnare*—to be contrary to all reason.

*conscientia recta, recte facti* (*fac-*  
*torum*), *virtutis, bene actae* } a good conscience.  
*vitae, rectae voluntatis* }  
*mens bene sibi conscia*

- conscientia mala* or *peccatorum*,  
*culpa*, *sceleris*, *delicti*  
*animus male sibi conscius* } a guilty conscience.  
*nullius culpa sibi conscius esse*—to be conscious of no ill deed.  
*conscientia morderi* (Tusc. 4. 20. 45)—to be conscience-stricken.  
*conscientiae maleficiorum stimulant aliquem*—his guilty conscience gives him no rest.  
*conscientia mala angere, excruciarī* } to be tormented by re-  
 (mens scelerum furiis agitatur) } morse.  
*conscientia recte factorum erigi*—to congratulate oneself on one's clear conscience.  
*Furiae agitant et vexant aliquem*—the Furies harass and torment some one.

#### 9. MEASURE—STANDARD—LIMIT— MODERATION

- modum tenere, retinere, servare, adhibere*—to observe moderation, be moderate.  
*omnia modice agere*—to be moderate in all things, commit no excess.  
*modum facere, statuere, constituere alicui rei* or *alicuius rei*  
 —to set a limit to a thing.  
*modum transire*  
*extra modum prodire* } to pass the limit.  
*ultra modum<sup>1</sup> progredi* }

<sup>1</sup> Only Livy and subsequent writers use *modum excedere*, and in the same way *supra modum*.

- metiri, ponderare, aestimare, iudicare aliquid (ex) aliqua re*  
*dirigere* or *referre aliquid ad aliquam rem* } to measure something by the standard of something else; to make something one's criterion.  
*fines certos terminosque constituere*—to impose fixed limitations.  
*terminis circumscribere aliquid*—to set bounds to a thing, limit it.  
*moderatum, continentem esse*  
*moderatum se praebere* } to behave with moderation.  
*temperantia uti*  
*moderationem, modum adhibere* } to show moderation in a  
 in aliqua re } matter.  
*moderari aliquid* (Flacc. 5. 12)  
*modice ac sapienter*—with moderation and judgment.  
*sine modo; nullo modo adhibito*—with no moderation.  
*extra, praeter modum*—beyond all measure.  
*mediocritatem tenere* (Off. 1. 25. 89)—to observe the golden mean.

#### 10. MORALS—IMMORALITY—PRINCIPLES— CHARACTER

- homo bene (male) moratus*—a moral (immoral) man.  
*homo perditus*—a depraved, abandoned character.  
*praecepta de moribus* or *de virtute*—moral precepts.  
*morum praecepta tradere alicui* } to give moral advice, rules  
 de virtute praecipere alicui } of conduct.  
*mores corrupti* or *perditi*—moral corruption (not *corruptela morum*).

*tam perditis* or *corruptis moribus*—amongst such moral depravity.

*mores in dies magis labuntur* (also with *ad*, e.g. *ad molitiam*)—immorality is daily gaining ground.

*severus morum castigator*—a stern critic of morals.

*aliquid abhorret a meis moribus* (opp. *insitum* [*atque innatum*] *est animo* or *in animo alicuius*)—something is contrary to my moral sense, goes against my principles.

*consilia et facta* (cf. p. 164, note)—thought and deed.

*institutum tenere*—to remain true to one's principles.

*ratione*; *animi quodam iudicio*—on principle.

*vitae ratio bene ac sapienter instituta*—a sound and sensible system of conduct.

*meae vitae rationes ab ineunte aetate susceptae* (Imp. Pomp.

1. 1)—the principles which I have followed since I came to man's estate.

*certas rationes in agendo*<sup>1</sup> *sequi*—to follow fixed principles of conduct.

*omnia temere agere, nullo iudicio uti* } to have no principles.  
*caeco impetu ferri* }

*natura et mores*; *vita moresque*; *indoles animi ingeniique*; or simply *ingenium, indoles, natura, mores*—character.

*vir constans, gravis* (opp. *homo inconstans, levis*)—a man of character, with a strong personality.

*sibi constare, constantem esse*—to be consistent.

<sup>1</sup> Do not translate "to act, behave, conduct oneself" by *agere* without an object or an accompanying adverb, e.g. *bene, recte agere*; however, with the gerundive the adverb may be omitted, e.g. *agendum est, tempus agendi, celeritas in agendo*.

*animo mobili esse* (Fam. 5. 2. 10)—to be inconsistent, changeable.

*aliquid est proprium alicuius*—something is a characteristic of a man.

*mobilitas et levitas animi*—inconsistency; changeability.

## XI. RELIGION

### I. GOD—WORSHIP

*numen (deorum) divinum*—the sovereign power of the gods.

*dei propitii* (opp. *irati*)—the favour of heaven.

*superi*; *inferi*—the gods of the upper, lower world.

*inferi* (*Orcus* and *Tartarus* only poetical)—the world below.

*ad inferos descendere*—to descend to the world below.

*apud inferos esse*—to be in the lower world.

*aliquem ab inferis* or *a mortuis evocare, excitare* (passive *ab inferis existere*)—to summon some one from the dead.

*deos sancte, pie venerari*—to be an earnest worshipper of the gods.

*deum rite (summa religione) colere*—to honour the gods with all due ceremonial (very devoutly).

*cultus dei, deorum* (N. D. 2. 3. 8)—worship of the gods; divine service.

*sacra, res divinae, religiones, caerimoniae*—ritual; ceremonial.

*rebus divinis interesse* (B. G. 6. 13)—to take part in divine service (of the priest).

- sacris adesse*—to be present at divine service (of the people).
- sacris initiari* (Quintil. 12. 10. 14)—to be initiated into the mysteries of a cult.
- templa deorum adire*—to make a pilgrimage to the shrines of the gods.
- numerus deorum obtinere* (N. D. 3. 20)—to be regarded as a god.
- aliquem in deorum numerum referre, reponere*—to deify a person.
- aliquem in deorum numerum referre*—to consider as a god.
- aliquem divino honore colere*  
*alicui divinos honores tribuere,*  
*habere* } to pay divine honours to  
 some one.
- propius ad deos accedere* (Mil. 22. 59)—to approach the gods.
- supera et caelestia; humana et ceteriora*—heavenly things; earthly things.
- divinitus* (De Or. 1. 46. 202)—by divine inspiration (often = marvellously, excellently).
- divinitus accidit*—it happened miraculously.

## 2. RELIGION—RELIGIOUS SCRUPLE—OATH

*imbuere* (vid. p. 103, note) *pectora religione*<sup>1</sup>—to inspire with religious feeling, with the fear of God.

<sup>1</sup> *religio* (original meaning probably that which binds down, cf. *religo, leges, lictor*, etc.) denotes, subjectively, religious feeling, devotion, fear of God, religious scruple, conscientiousness. Objectively it means the object of religious fear, a sacred thing or place, also that which is contrary to the gods' will, a crime, sin, curse; lastly in an active sense a religious obligation, an oath.

- audientium animos religione perfundere* (Liv. 10. 388)—to fill the souls of one's audience with devotion.
- religionem ex animis extrahere* (N. D. 1. 43. 121)—to banish devout sentiment from the minds of others.
- omnem religionem tollere, delere*—to annihilate all religious feeling.
- religionem labefactare* (vid. p. 50, note)—to shake the foundations of religion.
- religione obstrictos habere multitudinis animos* (Liv. 6. 1. 10)—to have power over the people by trading on their religious convictions.
- religionem alicui afferre, inicere, incutere*—to inspire some one with religious scruples.
- aliquid religioni habere* or *in religionem vertere*  
*aliquid in religionem alicui*  
*venit* } to make a thing a matter of  
 conscience, be scrupulous  
 about a thing.
- nulla religio*—absence of scruples, unconscientiousness.
- religionem externam suscipere*—to embrace a strange religion.
- novas religiones instituere*—to introduce a new religion, a new cult.
- bellum pro religionibus susceptum*—a religious war.
- violatas caerimonias inexpiabili religione sancire* (Tusc. 1. 12. 27)—to invoke an irrevocable curse on the profanation of sacred rites.
- iusiurandum dare alicui*<sup>1</sup>—to swear an oath to a person.
- ex animi mei sententia iuro*—I swear on my conscience.
- iureiurando aliquem astringere*—to bind some one by an oath.

<sup>1</sup> *sacramentum dicere alicui* and *apud aliquem*=to take in some one's presence an oath to the standard, a military oath.

*iureiurando aliquem adigere*—to make some one take an oath.

*iureiurando ac fide se obstringere, ut*—to promise an oath to . . .

*iureiurando teneri* (Off. 3. 27. 100)—to be bound by oath.

*iusiurandum (religionem) servare, conservare*—to keep one's oath.

*perjurium facere; peierare*—to commit perjury, perjure oneself.

*iusiurandum violare*—to break one's oath.

### 3. BELIEF—UNBELIEF—SUPERSTITION

*opinio dei*—belief in God.

*deum esse credimus*—we believe in the existence of a God.

*deos esse negare*—to deny the existence of the gods.

*insitas (innatas) dei cognitiones habere* (N. D. 1. 17. 44)—to have innate ideas of the Godhead; to believe in the Deity by intuition.

*omnibus innatum est et in animo quasi insculptum esse deum*  
—belief in God is part of every one's nature.

*natura in omnium animis notionem dei impressit* (N. D. 1. 16. 43)—Nature has implanted in all men the idea of a God.

*impietas*—unbelief.

*qui deum esse negat*—an atheist.

*superstitio mentes occupavit* (Verr. 4. 51. 113)—superstition has taken possession of their souls.

*superstitione imbutum esse*—to be tinged with superstition.

*superstitione teneri, constrictum esse, obligatum esse*—to be the slave of superstition.

*superstitionem funditus tollere*—to absolutely annihilate superstition.

*superstitionem radicitus* or *penitus evellere*—to destroy superstition root and branch.

*formidines*—superstitious fears; phantoms.

### 4. PRAYERS—WISHES—VOWS

*precari aliquid a deo*  
*precari deum, deos*  
*supplicare deo* (Sall. Iug. 63. 1)  
*adhibere deo preces* } to pray to God.

*praeire verba (carmen)* (Liv. 31. 17)—to read prayers for the congregation to repeat.

*(supinas) manus<sup>1</sup> ad caelum tendere*—to raise the hands to heaven (attitude of prayer).

*favete ore, linguis = εὐφραμείτε*—maintain a devout silence (properly, utter no ill-omened word).

*preces facere*—to pray.

*grates, laudes agere dis immortalibus*—to thank, glorify the immortal gods.

*testari deos* (Sull. 31. 86)—to call the gods to witness.

*contestari deos hominesque*—to call gods and men to witness.

*dis bene iuvantibus* (Fam. 7. 20. 2)—with the help of the gods.

*quod deus bene vertat!*<sup>2</sup>—and may God grant success!

<sup>1</sup> *supinus* = ὑπίσιος, bent backwards; *supinae manus*, with the palms turned up. The opposite of *supinus* is *pronus*, e.g. *puerum imponere equo pronom in ventrem, postea sedentem* (Varr.); *pecora quae natura prona finxit* (Sall.)

<sup>2</sup> Note that these clauses with *quod* are parenthetical.

*quod di immortales omen avertant!* (Phil. 44. 11)—and may heaven avert the omen! heaven preserve us from this!

*quod abominor!* (*procul absit!*)—God forbid!

*di prohibeant, di meliora!*—heaven forbid!

*quod bonum, faustum, felix fortunatumque sit!*<sup>1</sup> (Div. 1. 45. 102)—may heaven's blessing rest on it!

*precari alicui bene* (*male*) or *omnia bona* (*mala*), *salutem*—to bless (curse) a person.

*vota facere, nuncupare, suscipere, concipere*—to make a vow.

*vota solvere, persolvere, reddere*—to accomplish, pay a vow.

*voti damnari, compōtem fieri*—to have to pay a vow; to obtain one's wish.

#### 5. SACRIFICE—FESTIVAL

*sacra, sacrificium facere* (*ἱερὰ ῥέζειν*), *sacrificare*  
*rem divinam facere* (*dis*) } to sacrifice.

*ture et odoribus incensis*—with incense and perfumes.

*rebus divinis* (*rite*) *perpetratis*—after having performed the sacrifice (with due ritual).

*sacrificium statum* (*solemne*) (Tusc. 1. 47. 113)—a periodically recurring (annual) sacrifice.

*sacra polluere et violare*—to profane sacred rites.

*victimās* (oxen), *hostias* (smaller animals, especially sheep)  
*immolare, securi ferire, caedere, mactare*—to slaughter victims.

*deos placare* (B. G. 6. 15)—to appease the anger of the gods.

*manes expiare* (Pis. 7. 16)—to appease the manes, make sacrifice for departed souls.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes abbreviated q. b. f. f. s.

*pro victimis homines immolare*—to sacrifice human victims.  
*parentare* (Leg. 2. 21. 54)—to make a sacrifice on the tomb of one's ancestors.

*libare*—to offer libations.

*diem festum agere* (of an individual)  
*diem festum celebrare* (of a larger number) } to keep, celebrate a festival.

*supplicationem indicere ad omnia pulvinaria* (Liv. 27. 4)—to proclaim a public thanksgiving at all the street-shrines of the gods.

*supplicationem quindecim dierum decernere* (Phil. 14. 14. 37)—to decree a public thanksgiving for fifteen days.

*supplicationem habere* (Liv. 22. 1. 15)—to celebrate a festival of thanksgiving.

*lectisternium facere, habere* (Liv. 22. 1. 18)—to hold a lectisternium.

#### 6. ORACLE—PRODIGIES—AUSPICES—PRESAGE

*oraculum consulere*—to consult an oracle.

*oraculum petere* (*ab aliquo*)—to ask for an oracular response.

*mittere Delphos consultum*—to send and consult the oracle at Delphi.

*oraculum dare, edere*  
*responsum dare* (*vid. p.* 131, note), *respondere* } to give an oracular response.

*oraculum Pythium* (*Pythicum*)  
*vox Pythia* (*Pythica*) (Liv. 1. 56) } an oracle given by the Delphian Apollo (Apollo Pythius).

*prodigia procurare*<sup>1</sup> (Liv. 22. 1)—to avert by expiatory sacrifices the effect of ominous portents.

*libros Sibyllinos adire, consulere, inspicere*—to consult the Sibylline books.

*augurium agere*,<sup>2</sup> *auspicari* (N. D. 2. 4. 11)—to take the auspices, observe the flight of birds.

*de caelo servare* (Att. 4. 3. 3)—to observe the sky (*i.e.* the flight of birds, lightning, thunder, etc.)

*aves (alites, oscines)*<sup>3</sup> *addicunt alicui* (opp. *abdicunt aliquid*)—the omens are favourable to some one.

*augures obnuntiant (consuli)* (Phil. 2. 33. 83)—the augurs announce an unfavourable sign.

*auspicato (rem gerere, urbem condere)*—after having duly taken the auspices.

*omen accipere* (opp. *improbare*)—to accept as a happy omen.

*accipere, vertere aliquid in omen*—to interpret something as an omen.

*faustis ominibus*—with favourable omens.

*omen infaustum, triste*—an evil omen; presage of ill.

<sup>1</sup> *procurare*, a technical term of religious ceremonial—to avert by expiation; to take the necessary measures, observe the proper ceremony for appeasing the anger of the gods.

<sup>2</sup> Not *auspicia habere*, which means to have the right to take the auspices. As this right was usually combined with the right to command, we find such phrases as *ponere auspicia*, to give up a command; *imperio auspicioque alicuius, auspiciis alicuius*, under some one's command.

<sup>3</sup> In the science of augury, *alites* denoted birds which gave omens by their flight; *oscines* those which gave them by their cries.

## XII. DOMESTIC LIFE

## I. THE HOUSE AND ITS DIFFERENT PARTS

*domus necessariis rebus instructa*—a comfortably-furnished house.

*domus ruina*<sup>1</sup> *impendet*  
*domus collapsura, corruitura* } the house threatens to fall in  
(*esse*) *videtur* } (*vid.* p. 170, note).

*domus subita ruina collapsa est*—the house suddenly fell in ruins.

*domum demoliri* (Top. 4. 22)—to demolish, raze a house.

*domus non omnes capit*<sup>2</sup> (*χωρεῖν*)—the house is not large enough for all.

*domum frequentare* (Sall. Cat. 14. 7)—to be a regular visitor at a house.

*domus rimas agit*—the house walls are beginning to crack.

*apud eum sic fui tamquam domi meae* (Fam. 13. 69)—I felt quite at home in his house.

*apud aliquem esse*—to be at some one's house.

*tectum subire*—to enter the house.

*tecto, (in) domum suam aliquem recipere* (opp. *prohibere aliquem tecto, domo*)—to welcome to one's house (opp. to shut one's door against some one).

*domo pedem non efferre*—to never set foot out of doors.

<sup>1</sup> *ruina* = fall, overthrow (metaphor. e.g. *ruina rei publicae, ruinae fortunarum*, Catil. 1. 6. 14). In plur. it is used of the ruins, débris resulting from an overthrow, e.g. *urbs strata ruinis*, a town in ruins; *fumantes ruinae urbis*. For "ruins" in the sense of remains of old buildings use *parietinae*.

<sup>2</sup> Also metaph. e.g. *Macedonia te non capit*.



- pedem limine efferre*—to cross the threshold.  
*foras exire* (Plaut. Amph. 1. 2. 35)—to go out of the house.  
*foras mittere aliquem*—to turn some one out of the house.  
*in publico*—in the streets.  
*in publicum prodire* (Verr. 2. 1. 31)—to show oneself in the streets, in public.  
*publico carere, se abstinere* } to never appear in public.  
*domi se tenere* }  
*deducere*<sup>1</sup> *aliquem de domo*—to escort a person from his house.  
*pro aris*<sup>2</sup> *et focus pugnare, certare, dimicare*—to fight for hearth and home.  
*domi* (opp. *foris*)—at home; in one's native country.  
*ostium, fores pulsare*—to knock at the door.  
*ostium, fores aperire, claudere*—to open, shut the door.  
*fores obserare*—to bolt the door.  
*ianuam effringere, revellere*—to burst open the door.  
*valvas (portam) obstruere*—to barricade a door (a city-gate).

<sup>1</sup> Notice too *deducere coloniam*; *deducere naves*, to launch ships, opposed to *subducere*=to beach a boat; *deducere adulescentes ad virum clarissimum* (De Am. 1. 1); *deducere de sententia aliquem*; *rem in eum locum deducere, ut . . .*; *de capite deducere* (opp. *addere*) *quod pernumeratum est*=to subtract from the capital the amount paid; *deducere aliquem*, to escort a person from his province to Rome.

<sup>2</sup> At Rome there were altars not only in the temples but also in the streets and in private houses. In a house there were usually two—one in the court, the altar of the *Penates*; another in the *atrium* on a small hearth (*focus*), this was the altar of the *Lares*. Hence *arae focique*=the altars and hearths of the *Lares* and *Penates*.

## 2. DOMESTIC MATTERS—PROPERTY

- rem domesticam, familiarem administrare, regere, curare*—to keep house.  
*rem* or *opes habere, bona possidere, in bonis esse*—to possess means; to be well off.  
*opibus, divitiis, bonis, facultatibus abundare*—to be very rich.  
*rem bene (male) gerere*<sup>1</sup> (*vid.*) } to manage one's affairs,  
 p. 261 } household, property well  
*rem familiarem tueri* } or ill.  
*rem familiarem neglegere*—to neglect, mismanage one's household matters.  
*diligentem, frugi esse*—to be economical.  
*diligens paterfamilias*—a careful master of the house.  
*frugi*<sup>2</sup> (opp. *nequam*) *servus*—a good, useful slave.  
*severum imperium in suis exercere, tenere* (De Sen. 11. 37)—to be a strict disciplinarian in one's household.  
*in possessionem alicuius rei venire*—to come into the possession of something.  
*in possessionem alicuius rei invadere*—to take forcible possession of a thing.  
*expellere aliquem domo, possessionibus pellere*—to turn a person out of his house, his property.

<sup>1</sup> *rem gerere*=generally to manage one's affairs. Then specially—(1) to do business (of commercial men); (2) to administer one's estate; (3) to hold a command (of a general in the field). *res gerere* plur.=to carry out, accomplish undertakings, used specially of political activity.

<sup>2</sup> *frugi* is an old case-form (either locative or dative) from an obsolete nominative *frux*. Cf. *bonae frugi esse*, to be useful; *ad bonam frugem se recipere*, to come to one's senses (Cael. 12. 28).

*demovere, deicere aliquem de possessione*—to dispossess a person.

*exturbare aliquem omnibus fortunis, e possessionibus* } to drive a person out of house  
*evertere aliquem bonis, fortunis patriis* } and home.

*possessione alicuius rei cedere alicui* (Mil. 27. 75)—to give up a thing to some one else.

*res, quae moveri possunt; res moventes*<sup>1</sup> (Liv. 5. 25. 6)—movable, personal property.

*fundi*—property in land; real property.

### 3. HABITATION—CLOTHING

*habitare*<sup>2</sup> *in domo alicuius, apud aliquem* (Acad. 2. 36. 115)—to live in some one's house.

*domicilium (sedem ac domicilium) habere in aliquo loco*—to dwell in a certain place.

*sedem collocare alicubi* (Rep. 2. 19. 34) } to take up one's abode in  
*sedem ac domicilium (fortunas suas) constituere alicubi* } a place, settle down  
*considerare alicubi* (Att. 5. 14. 1) } somewhere.

<sup>1</sup> *res moventes; movere* is apparently sometimes used intransitively, e.g. *terra movet* (Liv. 35. 40; 40. 59), but here *moventes* is probably the participle of the middle *moveri* (cf. *res quae moveri possunt*). For parallel examples of a middle verb with a participle present or a gerundive cf. Fin. 2. 10. 31 *ultra voluptate stante an movente?* Suet. Claud. 28 *lectica per urbem vehendi ius*; Or. 2. 71. 287 *ceteris in campo exercentibus*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *habitare locum* is not used, *locus habitatur* is. On the other hand, we find *incolere Asiam*, etc., or with preps. *cis, trans, inter, prope, circum*—*incolere* being used intransitively, e.g. B. G. 1. 1. 4 *Germani qui trans Rhenum incolunt*. *incolere* is used of a number of people, *habitare* of individuals.

*multitudinem in agris collocare*—to settle a large number of people in a country.

*domo emigrare* (B. G. 1. 31)—to emigrate.

*domo profugus* (Liv. 1. 1)—homeless.

*induere vestem* (without *sibi*)—to dress oneself.

*vestem mutare* (opp. *ad vestitum suum redire*) (Planc. 12. 29)—to go into mourning.

*vestimenta (et calceos) mutare*—to change one's clothes (and shoes).

*vestitus obsoletus, tritus*—cast-off clothing.

*vestis stragula* or simply *vestis*—drapery.

*togatus*,<sup>1</sup> *palliatus*—with a toga, cloak on.

*pannis obsitus*—in rags.

*paludatus, sagatus*—in a military cloak (*paludamentum*, of a general; *sagum*, of soldiers).

*togam virilem (puram) sumere*—to assume the *toga virilis*.

*vestem ponere*<sup>2</sup> (*exuere*)—to undress.

### 4. FOOD—DRINK

*cibum sumere, capere*—to take food.

*cibum concoquere, conficere*—to digest food.

*multi cibi esse, edacem esse*—to be a great eater.

*cibum apponere, ponere alicui*—to set food before a person.

*corpus curare (cibo, vino, somno)*—to refresh oneself, minister to one's bodily wants.

<sup>1</sup> *togatus*=a Roman citizen as opposed to—(1) a foreigner, (2) a soldier, (3) *tunicatus*, which is used of the lower classes who actually had no *toga* but simply *tunica*, cf. Hor. Ep. 1. 7. 65 *tunicatus popellus*.

<sup>2</sup> *vestem deponere*=to give up wearing a garment, never use it again. Notice too *ponere arma*, to put down one's weapons; *ponere librum (de manibus)*, to lay aside a book (not *deponere*, which would mean to lay aside for good. Cf. viii. 9).

- ventri deditum esse*—to be the slave of one's appetite.  
*cibo se abstinere*—to abstain from all nourishment.  
*ieiunium servare*—to fast.  
*tantum cibi et potionis adhibere quantum satis est*—to take only enough food to support life.  
*cibus delicatus*—delicacies.  
*panis cibarius*—ordinary bread.  
*vino deditum esse, indulgere*—to be given to drink.  
*potare*—to drink to excess; to be a drunkard.  
*alicui bibere dare*<sup>1</sup>—to give some one to drink.  
*alicui bibere ministrare*—to serve some one with drink.  
*propino tibi hoc (poculum, salutem)*—I drink your health.  
*bene tibi* or *te!*—your health!  
*inter pocula*—whilst drinking; at table.  
*exhaurire poculum*—to empty a cup at a draught.

## 5. SUBSISTENCE IN GENERAL

- victus cotidianus*—daily bread.  
*victus tenuis* (Fin. 2. 28. 90)—meagre diet.  
*res ad vitam necessariae* } the necessaries of life.  
*quae ad victum pertinent* }  
*res ad victum cultumque necessariae*—things indispensable to a life of comfort.  
*vitae commoditas iucunditasque*—comfort.  
*omnes ad vitam copias suppeditare alicui*—to provide some one with a livelihood.

<sup>1</sup> These forms *dare bibere*, etc., are not Graecisms but old usages which have survived in conversational language. For the infinitive (the dative of the verbal noun) used in this way compare Verg. Aen. 1. 527 *non nos aut ferro Libycos populare penates venimus*; Plaut. Bacch. iv. 3. 18 *parasitus modo venerat aurum petere*.

- quae suppeditant ad victum* (Off. 1. 4. 12)—a livelihood.  
*copiae cotidianis sumptibus suppetunt* (vid. p. 31, note)—his means suffice to defray daily expenses.  
*victum aliqua re quaerere*—to earn a livelihood by something.  
*vivere carne, piscibus, raptis* (Liv. 7. 25)—to live on meat, fish, by plunder.  
*de suo* (opp. *alieno*) *vivere*—to live on one's means.  
*vitam (inopem) tolerare* (B. G. 7. 77)—to endure a life of privation.  
*non habeo, qui (unde) vivam*—I have no means, no livelihood.  
*laute vivere*<sup>1</sup> (Nep. Chab. 3. 2)—to live well.

## 6. EXPENDITURE—LUXURY—PRODIGALITY

- sumptum facere, insumere in aliquid*—to spend money on an object.  
*sumptus effusi* (vid. p. 146, note) or *profusi*—prodigal expenditure.  
*sumptui parcere* (Fam. 16. 4)—to incur few expenses.  
*sumptibus modum statuere*—to limit one's expenditure.  
*sumptum minuere*—to retrench.  
*sumptus perpetui* (Off. 2. 12. 42)—current expenses.  
*sumptus liberales* (Off. 2. 12. 42)—munificence.  
*delicate ac molliter vivere*—to live a luxurious and effeminate life.  
*luxuria diffluere* (Off. 1. 30. 106) } to be abandoned to a  
*omnium rerum copia diffluere* } life of excess.  
*in luxuriam effundi*—to plunge into excesses, a career of excess.

<sup>1</sup> Not *bene vivere*, which is used of leading a moral life.

*effundere, profundere pecuniam, patrimonium*—to squander one's money, one's patrimony.

*dissipare rem familiarem (suam)* } to squander all one's  
*lacerare bona sua* (Verr. 3. 70. 164) } property.

### 7. HOSPITALITY

*convivium instruere, apparare, ornare (magnifice, splendide)*  
—to prepare, give a feast, dinner.

*mensas exquisitissimis epulis instruere* (Tusc. 5. 21. 62)—  
to load the tables with the most exquisite viands.

*mensae exstructae*—a table bountifully spread.

*caput cenae* (Fin. 2. 8. 25)—the main dish.

*secunda mensa* (Att. 14. 6. 2)—the dessert.

*ab ovo usque ad mala* (proverb.)<sup>1</sup>—from beginning to end.

*aliquem vocare, invitare ad cenam*—to invite some one to dinner.

*promittere (ad cenam)* (Off. 3. 14. 58)—to accept an invitation to dinner.

*inter cenam, inter epulas*—during dinner; at table.

*promittere ad aliquem*—to promise to dine with a person.

*condicere alicui (ad cenam)*—to invite oneself to some one's house for dinner.

*adhibere aliquem cenae* or *ad cenam, convivio* or *in convivium*  
—to welcome some one to one's table.

*cenam alicui apponere*—to set a repast before a person.

*convivia tempestiva* (Arch. 6. 13)—a repast which begins in good time.

*accipere aliquem (bene, copiose, laute, eleganter, regio apparatu, apparatis epulis)*—to entertain, regale a person.

<sup>1</sup> Lit. "from the egg to the apples," i.e. throughout the dinner; cf. *integram famem ad ovum affero* (Fam. 9. 20. 1).

*deverti ad aliquem (ad [in] villam)*—to go to a man's house as his guest.

*deversari apud aliquem* (Att. 6. 1. 25)—to stop with a person, be his guest for a short time when traveling.

*mihi cum illo hospitium est, intercedit*—my relations with him are most hospitable.

*hospitio alicuius uti*—to enjoy a person's hospitality.

*hospitium cum aliquo facere, (con-)iungere*—to become a friend and guest of a person.

*hospitio aliquem accipere* or *excipere (domum ad se)*—to welcome a man as a guest in one's house.

*hospitium renuntiare* (Liv. 25. 18)—to sever (previous) hospitable relations.

*domus patet, aperta est mihi*—I am always welcome at his house.

*invitare aliquem tecto ac domo* or *domum suam* (Liv. 3. 14. 5)—to invite some one to one's house.

### 8. SOCIALITY—INTERCOURSE—ISOLATION

*vitae societas*<sup>1</sup>—social life.

*facilitas, faciles mores* (De Am. 3. 11)—a sociable, affable disposition.

*societatem inire, facere cum aliquo*—to associate with some one.

*dissipatos homines in (ad) societatem vitae convocare* (Tusc. 1. 25. 62)—to unite isolated individuals into a society.

<sup>1</sup> The adj. *socialis* in the sense of "sociable" only occurs in late Latin, e.g. *homo sociale animal* (Sen.)

*socium se adiungere alicui*—to attach oneself to a person's society.

*aliquem socium admittere*—to admit a person into one's society.

*assiduum esse cum aliquo*—to be always in some one's company.

*uti aliquo (familiariter)* } to be on intimate terms with  
*alicuius familiaritate uti* } some one.

*usu, familiaritate, consuetudine* }  
*coniunctum esse cum aliquo* } to be on friendly terms  
*est mihi consuetudo, or usus* } with a person.  
*cum aliquo* }

*vivere cum aliquo*  
*vetus usus inter nos intercedit*—we have known each other well for several years.

*devincire aliquem consuetudine*—to attach a person to oneself.

*se dare in consuetudinem alicuius*—to devote oneself to a person's society.

*se insinuare in consuetudinem alicuius* (Fam. 4. 13. 6)—to insinuate oneself into a person's society.

*summa necessitudine aliquem contingere*—to stand in very intimate relations to some one.

*in similtate cum aliquo sum*—relations are strained between us.

*hominum coetus, congressus fugere*—to shun society.

*in solitudine vivere* (Fin. 3. 20. 65)—to live in solitude.

*secum vivere*—to live to oneself.

*vitam solitariam agere*—to live a lonely life.

### 9. CONVERSATION—AUDIENCE—CONFERENCE

*sermonem conferre,<sup>1</sup> instituere, ordiri* } to enter into conver-  
*cum aliquo* } sation with some  
*se dare in sermonem cum aliquo* } one.

*sermonem inferre de aliqua re*—to turn the conversation on to a certain subject.

*in eum sermonem<sup>2</sup> incidere, qui tum fere multis erat in ore*  
—to talk of a subject which was then the common topic of conversation.

*sermo incidit de aliqua re*—the conversation turned on . . .

*in sermonem ingredi*—to begin a conversation.

*sermo ortus est ab aliqua re*—the conversation began with . . .

*sermonem alio transferre*—to turn the conversation to another topic.

*medium sermonem abrumpere* (Verg. Aen. 4. 388)—to break off in the middle of the conversation.

*sermonem producere in multam noctem* (Rep. 6. 10. 10)—to prolong a conversation far into the night.

*sermonem habere cum aliquo de aliqua re* (De Am. 1. 3)—to converse, talk with a person on a subject.

*hinc sermo ductus est* } the conversation began in  
*sermo inductus a tali exordio* } this way.

*multus sermo*—a long conversation.

*narratio, fabula*—a narrative, tale, story.

*narratiuncula, fabella* (Fin. 5. 15)—an anecdote.

*haec fabula docet*—this fable teaches us (without *nos*).

<sup>1</sup> *sermonem conserere* only in late Latin.

<sup>2</sup> Distinguish from such phrases as *incidere in sermonem (hominum)*, to become common talk.

*convenire aliquem*—to meet a person (accidentally or intentionally) and talk with him.

*congrēdi cum aliquo*—to meet a person by arrangement, interview him.

*sui potestatem facere, praebere alicui* } to give audience to some one.  
*colloquendi copiam facere, dare* }  
*conveniendi aditum*<sup>1</sup> *dare alicui* }  
*aditum conveniendi* or *colloquium*<sup>2</sup> *petere*—to ask a hearing, audience, interview.

*(ad colloquium) admitti* (B. C. 3. 57) } to obtain an audience of some one.  
*in congressum alicuius venire* }

*velle aliquem* (Plaut. Capt. 5. 2. 24)—to wish to speak to some one.

*paucis te volo*  
*tribus verbis te volo* } a word with you.

*sermo cotidianus*, or simply *sermo*—conversational language.

*coram loqui (cum aliquo)*—to speak personally to . . .

*commercium loquendi et audiendi*—interchange of ideas; conversation.

*capita conferre* (Liv. 2. 45)—to put our heads together.

*remotis arbitris* or *secreto*—in private; tête-à-tête.

*intra parietes* (Brut. 8. 32)—within four walls.

<sup>1</sup> *audientia* is not used in this connection, but only in such phrases as *audientiam facere alicui* or *orationi alicuius*, to procure a hearing.

<sup>2</sup> *colloquium* as opposed to *sermo* means an interview specially arranged, usually for transaction of some business.

## 10. GREETING—FAREWELL

*salutem alicui dicere, impertire,*  
*nuntiare* } to greet a person.

*aliquem salvere iubere* (Att. 4. 14) }

*quid agis?*<sup>1</sup>—how are you?

*quid agitur? quid fit?*—what is going on? how are you getting on?

*Cicero Attico*<sup>2</sup> *S.D.P. (salutem dicit plurimam)*—Cicero sends cordial greeting to Atticus.

*tibi plurimam salutem*—my best wishes for your welfare.

*nuntia fratri tuo salutem verbis meis* (Fam. 7. 14)—remember me to your brother.

*adscribere alicui salutem* (Att. 5. 20. 9)—to add to one's letter good wishes to some one.

*salute data (accepta) redditaque*—after mutual greeting.

*inter se consalutare* (De Or. 2. 3. 13)—to exchange greetings.

*dextram alicui porrigere, dare*—to give one's right hand to some one.

*dextram iungere cum aliquo, dextras inter se iungere*—to shake hands with a person.

*te valere*<sup>3</sup> *iubeo*—I bid you good-bye, take my leave.

*vale* or *cura ut valeas*—good-bye; farewell.

*bene ambula et redambula*—a safe journey to you.

*gratulari alicui aliquid* or *de aliqua re*—to congratulate a person on something.

<sup>1</sup> *quid agis?* is also used as an expression of surprise, "what are you thinking of?"

<sup>2</sup> This and the following phrase only epistolary.

<sup>3</sup> *valedicere alicui* is poetical.

## 11. BETROTHAL—MARRIAGE—DIVORCE

*filiam alicui despondere*—to betroth one's daughter to some one.

*sibi (aliquam) despondere* (of the man)—to betroth one-self, get engaged.

*nuptias conciliare* (Nep. Att. 5. 3)—to arrange a marriage.

*nuptias parare*—to make preparations for a marriage.

*condicio (uxoria)* (Phil. 2. 38. 99)—a match.

*ducere uxorem*

*ducere aliquam in matrimonium* } to marry (of the man).

*nubere alicui*—to marry (of the woman).

*nuptam esse cum aliquo* or *alicui*—to be married to some one.

*uxorem habere* (Verr. 3. 33. 76)—to be a married man.

*dotem filiae dare*—to give a dowry to one's daughter.

*filiam alicui in matrimonio* or  
*in matrimonium collocare* or } to give one's daughter  
 simply *filiam alicui collocare* } in marriage to some-  
*filiam alicui in matrimonium dare* } one.

*filiam alicui nuptum dare*  
*nuntium remittere alicui* (De Or. } to separate, be divorced  
 I. 40) } (used of man or  
*repudium dicere* or *scribere alicui* } woman).

*divortium facere cum uxore*  
*aliquam suas res sibi habere*<sup>1</sup> } to separate from, divorce  
*iubere* (Phil. 2. 28. 69) } (of the man).

<sup>1</sup> The formula of divorce used by the man was *tuas res tibi habeto*, cf. Plaut. Trin. 266.

*repudium*<sup>1</sup> *remittere viro* (Dig. 24. 3)—to separate (of the woman).

## 12. WILL—INHERITANCE

*testamentum facere, conscribere*—to make a will.

*testamentum obsignare* (B. G. 1. 39)—to sign a will.

*testamentum resignare*—to open a will.

*testamentum rescindere*—to declare a will to be null and void.

*testamentum subicere, supponere*—to produce a false will.

*testamentum irritum facere, rumpere*—to annul, revoke a will.

*testamento aliquid cavere* (Fin. 2. 31)—to prescribe in one's will.

*pecuniam alicui legare*—to leave money to a person in one's will.

*aliquem heredem testamento scribere, facere*—to appoint some one as heir in one's will.

*alicuius mortui voluntas (suprema)*—the last wishes of a deceased person.

*heredem esse alicui*—to be some one's heir.

*hereditate aliquid accipere*—to inherit something.

*exheres paternorum bonorum* (De Or. 1. 38. 175)—disinherited.

*exheredari a patre*—to be disinherited.

*hereditate aliquid relictum est ab aliquo*—something has been left as a legacy by some one.

<sup>1</sup> Cicero uses *divortium* not *repudium*. *divortium* (*dis, vertere*) is a separation by mutual consent, *divortium est, quod in diversas partes eunt, qui discedunt* (Paul. Dig. L. 16. 1. 161). In *repudium* one party takes the initiative, usually the husband. The formula commonly used was *tua condicione non utar*.

*hereditas ad me* or *mihī venit ab aliquo* (Verr. 2. 1. 10)—I have received a legacy from a person.

*hereditatem adire, cernere*—to take possession of an inheritance.

*heres ex asse, ex dodrante*—sole heir; heir to three-quarters of the estate.

*heres ex besse*—heir to two-thirds of the property.

### 13. CUSTOM—USAGE

*assuefactus*<sup>1</sup> or *assuetus aliqua re*—accustomed to a thing.  
*in consuetudinem* or *morem venire*—to become customary, the fashion.

*in nostros mores inducere aliquid* (De Or. 2. 28)—to introduce a thing into our customs; to familiarise us with a thing.

*consuetudinem suam tenere, retinere, servare*—to keep up a usage.

*consuetudo inveterascit* (B. G. 5. 41. 5)—a custom is taking root, growing up.

*res obsolescit*—a thing is going out of use, becoming obsolete.

*a vetere consuetudine discedere*  
*a pristina consuetudine deflectere* } to give up old customs.

*in pristinam consuetudinem revocare aliquid*—to return to ancient usage.

*aliquid est meae consuetudinis*  
*aliquid cadit in meam consuetudinem* } it is my custom.

*mos (moris) est, ut* (Brut. 21. 84)—it is customary to . . .

*more, usu receptum est*—it is traditional usage.

<sup>1</sup> Note *assuescere*, to accustom oneself to . . . , and *assuefacere aliquem*, to accustom some one else to . . .

*ut fit, ita ut fit, ut fere fit*  
*ut solet, ut fieri solet* } as usually happens.

*ita fert consuetudo*—so custom, fashion prescribes.

*ex consuetudine mea* (opp. *praeter consuetudinem*)—according to my custom.

*more institutoque maiorum* (Mur. 1. 1)—according to the custom and tradition of my fathers.

*ex instituto* (Liv. 6. 10. 6)—according to traditional usage.

## XIII. COMMERCE AND AGRICULTURE

### I. COMMERCE IN GENERAL—PURCHASE—PRICE

*negotiatores*<sup>1</sup> (Verr. 2. 69.)  
168 } business-men.  
*homines negotii* (always in  
sing.) *gerentes* }

*negotii bene gerentes* (Quint. 19. 62)—good men of business.

*negotium obire* or *exsequi*—to be engaged upon a transaction, carry it out.

*negotium (rem) conficere, absolvere*—to settle, finish a transaction.

*mercaturam facere*—to be engaged in commerce, wholesale business.

<sup>1</sup> The usual terms for men of business are *negotiator*, *mercator*, *caupo*, *institor*. The first two are used of merchants, wholesale dealers, *negotiator* especially when talking of the transactions (*negotia*) of business, *mercator* with reference to the profits (*merces*). *caupo* is a retail dealer, tradesman, shopkeeper; *institor*, a pedlar, commercial traveller.



*negotia habere* (*in Sicilia*)—to have commercial interests in Sicily.

*contrahere rem* or *negotium cum aliquo* (Cluent. 14. 41)—to have business relations with some one.

*transigere aliquid* (*de aliqua re*) *cum aliquo* or *inter se*—to transact, settle a matter with some one.

*nihil cum aliquo contrahere*—to do no business with a man.

*quaestum facere* (Fam. 15. 14)—to make money.

*quaestui aliquid habere* (Off. 2. 3. 13)—to make a profit out of something.

*res, quae importantur et exportantur*—imports and exports.  
*exponere, proponere merces (venales)*—to set out goods for sale.

*parvo, vili pretio* or *bene emere*—to buy cheaply.

*magno* or *male emere*—to buy dearly.

*aliquid magno, parvo stat, constat*—a thing costs much, little.

*aliquid nihilo* or *gratis constat*—a thing costs nothing.

*pretium alicui rei statuere, constituere* (Att. 13. 22)—to fix a price for a thing.

## 2. MONEY—INTEREST—LOANS

*pecunia magna*,<sup>1</sup> *grandis* (*multum pecuniae*)—much money.

*pecunia exigua* or *tenuis*—little money.

*pecunia praesens* (*vid. p. 54, note*) or *numerata*—cash; ready money.

*aes* (*argentum*) *signatum*—coined money; bullion.

*argentum* (*factum*) (Verr. 5. 25. 63)—silver plate.

*nummi adulterini*—bad money; base coin.

*pecuniam erogare* (*in classem*)—to spend money.

<sup>1</sup> In plur. *magnae, multae pecuniae* = large sums of money.

*pecuniam insumere in aliquid* or *consumere in aliqua re*—to devote money to a purpose.

*pecuniam numerare alicui* (Att. 16. 16)—to pay cash.

*pecuniam solvere*—to pay money.

*pecuniam alicui debere*—to owe some one money.

*pecuniam alicui credere* (*sine fenore, usuris*)—to lend some one money (without interest).

*pecuniam fenori* (*fenore*) *alicui dare, accipere ab aliquo*—to lend, borrow money at interest.

*pecuniam fenore occupare* (Flacc. 21. 54)—to put out money at interest.

*pecuniam collocare*<sup>1</sup> *in aliqua re*—to put money in an undertaking.

*pecunia iacet otiosa*—the money is bringing in no interest, lies idle.

*pecuniam mutuari* or *sumere mutuam ab aliquo*—to borrow money from some one.

*pecuniam alicui mutuam dare*—to lend money to some one.

*pecuniam creditam solvere*—to repay a loan.

*non solvendo*<sup>2</sup> *esse, decoquere, conturbare* (Phil. 2. 2. 4)—to be bankrupt.

*pecuniam exigere* (*acerbe*)—to demand payment.

*magnas pecunias ex aliqua re* (e.g. *ex metallis*) *facere*—to have a large income from a thing (e.g. from mines).

*nummus iactatur* (Off. 3. 20. 80)—the bank-rate varies.

*versuram facere* (Att. 5. 21. 12)—to transfer a debt.

*nummulis acceptis* (Att. 1. 16. 6)—for a trifle, a beggarly pittance.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes absolutely, e.g. Cic. Off. 2. 25. 90 *pecuniam collocare*.

<sup>2</sup> *solvendo* is a predicative dative. For the development of such uses cf. *nulli rei erimus postea* (Plaut. Stich. 718); Ovid Met. 15. 403 *dedit huic aetas vires onerique ferendo est*; Liv. 4. 35 *experiunda res est sitne aliqui plebeius ferendo magno honori*.

## 3. MONEY-MATTERS—ACCOUNTS—AUDIT

- res nummaria* or *pecuniaria* } finance; money-matters.  
*ratio pecuniarum* }
- argentariam facere* (Verr. 5. 59. 155)—to be a banker.  
*argentariam dissolvere* (Caecin. 4. 11)—to close one's bank, give up banking.  
*codex* or *tabulae ratio accepti et expensi*—account-book; ledger.  
*nomina facere* or *in tabulas referre*—to book a debt.  
*pecunia in nominibus*<sup>1</sup> *est*—money is outstanding, unpaid.  
*pecuniam in nominibus habeo*—I have money owing me.  
*alicui expensum ferre aliquid*—to put a thing down to a man's account.  
*alicui acceptum referre aliquid*<sup>2</sup> (Verr. 2. 70. 170)—to put down to a man's credit.  
*rationem alicuius rei inire, subducere* } to go through accounts, make a valuation of a thing.  
*ad calculos vocare aliquid* }  
 (Amic. 16. 58)
- inita subductaque ratione aliquid facere*—to do something after careful calculation.  
*rationes putare*<sup>3</sup> *cum aliquo*—to balance accounts with some one.

<sup>1</sup> *nomina* are properly the sums entered in the ledger as due from a person. Hence *nomen solvere, dissolvere*, to pay a debt; *nomen expedit, exsolvere*, to get rid of a debt; *bonum nomen*, a safe investment (Cic. Fam. 5. 6. 2).

<sup>2</sup> Also used metaphorically to "owe a thing to another's instrumentality," e.g. *quod vivo tibi acceptum refero*.

<sup>3</sup> The original meaning of *putare* is to prune (cf. *purus, amputare*), cleanse by cutting off, then make clear, calculate, reckon. By a transference it became used of the result of calculation, i.e. thinking, believing. Compare the history of the French *raisonner* and the Italian *ragioneria*.

- ratio alicuius rei constat (convenit, par est)*—the accounts balance.  
*ratio acceptorum et datorum (accepti et expensi)* (Amic. 16. 58)—the account of receipts and expenditure.  
*rationes diligenter conficere*—to keep the accounts (day-book) carefully.  
*summam facere alicuius rei*—to compute the total of anything.  
*de capite deducere* (vid. p. 186, note) *aliquid*—to subtract something from the capital.  
*rationem alicuius rei reddere*—to render count of a matter; to pass it for audit.  
*rationem alicuius rei reposcere* }  
*aliquem* or *ab aliquo* } to demand an account, an audit of a matter.  
*rationem ab aliquo repetere de aliqua re* (Cluent. 37. 104)

## 4. RATE OF INTEREST

- centesimae* (sc. *usurae*) (Att. 5. 21. 11)—interest at 1 per cent per month, 12 per cent per annum.  
*binis centesimis fenerari*—to lend at 24 per cent.  
*ternae centesimae*—36 per cent per annum.  
*quaternas centesimas postulare* (Att. 5. 21. 11)—to demand 48 per cent.  
*semisses*—6 per cent (i.e. if for 100 denarii, asses, one pays half a denarius, half an as per month).  
*semissibus magna copia est*—money is plentiful at 6 per cent.  
*usurae semissium* (Colum.) } 6 per cent.  
*usurae semisses* (Jurists) }
- quadrantes usurae*—3 per cent (a quarter of centesima).

*trientes* or *trientariae usurae* (Att. 4. 15)—4 per cent.

*quincunx* (Pers. 5. 149)  
*quincunces usurae* } 5 per cent.

*fenus ex triente* *Id. Quint. factum erat bessibus* (Att. 4. 15. 7)  
—the rate of interest has gone up from 4 per cent  
to 8 per cent.

*perpetuum fenus* (Att. 5. 21. 13)—simple interest.

*fenus renovatum*  
*anatocismus* (ἀνατοκισμός) } compound interest.  
(Att. 5. 21. 11)

*fenus iniquissimum, grande, grave*—exorbitant rate of  
interest.

*usura menstrua*—monthly interest.

*centesimis cum anatocismo contentum esse* (Att. 5. 21. 12)—to  
be content with 12 per cent at compound interest.

### 5. PROFIT—CREDIT—DEBT

*lucrum facere* (opp. *damnum facere*) *ex aliqua re*—to make  
profit out of a thing.

*in lucro ponere aliquid* (Flacc. 17. 40)—to consider a  
thing as profit.

*debitor*, or *is qui debet*—the debtor.

*creditor*, or *is cui debeo*—the creditor.

*fides et ratio pecuniarum*—credit and financial position.

*fides* (*vid.* p. 158, note) *concidit*—credit is going down.

*fidem derogare alicui*—to rob a person of his credit.

*fides aliquem deficere coepit*—a man's credit begins to go  
down.

*fides (de foro) sublata est* (Leg. Agr. 2. 3. 8)—credit has  
disappeared.

*fides tota Italia est angusta*—credit is low throughout  
Italy.

*fidem moliri* (Liv. 6. 11. 8)—to shake credit.

*laborare de pecunia*—to have pecuniary difficulties.

*in summa difficultate nummaria versari* (Verr. 2. 28. 69)—  
to be in severe pecuniary straits.

*in maximas angustias (pecuniae) adduci*—to be reduced to  
extreme financial embarrassment.

*aes alienum* (always in sing.) *facere, contrahere*—to incur  
debts.

*grande, magnum* (opp. *exiguum*) *aes alienum conflare*—to  
incur debts on a large scale.

*incidere in aes alienum*—to get into debt.

*aes alienum habere*  
*in aere alieno esse* } to be in debt.

*in suis nummis versari* (Verr. 4. 6. 11)—to have no  
debts.

*aere alieno obrutum, demersum esse*—to be deeply in  
debt.

*aere alieno oppressum esse*—to have pressing debts.

*aes alienum dissolvere, exsolvere*  
*nomina* (cf. p. 204), *solvere, dis-*  
*solvere, exsolvere* } to pay one's debts.

*nomina exigere* (Verr. 3. 10. 28)—to demand payment  
of, recover debts.

*ex aere alieno exire*  
*aere alieno liberari* } to get out of debt.

*versurâ solvere, dissolvere* (Att. 5. 15. 2)—to pay one's old  
debts by making new.

## 6. BUILDING

*opus locare*—to contract for the building of something.  
*opus redimere, conducere*—to undertake the contract for a work.

*domum aedificandam locare, conducere*—to give, undertake a contract for building a house.

*aedificatorem esse* (Nep. Att. 13. 1)—to be fond of building.

*exstruere aedificium, monumentum*—to erect a building, a monument.

*fundamenta iacere, agere*—to lay the foundations.

*turrim excitare, erigere, facere*—to build a tower.

*oppidum constituere, condere*—to build, found a city.

*pontem facere in flumine*  
*inicere pontem*  
*flumen ponte iungere* } to build a bridge over a river.

*pons est in flumine*—there is a bridge over the river.

*pontem dissolvere, rescindere, interscindere* (B. G. 2. 9. 4)—to break down a bridge.

*luminibus alicuius obstruere, officere*<sup>1</sup>—to obstruct a person's view, shut out his light by building.

## 7. AGRICULTURE—MANAGEMENT OF STOCK

*agrum colere* (Leg. Agr. 2. 25. 67)—to till the ground.

*agros fertiles deserere*—to leave fertile ground untilled.

*agriculturae studere* (opp. *agriculturam deserere*)—to have a taste for agriculture.

<sup>1</sup> Also used metaphorically to overshadow, eclipse a person, cf. vi. 1.

*opus rusticum*—tillage; cultivation.

*in agris esse, habitare*—to live in the country.

*serere; semen spargere*—to sow.

*sementem facere* (B. G. 1. 3. 1)—to look after the sowing.  
*ut sementem feceris, ita metes* (proverb.) (De Or. 2. 65)—as you sow, so will you reap.

*laetae segetes*—the laughing cornfields.

*laetissimi flores* (Verr. 4. 48. 107)—a glorious expanse of flowers.

*odores, qui efflantur e floribus*—the perfume exhaled by flowers.

*messis in herbis est* (Liv. 25. 15)—the crop is in the blade.

*adhuc tua messis in herba est* (proverb.)—your crop is still green, *i.e.* you are still far from your ambition.

*frumenta in agris matura non sunt* (B. G. 1. 16. 2)—the corn is not yet ripe.

*messem facere*  
*fructus demetere or percipere* } to reap.

*fructus condere* (N. D. 2. 62. 156)—to harvest crops.

*messis opima* (opp. *ingrata*)—a good harvest.

*arbores serere* (De Sen. 7. 24)—to plant trees.

*arbores caedere*—to fell trees.

*inopia* (opp. *copia*) *rei frumentariae*  
*difficultas annonae* (Imp. Pomp. 15. 44) } want of corn; scarcity in the corn-market.

*annona ingravescit, crescit*—the price of corn is going up.

*annona laxatur, levatur, vilior fit*—the price of corn is going down.

*caritas annonae* (opp. *vilitas*), also simply *annona*—dearth of corn; high prices.

*ad denarios*<sup>1</sup> *L in singulos modios annona pervenerat*—corn had gone up to 50 denarii the bushel.

*annona cara est*—corn is dear.

*hac annona* (Plaut. Trin. 2. 4. 83)—when corn is as dear as it is.

*rem pecuariam facere, exercere* (cf. Varro R. R. 2. 1)—to rear stock.

*pastum agere*—to drive to pasture.

*pastum ire*—to go to pasture.

*pascere gregem*—to feed a flock (of goats).

*greges pascuntur*<sup>2</sup> (Verg. G. 3. 162)—the herds are grazing.

*alere equos, canes*—to keep horses, dogs.

*animalia quae nobiscum degunt* (Plin. 8. 40)—domestic animals.

#### XIV. THE STATE

##### I. CONSTITUTION—ADMINISTRATION— GOVERNMENT

*forma rei publicae*  
*discriptio civitatis* } the constitution.  
*instituta et leges* }

*rem publicam constituere*<sup>3</sup>  
*rem publicam legibus et insti-*  
*tutis temperare* (Tusc. I. I. 2) } to give the state a con-  
*civitati leges, iudicia, iura de-*  
*scribere* } situation.

<sup>1</sup> *denarius* = about 9½d., *vid.* Gow, Companion to School Classics, p. 149.

<sup>2</sup> *pascere* and *pasci* are also used metaphorically, *vid.* iii. s. v. *oculi*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *tres viri rei publicae constituendae*.

*suis legibus utitur* (B. G. I. 45. 3)—(a state) has its own laws, is autonomous.

*nullam habere rem publicam*—to have no constitution, be in anarchy.

*rem publicam in pristinum statum restituere*—to restore the ancient constitution.

*optima re publica*—at the time of a most satisfactory government.

*libera res publica, liber populus*—the Republic.

*rem publicam gerere, administrare, regere, tractare, gubernare*  
—to govern, administer the state.

*rei publicae praeesse*—to have the management of the state.

*ad gubernacula* (metaph. only in  
plur.) *rei publicae sedere*  
*clavum rei publicae tenere*  
*gubernacula rei publicae tractare* } to hold the reins of  
government.

*principem civitatis esse*—to be the chief man in the state.

*principem in re publica locum obtinere*—to hold the first position in the state.

*negotia publica* (Off. I. 20. 69)—public affairs.

*vita occupata* (*vid.* p. 94)—the busy life of a statesman.

*accedere, se conferre ad rem publicam* } to devote oneself to  
*rem publicam capessere* (Off. I. 21. } politics, a political  
71) } career.

*in re publica* or *in rebus publicis versari*—to take part in politics.

*rei publicae deesse* (opp. *adesse*)—to take no part in politics.

*a negotiis publicis se remove*  
*a re publica recedere* } to retire from public life.

- in otium se referre* (Fam. 99)—to retire into private life.  
*vita privata* (Senect. 7. 22)—private life.  
*publico carere, forum ac lucem fugere* } to shun publicity.  
*forensi luce carere* }  
*rem publicam tueri, stabilire*—to defend, strengthen the state.  
*res publica stat* (opp. *iacet*)—the state is secure.  
*rem publicam augere, amplificare*—to aggrandise, extend the power of the state.  
*saluti rei publicae non deesse*—to further the common weal.  
*rei publicae*<sup>1</sup> *causa* (Sest. 47. 101)—for political reasons.  
*e re publica* (opp. *contra rem p.*)—for the advantage of the state; in the interests of the state.  
*summa res publica* (or *summa rei publicae*)—the welfare of the state.  
*commoda publica* or *rei publicae rationes*—the interests of the state.  
*rei publicae rationibus* or simply *rei publicae consulere*—to further the public interests.  
*ad rei publicae rationes aliquid referre*—to consider a thing from a political point of view.  
*in rem publicam omni cogitatione curaque incumbere* (Fam. 10. 1. 2)  
*omnes curas et cogitationes in rem publicam conferre* } to devote one's every thought to the state's welfare.  
*omnes curas in rei publicae salute defigere* (Phil. 14. 5. 13) }

<sup>1</sup> There being no adjective in Latin for "political," we have to make use of periphrasis with such words as *res publica*, *civilis*, *popularis*, etc.

- totum et animo et corpore in salutem rei publicae se conferre*  
 —to devote oneself body and soul to the good of the state.  
*bene, optime sentire de re publica*  
*omnia de re publica praeclara* } to have the good of the state at heart.  
*atque egregia sentire* }  
*rector civitatis* (De Or. 1. 48. 211)—the head of the state.  
*viri rerum civilium, rei publicae gerendae periti* or *viri in re publica prudentes* } statesmen.  
*auctores consilii publici* }  
*principes rem publicam administrantes* or simply *principes* }  
*prudentia (civilis)* (De Or. 1. 19. 85)—statesmanship; political wisdom.  
*homo in re publica exercitatus*—an experienced politician.  
*res civiles*—political questions.  
*plus in re publica videre*—to possess great political insight.  
*longe prospicere futuros casus rei publicae* (De Amic. 12. 40)  
 —to foresee political events long before.  
*alicuius in re publica* or *capessendae rei publicae consilia eo spectant, ut . . .*—a man's policy is aiming at, directed towards . . .  
*rei publicae muneribus orbatus*  
*gerendis negotiis orbatus* (Fin. 5. 20. 57) } banished from public life.

## 2. CIVIL RIGHTS—RANK

- civitate donare aliquem* (Balb. 3. 7)—to make a man a citizen.

*in civitatem recipere, ascribere, asciscere aliquem*—to enroll as a citizen, burgess.

*civitatem alicui dare, tribuere, impertire*—to present a person with the freedom of the city.

*civitatem mutare* (Balb. 11. 27)—to naturalise oneself as a citizen of another country.

*generis antiquitate florere*—to be of noble family.

*nobilitati favere* (Sest. 9. 21) } to be a friend of the  
*nobilitatis fautorem, studiosum esse* } aristocracy.

*homo novus*<sup>1</sup>—a parvenu (a man no member of whose family has held curule office).

*ordo senatorius* (*amplissimus*)—the senatorial order.

*ordo equester* (*splendidissimus*)—the equestrian order; the knights.

*summo loco natus*—of high rank.

*nobili, honesto, illustri loco* or *genere natus*—of illustrious family.

*humili, obscuro loco natus*  
*humilibus (obscuris) parentibus* } of humble, obscure origin.  
*natus* }

*infimo loco natus*—from the lowest classes.

*equestri loco natus* or *ortus*—a knight by birth.

*summi (et) infimi* (Rep. 1. 34. 53)—high and low.

*homines omnis generis*—people of every rank.

*homines omnium ordinum et aetatum*—people of every rank and age.

*homo plebeius, de plebe*—one of the people.

*traduci ad plebem* (Att. 1. 18. 4)—to get oneself admitted as a plebeian.

<sup>1</sup> A *novus homo* by taking office becomes for his descendants *princeps nobilitatis* (Cic. Brut. 14) or *auctor generis* (Leg. Agr. 2. 35).

*transitio ad plebem* (Brut. 16. 62) } to transfer oneself from  
*traductio ad plebem* } the patrician to the  
plebeian order.

*unus de* or *e multis*—one of the crowd; a mere individual.

*faex populi, plebis, civitatis*—the dregs of the people.

*infima fortuna* or *condicio servorum*—a degraded, servile condition.

*unus e togatorum numero*—an ordinary, average Roman citizen.

### 3. DIGNITY—POSITION—HONOURS—PRE-EMINENCE—(cf. p. 64)

*dignitatem suam tueri, defendere, retinere, obtinere*—to guard, maintain one's dignity.

*dignitati suae servire, consulere*—to be careful of one's dignity.

*aliquem ad summam dignitatem perducere* (B. G. 7. 39)—to elevate to the highest dignity

*principem (primum), secundum locum dignitatis obtinere*—to occupy the first, second position in the state.

*in altissimo dignitatis gradu collocatum, locatum, positum esse*—to occupy a very high position in the state.

*aliquem ex altissimo dignitatis gradu praecipitare* (Dom. 37. 98)—to depose, bring down a person from his elevated position.

*aliquem de dignitatis gradu de-*  
*movere* } to overthrow a person  
*aliquem gradu movere, depellere* } (cf. p. 152).  
or *de gradu (statu) deicere* }

*dignitatis gradum ascendere*—to attain a position of dignity.

*ad honores ascendere*—to rise, mount to the honours of office.

*amplissimos honorum gradus assequi, adipisci*—to reach the highest grade of office.

*ad summos honores pervenire* (cf. also p. 64)—to attain to the highest offices.

*vir defunctus honoribus*—a man who has held every office (up to the consulship).

*principatum tenere, obtinere*—to occupy the leading position.

*de principatu deiectus* (B. G. 7. 63)—deposed from one's high position.

*principatum alicui* or *ad aliquem deferre*—to assign the first place to some one.

*contendere cum aliquo de principatu* (Nep. Arist. 1)—to contend with some one for the pre-eminence.

*primas* (e.g. *sapientiae*) *alicui deferre, tribuere, concedere*—to give the palm, the first place (for wisdom) to some one.

#### 4. PUBLIC MEETINGS—SUFFRAGE

*convocare populi concilium* and *populum ad concilium contionem advocare* (Sall. Iug. 33. 3) } to summon an assembly of the people.  
*agere cum populo*<sup>1</sup> (Leg. 3. 4. 10)—to submit a formal proposition to the people.

<sup>1</sup> Aulus Gellius (13. 16. 3) explains the difference between *cum populo agere* and *contionem habere*; the former = *rogare quid populum quod suffragiis suis aut iubeat aut velet*. Cf. Liv. 22. 10. 2 *velitis iubeatisne haec sic fieri?* also 21. 17. 4. *habere contionem* (*contio* = *countio* = *contio*) is equivalent to *verba facere ad populum sine ulla rogatione*.

*concilium indicere, habere, dimittere*—to fix the day for, to hold, to dismiss a meeting.

*comitia habere*—to hold a meeting of the people.

*comitia magistratibus creandis*—meetings for the election of officers.

*comitiis* (Abl.) *convenire*—to meet for elections.

*comitiis consulem creari*—to be chosen consul at the elections.

*suffragium ferre* (*vid.* p. 79, note, *sententiam dicere*)—to vote (in the popular assembly).

*multitudinis suffragiis rem permittere*—to leave a matter to be decided by popular vote.

#### 5. LAWS—BILLS

*legem, rogationem*<sup>1</sup> *promulgare* (Liv. 33. 46)—to bring a bill before the notice of the people.

*legem ferre* or simply *ferre ad populum, ut . . .*—to propose a law in the popular assembly.

*legem suadere* (opp. *dissuadere*) } to support a bill (before  
*pro lege dicere* } the people).

*legem rogare* or *rogare populum* (cf. p. 216, note)—to formally propose a law to the people.

*legem perferre* (Liv. 33. 46)—to carry a law (said of the magistrate).

*lex perfertur*—a law is adopted.

*legem antiquare*<sup>2</sup> (opp. *accipere, iubere*)—to reject a bill.

<sup>1</sup> A *rogatio* had to be posted up in some public place for *trinum nundinum* (*tempus*) (Phil. 5. 3. 8), i.e. for seventeen days, *nundinae* (*novem, dies*) being a holiday, fair, held every ninth day.

<sup>2</sup> On the voting-tablets (*tabellae*) used in the *comitia* was written either A (*antiquo*) to reject the bill, V·R (*uti rogas*) to pass it; in judicial questions A (*absolvo*), C (*condemno*), N·L (*non liquet*).



- legem sciscere* (Planc. 14. 35)—to vote for a law.  
*legem iubere*—to ratify a law (used of the people).  
*legem sancire*—to let a bill become law (of people and senate).  
*Solo lege sanxit, ut* or *ne*—Solon ordained by law that . . .  
*Solonis legibus sanctum erat, ut* or *ne*—the laws of Solon ordained that . . .  
*legem abrogare*<sup>1</sup> (Att. 3. 23. 2)—to replace an old law by a new.  
*legem tollere* (Leg. 2. 12. 31)—to abolish a law.  
*legi intercedere*—to protest against a law (used of the veto, *intercessio*, of plebeian tribunes).  
*legem proponere in publicum*—to bring a law before the notice of the people.  
*edictum proponere* (Att. 2. 21. 4)—to publish, post up an edict.  
*legem in aes incidere*—to engrave a law upon a brazen tablet.  
*lex rata est* (opp. *irrita*)—a law is valid.  
*legem ratam esse iubere*—to declare a law valid.  
*a lege discedere*—to transgress a law.  
*salvis legibus* (*vid.* p. 172, note)—without breaking the law.  
*lex*<sup>2</sup> *iubet, vetat* (*dilucide, planissime*)—the law orders, forbids (expressly, distinctly).  
*in lege scriptum est*, or simply *est*—the law says . . .  
*sententia* or *voluntas legis*—the spirit of the law.

<sup>1</sup> *legi* or *de lege derogare* = to reject a clause in it; *legem abrogare*, to nullify a law by passing another which contradicts it; *multam, poenam inrogare alicui*, to inflict a fine on some one with the approval of the people; *pecuniam erogare (ex aerario in classem)*, to draw money from the treasury and distribute it according to the wishes of the people.

<sup>2</sup> *lex* is often personified in this way.

- leges scribere, facere, condere, constituere* (not *dare*)—to make laws (of a legislator).  
*legum scriptor, conditor, inventor* }  
*qui leges scribit* (not *legum* } a legislator.  
*lator*)<sup>1</sup>  
*in legem iurare* (Sest. 16. 37)—to swear obedience to a law.  
*lege teneri*—to be bound by a law.  
*legibus solvere*—to free from legal obligations.  
*ea lege, ut*—on condition of . . .  
*aliquid contra legem est*—a thing is illegal.  
*acta rescindere, dissolvere* (Phil. 13. 3. 5)—to declare a magistrate's decisions null and void.  
*in album referre* (De Or. 2. 12. 52)—to record in the official tablets (*Annales maximi*).

#### 6. POPULAR FAVOUR—INFLUENCE—UNPOPULARITY

- aura favoris popularis* (Liv. 22. 26) }  
*populi favor, gratia popularis* } popular favour; popular-  
*aura popularis* (Harusp. 18. 43) } ity.  
*auram popularem captare* (Liv. 3. 33) }  
*gratiam populi quaerere* } to court popularity.  
*aurae popularis homo* (Liv. 42. 30)—a popular man.  
*ventum popularem quendam (in aliqua re) quaerere*—to strive to gain popular favour by certain means.  
*gratosum esse* (opp. *invisum esse*)—to be popular, influential.

<sup>1</sup> *legis lator* = the man who proposes a law.

*opibus, gratia, auctoritate valere, florere*—to have great influence.

*opes, gratiam, potentiam consequi*—to acquire influence.  
*gratiam inire apud aliquem, ab aliquo* (cf. p. 58)—to gain some one's favour.

*gratiam, opes alicuius imminuere* (opp. *augere*)—to weaken a person's influence.

*crescere ex aliquo*—to raise oneself by another's fall.

*crescere ex invidia senatoria*—to profit by the unpopularity of the senate to gain influence oneself.

*iacere* (vid. p. 92, note)—to be politically annihilated.

*existimatio populi, hominum*—public opinion.

*multum communi hominum opinioni tribuere*—to be always considering what people think.

*invidia*  
*offensio populi, popularis* } unpopularity.  
*offensa populi voluntas* }

*invidia dictatoria* (Liv. 22. 26)—the feeling against the dictator.

*ex invidia alicuius auram popularem petere* (Liv. 22. 26)—to use some one's unpopularity as a means of making oneself popular.

#### 7. PARTY-SPIRIT—NEUTRALITY—POLITICS— ARISTOCRACY—DEMOCRACY

*partes* (usually of plebeians) } a party; faction.  
*factio* (of aristocrats) }

*partium studium*, also simply *studia*—party-spirit.

*partium studiosum esse*—to be a strong partisan.

*certamen partium*  
*contentio partium* (Phil. 5. 12. 32) } party-strife

*partium studiis divisum esse*—to be torn by faction.

*consiliorum in re publica socius*—a political ally.

*alicuius partes (causam) or simply* } to embrace the cause  
*aliquem sequi* } of . . . , be a partisan  
*alicuius partibus studere* } san of . . .

*ab (cum) aliquo stare* (Brut. 79. 273)—to be on a person's side (not *ab alicuius partibus*).

*alicuius studiosum esse*—to be a follower of some one.

*cum aliquo facere* (Sull. 13. 36)—to take some one's side.

*nullius or neutrius* (of two) }  
*partis esse* }  
*in neutris partibus esse* } to be neutral.  
*neutram partem sequi* }  
*medium esse* }

*medium se gerere*  
*a partibus rei publicae animus liber* (Sall. Cat. 4. 2)—an independent spirit.

*idem de re publica sentire*—to have the same political opinions.

*ab aliquo in re publica dissentire*—to hold different views in politics.

*ex rei publicae dissensione*—owing to political dissension.

*in duas partes discedere* (Sall. Iug. 13. 1)—to divide into two factions.

*studio ad rem publicam ferri*—to throw oneself heart and soul into politics.

*se civilibus fluctibus committere*—to enter the whirlpool of political strife.

*imperium singulare, unius dominatus, regium imperium*—monarchy.

- optimatum dominatus*  
*civitas, quae optimatum arbitrio*  
*regitur* } aristocracy (as a form of  
 government).
- boni cives, optimi, optimates*, also simply *boni* (opp. *improbi*);  
*illi, qui optimatum causam agunt*—the aristocracy  
 (as a party in politics).
- principes* or *primores*—the aristocracy (as a leading class  
 in government).
- nobiles*; *nobilitas*; *qui nobilitate generis excellunt*—the  
 aristocracy (as a social class).
- paucorum dominatio* or *potentia*—oligarchy.
- multitudinis dominatus* or *imperium*—government by the  
 mob.
- spiritus patricii* (Liv. 4. 42)—patrician arrogance; pride of  
 caste.
- homines graves* (opp. *leves*)—men of sound opinions.
- homo popularis*—a democrat.
- homo vere popularis* (Catil. 4. 5. 9)—a man who genuinely  
 wishes the people's good.
- homo florens in populari ratione*—a democratic leader.
- imperium populi* or *populare, civitas* or *res publica popularis*  
 —democracy.
- causam popularem suscipere* or *defendere*—to take up the  
 cause of the people, democratic principles.
- populi causam agere*—to be a leading spirit of the popular  
 cause.
- patriae amantem (amantissimum) esse* (Att. 9. 22)—to be  
 (very) patriotic.
- mundanus, mundi civis et incola* (Tusc. 5. 37)—a citizen of  
 the world; cosmopolitan.

## 8. DEMAGOGY—REVOLUTION—REBELLION— ANARCHY

- plebis dux, vulgi turbator, civis turbulentus, civis rerum*  
*novarum cupidus*—a demagogue, agitator.
- iactatio, concitatio popularis*—popular agitation.
- artes populares*—tricks of a demagogue.
- populariter agere*—to play the demagogue.
- conversio rei publicae* (Div. 2. 2. 6)—revolution.
- homines seditiosi, turbulenti* or *novarum rerum cupidi*—re-  
 volutionists.
- novis rebus studere* } to hold revolutionary  
*novarum rerum cupidum esse* } opinions.
- novas res moliri* (Verr. 2. 125)—to plot a revolution.
- contra rem publicam sentire*—to foster revolutionary pro-  
 jects.
- contra rem publicam facere*—to be guilty of high treason.
- a re publica deficere*—to betray the interests of the state.
- plebem concitare, sollicitare*—to stir up the lower classes.
- seditionem facere, concitare*—to cause a rebellion.
- seditio erumpit*<sup>1</sup>—a rebellion breaks out.
- coniurare (inter se) de c. Gerund.*  
 or *ut . . .*  
*coniurationem facere* (Catil. 2. 4. 6) } to form a conspiracy.
- conspirare cum aliquo (contra aliquem)*—to conspire with  
 some one.
- rem publicam labefactare*—to shake the stability of the  
 state.
- rem publicam perturbare*—to throw the state into confusion.

<sup>1</sup> But *bellum exardescit*, war breaks out.

*statum rei publicae convellere*—to endanger the existence of the state.

*rem publicam vexare*—to damage the state.

*rem publicam funditus evertere*—to completely overthrow the government, the state.

*omnes leges confundere*—to upset the whole constitution.

*omnia turbare ac miscere*—to cause universal disorder.

*perturbatio omnium rerum* (Flacc. 37)—general confusion ; anarchy.

*omnia divina humanaque iura permiscetur* (B. C. 1. 6. 8)—anarchy reigns supreme.

*leges nullae*  
*iudicia nulla* } lawlessness ; anarchy.

*res fluit ad interregnum*—things seem tending towards an interregnum.

*non nullus odor est dictaturae* (Att. 4. 18)—there are whispers of the appointment of a dictator.

*tumultum sedare* (B. C. 3. 18. 3)—to quell an outbreak.

*concitatam multitudinem reprimere*—to allay the excitement of the mob.

*plebem continere*—to hold the people in one's power, in check.

#### 9. PROSCRIPTION—CONFISCATION—BANISHMENT—AMNESTY

*proscribere aliquem* or *alicuius*  
*possessiones* } to proscribe a person,  
*aqua et igni interdiceret alicui* } declare him an outlaw.  
*in proscriptorum numerum referre aliquem* (Rosc. Am. 11. 32)—to place a person's name on the list of the proscribed.

#### PROSCRIPTION—CONFISCATION—BANISHMENT 225

*e proscriptorum numero eximere aliquem*—to erase a person's name from the list of the proscribed.

*bona alicuius publicare* (B. G. 5. 54)—to confiscate a person's property.

*bona alicui restituere*—to restore to a person his confiscated property.

*in exsilium eicere* or *expellere*  
*aliquem*  
*ex urbe (civitate) expellere, pel-*  
*lere aliquem*  
*de, e civitate aliquem eicere* } to banish a person, send him into exile.

*exterminare (ex) urbe, de civitate aliquem* (Mil. 37. 101)—to expel a person from the city, country.

*e patria exire iubere aliquem*—to banish a man from his native land.

*patria carere*—to be in exile.

*interdicere alicui Italiã*—to banish a person from Italy.

*aliquem exsilio afficere, multare*—to punish by banishment.

*in exsilium ire, pergere, proficisci*  
*exsulatum ire* or *abire* } to go into exile.

*solum vertere, mutare* (Caecin. 34. 100)—to leave one's country (only used of exiles).

*exsulare* (Div. 2. 24. 52)  
*in exsilio esse, exsulem esse* } to live in exile.

*aliquem (in patriam) restituere*—to recall from exile.

*in patriam redire*—to return from exile.

*ante actarum (praeteritarum) rerum oblivio* or simply *oblivio*  
—amnesty (ἀμνηστία).

*omnem memoriam discordiarum oblivione sempiterna delere* (Phil. 1. 1. 1)—to proclaim a general amnesty.

*postliminium* (De Or. 1. 40. 181)—a returning from exile to one's former privileges.

## 10. POWER—MONARCHY—ROYALTY

*imperium, rerum summam deferre alicui*<sup>1</sup>—to confer supreme power on a person.

*rem publicam alicui permittere*—to give some one unlimited power in state affairs.

*imperium tenere (in aliquem)*—to have power over some one.

*imperium obtinere*—to maintain power, authority.

*principatu deici* (B. G. 7. 63)—to be deposed from one's leading position.

*cum imperio esse* (cf. p. 249)—to have unlimited power ; to be invested with *imperium*.

*in imperio esse*—to hold a high office (such as conferred *imperium*, i.e. *consulatus, dictatura, praetura*).

*imperium in annum prorogare*—to prolong the command for a year.

*imperium deponere* (Rep. 2. 12. 23)—to lay down one's power.

*imperium singulare*<sup>2</sup>—absolute power ; autocracy.

*dominari in aliquem*—to have unlimited power over a person.

*imperium, regnum, tyrannidem*<sup>3</sup> *occupare*—to take upon oneself absolute power.

<sup>1</sup> *deferre* in the sense "confer," "attribute," is also constructed with *ad* ; when it means to bring news, give information, it always takes *ad*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *certamen singulare*, a fight of one individual with another, a duel (cf. xvi. 10a). *singularis* also has the meaning "unique," "pre-eminent," e.g. *singularis virtus*.

<sup>3</sup> *tyrannus, tyrannis, tyrannicus* are rarely used in the Greek sense, irresponsible sovereign, etc., but usually mean despot, despotic, etc. The pure Latin equivalents are *rex, dominus, dominatio, imperium, regius*, or if there is emphasis on the cruelty of despots, *dominus saevus, crudelis et superba dominatio*, etc.

*rerum potiri*—(1) to usurp supreme power, (2) to be in a position of power.

*dominatio impotens*  
*potestas immoderata, infinita* } despotic, tyrannous rule.

*tyrannidem concupiscere*—to aspire to a despotism.

*tyrannidem sibi parere aliqua re*—to establish oneself as despot, tyrant by some means.

*regnum appetere* (B. G. 7. 4)—to aspire to the sovereignty.

*regnum adipisci*—to obtain the sovereignty, kingly office.

*alicui regnum deferre, tradere*—to invest some one with royal power.

*aliquem regem, tyrannum constituere*—to establish some one as king, tyrant.

*regem restituere*  
*aliquem in regnum restituere* } to restore a king to his throne (not *in solium*).

*aliquem regno spoliare* or *expellere* (Div. 1. 22. 74)—to depose a king.

*regios spiritus sibi sumere*—to assume a despotic tone.

## 11. SLAVERY—FREEDOM

*servitute premi* (Phil. 4. 1. 3)—to languish in slavery.

*liberum populum servitute afficere*—to enslave a free people.

*aliquem in servitutum redigere*—to reduce to slavery.

*alicui servitutum iniungere, imponere*—to lay the yoke of slavery on some one.

*civitatem servitute oppressam tenere* (Dom. 51. 131)—to keep the citizens in servile subjection.

*libertatem populo eripere*—to rob a people of its freedom.

*populum liberum esse, libertate uti, sui iuris esse pati*—to grant a people its independence.

*aliquem in servitutem abducere, abstrahere*—to carry off into slavery.

*aliquem sub corona, sub hasta, vendere* (B. G. 3. 16)—to sell a prisoner of war as a slave.

*iugum servitutis accipere*—to submit to the yoke of slavery.

*libertas, libertatis studium*—independent spirit.

*imperium oppugnare, percellere*—to attack, overthrow a tyranny.

*ad libertatem conclamare*—to summon to liberty.

*ad arma conclamare* (Liv. 3. 50)—to call to arms.

*vincula rumpere*—to burst one's chains.

*iugum servitutis excutere*

*iugum servile a cervicibus deicere* (Phil. 1. 2. 6) } to shake off the yoke of slavery.

*servitutem exuere* (Liv. 34. 7)

*iugum servile alicui demere*  
*ab aliquo servitutem* or *servi-*  
*tutis iugum depellere* } to deliver some one from slavery.

*dominationem* or *dominatum*

*refringere*  
*regios spiritus reprimere* (Nep. 5. 5) } to destroy a despotism, tyranny.

*libertatem recuperare*—to recover liberty.

*rem publicam in libertatem vindicare a* or *ex dominatione*—to deliver the state from a tyranny.

## 12. REVENUE—COLONIES—PROVINCES

*vectigalia redimere, conducere*—to farm the revenues.

*vectigalia exercere* (*vid.* p. 51, note)—to collect the taxes.

*vectigalia exigere (acerbe)*—to exact the taxes (with severity).

*pecuniam cogere a civitatibus*—to extort money from the communities.

*vectigalia, tributa*<sup>1</sup> *pendere*—to pay taxes.

*immunis (tributorum)* (Verr. 5. 21. 51)—exempt from taxation.

*immunitatem omnium rerum habere*—to enjoy absolute immunity.

*vectigalia, tributa alicui imponere*—to impose tribute on some one.

*tributorum multitudine premi*—to be crushed by numerous imposts.

*ager publicus*—public land; state domain.

*agros assignare* (Leg. Agr. 1. 6. 17)—to allot land.

*pecunia publica, quae ex metallis redit*—the public income from the mines.

*avertere pecuniam* (Verr. 2. 1. 4)

*peculatum facere* (Rab. Perd. 3. 8) } to embezzle money.

*rem publicam quaestui habere*—to enrich oneself at the expense of the state.

*coloniam deducere in aliquem locum* (*vid.* p. 186, note)—to found a colony somewhere.

*colonos mittere* (Div. 1. 1. 3)—to send out colonists.

*coloniam constituere* (Leg. Agr. 1. 5. 16)—to found a colony.

*provinciam*<sup>2</sup> *alicui decernere, mandare*—to entrust some one with an official duty, a province.

<sup>1</sup> *vectigalia*=indirect taxes, including, for example, *decumae*, the tenth, tithe of corn; *scriptura*, the duty on pasturage; *portorium*, harbour-toll. *tributum*=direct tax on incomes.

<sup>2</sup> *provincia* originally means a sphere of activity, an employ, especially of magistrates; it then means the administration of a country outside Italy conquered in war, and lastly the country itself, a province. The senate each year determined on the countries to which magistrates were to be sent (*provincias nominare, decernere*).

*provincias sortiri* (Liv. 38. 35)—to draw lots for the provinces.

*alicui Syria (sorte) obvénit, obtigit*—the province of Syria has fallen to some one's lot.

*provincias inter se comparant*—(the magistrates) arrange among themselves the administration of the provinces, the official spheres of duty.

*in provinciam proficisci* (Liv. 38. 35)—to set out for one's province.

*provincias permutare*—to exchange provinces.

*provinciam administrare, obtinere*—to manage, govern a province.

*provinciam obire*—to visit, traverse a province.

(*de* or *ex*) *provincia decedere* or simply *decedere* (*vid.* p. 14, note)—to leave a province (at the termination of one's term of office).

### 13. MAGISTRACIES

#### (a) CANDIDATURE—ELECTION

*petere magistratum, honores*—to seek office.

*ambire*<sup>1</sup> *aliquem* (always with Acc. of person)—to solicit the vote or favour of some one.

*nomen profiteri* or simply *profiteri*—to become a candidate.

*manus prensare*<sup>2</sup> (De Or. 1. 24. 112)—to shake hands with voters in canvassing.

<sup>1</sup> Hence *ambitio*, legitimate canvassing; *ambitus*, illegal canvassing.

<sup>2</sup> Under the head of *ambitionis occupatio* (De Or. 1. 1. 1) are enumerated *salutare, rogare, supplicare, manus prensare, invitare ad prandium*, and sometimes *convivia tributim data*. For the whole subject *vid.* Q. Cicero's book *de petitione consulatus ad M. fratrem*.

*nomina appellat (nomenclator)*—the agent (*nomenclator*) mentions the names of constituents to the canvasser.

*competitor* (Brut. 30. 113)—a rival candidate.

*multa (pauca) puncta in centuria (tribu) aliqua ferre*<sup>1</sup>—to obtain many (few) votes in a century or tribe.

*centuriam, tribum ferre* (Planc. 49)—to gain the vote of a century or tribe.

*omnes centurias ferre* or *omnium suffragiis, cunctis centuriis creari*—to be elected unanimously.

*repulsam ferre consulatus (a populo)* (Tusc. 5. 19. 54)—to fail in one's candidature for the consulship.

*magistratus vitio creati*—magistrates elected irregularly (*i.e.* either when the auspices have been unfavourable or when some formality has been neglected).

*sufficere aliquem in alicuius locum* or *alicui*—to elect a man to fill the place of another who has died whilst in office.

*alicui* or *in alicuius locum succedere*—to succeed a person in an office.

*alicui imperatori succedere*—to succeed some one as general.

*suo (legitimo) anno creari* (opp. *ante annum*)—to be elected at the age required by law (*lex Villia annalis*).

*continuaré magistratum* (Sall. Jug. 37. 2)—to continue one's office for another year.

*continuaré alicui magistratum*—to prolong some one's office for another year.

<sup>1</sup> In counting the votes polled, a dot or mark was put opposite a candidate's name as often as a tablet (*tabella*) with his name on it came up. Hence *punctum ferre*, to be successful, e.g. Hor. A. P. 343 *omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci*.

*prorogare alicui imperium (in annum)*—to prolong a person's command.

*magistratus et imperia* (Sall. Iug. 3. 1)—civil and military offices.

*inire magistratum*—to enter into office.

*munus administrare, gerere*  
*munere fungi, muneri praeesse* } to perform official duties.

*honores alicui mandare, deferre*—to invest a person with a position of dignity.

*muneri aliquem praeficere, praepone*—to appoint some one to an office.

*munus explere, sustinere*—to fulfil the duties of one's position.

*abdicare se magistratu* (Div. 2. 35)—to resign one's post (before the expiry of the term of office).

*deponere*<sup>1</sup> *magistratum* } to give up, lay down office (usually at the end of one's term of office).  
*abire magistratu* }  
*de potestate decedere* }

*res ad interregnum venit* or *adducitur*—an interregnum ensues.

*abrogare alicui munus* (Verr. 2. 57)—to remove a person from his office.

*abrogare alicui imperium*—to deprive a person of his position as commandant.

*viri clari et honorati* (De Sen. 7. 22)—men of rank and dignity.

*honoribus ac reipublicae muneribus*  
*perfunctus* (De Or. 1. 45)  
*amplis honoribus usus* (Sall. Iug. 25. 4) } a man who has held many offices.

<sup>1</sup> But *deponere* is also found in the sense of *abdicare*, e.g. B. G. 7. 33. 4; N. D. 2. 11; Liv. 2. 28. 9.

## (b) PARTICULAR MAGISTRACIES

*consulem creare*<sup>1</sup>—to elect a consul.

*aliquem consulem declarare* (Leg. Agr. 2. 2. 4)—to declare a person consul-elect.

*aliquem consulem renuntiare* (De Or. 2. 64. 260)—to officially proclaim (by the *praeco*, herald) a man elected consul; to return a man consul.

*bis consul*—twice consul.

*iterum, tertium consul*—consul for the second, third time.

*sextum* (Pis. 9. 20), *septimum consul*—consul for the sixth, seventh time.

*videant* or *dent operam consules, ne quid res publica detrimenti capiat*<sup>2</sup> (Catil. 1. 2. 4)—let the consuls take measures for the protection of the state.

*in hoc praeclaro consulatu*—during this brilliant consulship.

*aetas consularis*—the consular age (43 years).

*pro consule in Ciliciam proficisci*—to go to Cilicia as pro-consul.

*superiore consulatu*—in his former consulship.

*dictatorem dicere (creare)*—to name a person dictator.

*dictaturam gerere*—to be dictator.

*dictator dicit (legit) magistrum equitum*—a dictator appoints a *magister equitum*.

*potestatem habet in aliquem vitae necisque* (B. G. 1. 16. 5)—he has power over life and death.

*lictores summovent turbam* (Liv. 4. 50)—the lictors clear the way.

<sup>1</sup> *creare* is used of any magistrate regularly elected. The *locus classicus* on this subject is Cic. De Leg. 3. 3. 6-12.

<sup>2</sup> This formula conferred absolute power on the consuls. This was done only in cases of great emergency, and was somewhat similar to our "declaration of martial law."



*fasces praeferre, summittere*—to walk before with the fasces; to lower the fasces.

*censores censent populum*—the censors hold a census of the people.

*censum habere, agere* (Liv. 3. 22)—to hold the census.

*censuram agere, gerere*—to perform censors' duties.

*locare aedes, vias faciendas* (Phil. 9. 7. 16)—to receive tenders for the construction of temples, highroads.

*locare opera publica*—to let out public works to contract.

*redimere, conducere porticum aedificandam* (Div. 2. 21. 47)  
—to undertake a contract for building a portico.

*nota, animadversio censoria*—the reprimand of a censor.

*notare aliquem ignominia* (Cluent. 43. 119)—to brand a person with infamy.

*censu prohibere, excludere*—to strike off the burgess-roll.

*tribu movere aliquem*—to expel some one from his tribe.

*e senatu eicere*  
*senatu movere* } to expel from the senate.

*lustrum condere* (Liv. 1. 44. 2)—to complete the censorship (by certain formal purificatory ceremonies = *lustrum faciendum*).

*tribuni plebis sacrosancti* (Liv. 3. 19. 10)—the plebeian tribunes, whose persons are inviolable.

*appellare*<sup>1</sup> *tribunos plebis (in aliqua re a praetore)* (Liv. 2. 55)  
—to appeal to the plebeian tribunes against a praetor's decision.

*provocare*<sup>2</sup> *ad populum* (Liv. 2. 55)—to appeal to the people.

*intercessio tribunicia* (cf. p. 218)—the tribunicial veto.

<sup>1</sup> *appellare* as a legal technical term only occurs in classical Latin in the formula *te, vos appello*.

<sup>2</sup> *provocare* only with proper names, e.g. *ad Catonem provocare*. To appeal to some one's pity, etc. = *implorare alicuius misericordiam, fidem*, etc.

## 14. THE SENATE

*publicum consilium* (Phil. 7. 7. 19)—the council of the nation; the senate.

*in senatum legere*,<sup>1</sup> *eligere*—to elect to the senate.

*senatum vocare, convocare*—to call a meeting of the senate.

*senatum cogere* (Liv. 3. 39)—to assemble the senate.

*edicere*,<sup>2</sup> *ut senatus frequens adsit* (Fam. 11. 6. 2)—to issue a proclamation calling on the senators to assemble in full force.

*senatum habere*—to hold a sitting of the senate.

*ad senatum referre*<sup>3</sup> (Cic. dom. 53. 136)—to bring a question before the senate (of the presiding magistrate).

*patres (senatum) consulere de aliqua re* (Sall. Iug. 28)—to consult the senators on a matter.

*sententiam rogare, interrogare*—to ask the opinion of . . .  
*sententiam dicere*—to give an opinion (also used of a judge, cf. p. 79).

*senatus sententia inclinatur ad . . .* (De Sen. 6. 16)—the senate inclines to the opinion, decides for . . .

*sententia vincit* (Liv. 2. 4. 3)—the majority were of the opinion . . .

*maior pars*—the majority.

<sup>1</sup> Distinct from *senatum legere* = to read over and revise the list of senators (used of the censor). The head of the list was called *princeps senatus*.

<sup>2</sup> *edicere, edictum*, technical terms; *edicere* is used of the praetor deciding how a case is to be tried, cf. Verr. 2. 1. 41; Flacc. 28. 67. Then more generally of an order, declaration, proclamation. The senate was convened by the *praeco* or by means of a notice posted in some public place (*edictum*).

<sup>3</sup> A meeting of the senate opened by a declaration of the agenda by the presiding magistrate, a consul, praetor, or tribune. This was called *referre ad senatum*.

- quid censes? quid tibi videtur?* } what is your opinion?  
*quid de ea re fieri placet?* }
- discessionem facere* (Sest. 34. 74)—to take the vote (by division).
- discedere (pedibus), ire in alicuius sententiam*<sup>1</sup> (Liv. 23. 10)—to vote for some one's motion.
- senatus decrevit (populusque iussit) ut*—the senate decreed (and the people ratified the decree) that . . .
- senatus consultum fit* (Att. 2. 24. 3)—a resolution of the senate (not opposed by a tribunicial veto) was made.
- senatus auctoritas*—the opinion of the senate in general.
- senatum alicui dare* (Q. Fr. 2. 11. 2)—to give a man audience before the senate.
- a senatu res ad populum reicitur*—a matter is referred (for decision) from the senate to the people.
- dicendi mora diem extrahere, eximere, tollere*—to pass the whole day in discussion.
- dimittere senatum*<sup>1</sup>—to dismiss the senate.
- nox senatum dirimit*—night breaks up the sitting.

<sup>1</sup> After the *rogatio sententiarum* came the voting, usually by division (*per discessionem, pedibus ire in sententiam*), but in cases of doubt each member was asked his opinion (*per singulorum sententias exquisitas*). The presiding officer then dismissed the meeting with the words *nihil vos moramur, patres conscripti*, "I need not detain you any longer." From this formula probably came the colloquial uses—(1) "I do not care for . . .," "I have no interest in . . ." (with the Acc.); (2) "I have nothing against . . .," "you have my consent to . . ." (with the Acc. and Inf. or *quominus*).

## XV. LAW AND JUSTICE

## I. LAW IN GENERAL

- ius dicere* } to administer justice (said of the  
*ius reddere* (Liv. 3. 33) } praetor).
- ius suum persequi*—to assert one's right.
- ius suum adipisci* (Liv. 1. 32. 10)—to obtain justice.
- ius suum tenere, obtinere*—to maintain one's right.
- de iure suo decedere* or *cedere*—to waive one's right.
- (ex) iure, lege agere cum aliquo*—to go to law with a person.
- summo iure agere cum aliquo* (cf. *summum ius, summa iniuria*)—to proceed against some one with the utmost rigour of the law; to strain the law in one's favour.
- in ius, in iudicium vocare aliquem*—to summon some one before the court.
- diem dicere alicui*—to summon some one to appear on a given day; to accuse a person.
- in iudicium venire, in iudicio adesse*—to appear in court.
- iudicia administrare*—to have charge of the administration of justice.
- iudicium exercere* (*vid.* p. 51, note)—to administer justice; to judge (used of criminal cases before the praetor).
- iudicio praeesse*—to be president of a court.
- conventus agere* (B. G. 1. 54)—to convene the assizes (used of a provincial governor).
- quaestiones perpetuae* (Brut. 27. 106)—the standing commissions of inquiry.
- aliquem in integrum* (*vid.* p. 47, note) *restituere*—to reinstate a person in his right.

- (1) *respondere*<sup>1</sup> (*de iure* or *ius*)—to give a legal opinion, decision on points of law.
- (2) *cavere* (*in iure*) (Off. 2. 65)—to point out what precautions, what formal steps must be taken to insure immunity.
- (3) *agere*—to be energetic in the conduct of the case; to plead before the judge.
- aequum iudicem se alicui praebere*—to judge some one equitably.
- ex aequo et bono* (Caecin. 23. 65)—justly and equitably.
- iudex incorruptus*—an impartial judge.
- ratio iudiciorum*—judicial organisation.
- aequa iuris descriptio* (Off. 2. 4. 15)—a sound judicial system.
- aequo iure vivere cum aliquo*—to live with some one on an equal footing.
- iustitium indicere, edicere* (Phil. 5. 12)—to proclaim that the courts are closed, a cessation of legal business.
- iustitium remittere*—to re-open the courts.
- ius ad artem redigere*—to reduce law to a system.
- ius nullum*—absence of justice.
- ius ac fas omne delere*  
*omnia iura pervertere* } to trample all law under foot.
- contra ius fasque*—against all law, human and divine.
- optimo iure*—with full right.

<sup>1</sup> In full *consulenti respondere*. From this consultation lawyers got the title *iuris* or *iure consulti*. In these three points, *respondere*, *cavere*, *agere*, consisted the practical duty of a jurist. Cicero, however (De Or. 1. 48), adds *scribere*=to draw up legal instruments such as wills, contracts, etc.

*ius praecipuum, beneficium, donum*, also *immunitas*<sup>1</sup> c. Gen.  
—prerogative, privilege.

## 2. INQUIRY—TESTIMONY—TORTURE

- aliquid, causam cognoscere* } to hold an inquiry into a  
*quaerere aliquid* or *de aliqua re* } matter.
- quaestionem habere de aliquo, de aliqua re* or *in aliquem*—  
to examine a person, a matter.
- quaestioni praeesse*—to preside over an inquiry.
- quaesitor*—the examining judge.
- incognita causa* (cf. p. 241, *indicta causa*)—without any examination.
- in tabulas publicas referre aliquid*—to enter a thing in the public records.
- deprehendere aliquem* (*in aliqua re*)—to catch a person, find him out.
- deprehendere aliquem in manifesto scelere*—to take a person in the act.
- testis gravis*—an important witness.
- testis locuples*—a witness worthy of all credit.
- testis incorruptus atque integer*—an impartial witness.
- aliquem testem alicuius rei* (*in aliquid*) *citare*—to cite a person to give evidence on a matter.
- aliquem testem adhibere* } to use some one's evidence.  
*aliquo teste uti* }
- aliquem testem dare, edere, pro-*  
*ferre* } to produce as a witness.  
*aliquem testem producere* }

<sup>1</sup> *privilegium* in this sense is post-classical. In classical prose it denotes a law passed for or against an individual (*privus*), e.g. *privilegium ferre, irrogare de aliquo* (Cic.)

*testem prodire (in aliquem)*—to appear as witness against a person.

*testimonium dicere pro aliquo*—to give evidence on some one's behalf.

*pro testimonio dicere*—to state as evidence.

*testibus teneri, convictum esse*—to be convicted by some one's evidence.

*alicui admovere tormenta*  
*quaerere tormentis de aliquo* } to have a person tortured.

*de servis quaerere (in dominum)*—to examine slaves by torture.

*cruciatūs tormentorum*—the pains of torture.

*aliquem a ceteris separare et in arcam conicere ne quis cum eo colloqui possit* (Mil. 22. 60)—to isolate a witness.

### 3. PROCESS—DEFENCE

*causa privata*—a civil case.

*causa publica* (Brut. 48. 178)—a criminal case.

*causam alicuius agere (apud iudicem)*—to conduct a person's case (said of an agent, solicitor).

*causam dicere, orare* (Brut. 12. 47)—to address the court (of the advocate).

*causam dicere*—to defend oneself before the judge (of the accused).

*causam dicere pro aliquo*—to defend a person.

*causam alicuius defendere*—to conduct some one's defence in a case.

*causam optimam habere* (Lig. 4. 10)—to have a good case.

*causam inferiorem dicendo reddere superiorem* (τὸν ἥττω λόγον κρείττω ποιεῖν) (Brut. 8. 30)—to gain a weak case by clever pleading.

*patronus*<sup>1</sup> (*causae*) (De Or. 2. 69)—counsel; advocate.

*causam suscipere*  
*ad causam aggredi or accedere* } to undertake a case.

*indicta causa* (opp. *cognita causa*)—without going to law.

*litem alicui intendere*—to go to law with, sue a person.

*adhuc sub iudice lis est* (Hor. A. P. 77)—the case is still undecided.

*lites componere* (Verg. Ecl. 3. 108)—to arrange a dispute (by arbitration).

*causam or litem obtinere*  
*causā or iudicio vincere* } to win a case.

*causam or litem amittere, per-*  
*dere*  
*causā or lite cadere* (owing to some informality) } to lose one's case.

*calumniæ litium* (Mil. 27. 74)—chicanery (specially of wrongfully accusing an innocent man).

### 4. ACCUSATION—VERDICT—DECISION

*accusatio* (Cael. 3. 6)—a criminal accusation.

*actio, petitio*—a private, civil prosecution.

*nomen alicuius deferre (apud praetorem)* (Verr. 2. 38. 94)—to accuse, denounce a person.

*referre in reos aliquem*—to put some one on the list of the accused.

*eximere de reis aliquem*—to strike a person's name off the list of the accused.

*aliquis reus fit* (Fam. 13. 54)—some one is accused.

<sup>1</sup> They were not called *advocati* till under the Empire. In Augustan Latin *advocatus* = *amicus qui adest alicui (in iudicio)*, i.e. a man who supported his friend by his presence and influence.

*iudices reicere* (Verr. 3. 11. 28)—to challenge, reject jury-men.

*crimina diluere, dissolvere*—to refute charges.

*accusare aliquem rei capitalis (rerum capitalium)*—to charge some one with a capital offence.

*caput alicuius agitur* (*vid.* p. 53)—a person's life is in jeopardy.

*accusare aliquem peculatus, pecuniae publicae*—to accuse some one of malversation, embezzlement of public money.

*accusare aliquem falsarum tabularum*<sup>1</sup>—to accuse a person of forging the archives.

*postulare aliquem repetundarum*<sup>2</sup> or *de repetundis*—to accuse a person of extortion (to recover the sums extorted).

*accusare aliquem perduellionis*—to charge a person with treason (hostile conduct against the state generally).

*accusare aliquem maiestatis*—to accuse a person of high treason (more specific than the preceding).

*accusare aliquem ambitus, de ambitu*—to accuse some one of illegal canvassing.

*accusare aliquem de vi, de veneficiis*—to accuse a person of violence, poisoning.

*accusare aliquem inter sicarios* (Rosc. Am. 32. 90)—to accuse a person of assassination.

*sententiae iudicium*—the finding of the jury.

*sententiam ferre, dicere* (Off. 3. 16. 66)—to give sentence (of the judge, cf. p. 79, note).

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *tabulas publicas corrumpere* (Rosc. Am. 128); *commutare*, to falsify public records.

<sup>2</sup> Extortion generally can be rendered by *violenta exactio pecuniarum*, or some verbal periphrasis (e.g. *per vim capere pecunias*, etc.)

*iudicare causam (de aliqua re)*—to decide on the conduct of the case.

*iudicium rescindere* } to rescind a decision.

*res iudicatas rescindere* (Cic. Sull. 22. 63) }  
*lege Plautia damnari* (Sall. Cat. 31. 4)—to be condemned under the Lex Plautia.

## 5. GUILT

*in culpa esse*—to be at fault; to blame; culpable.

*culpa alicuius rei est in aliquo*—some one is to blame in a matter; it is some one's fault.

*mea culpa est*—it is my fault.

*culpa carere, vacare* }  
*extra culpam esse* } to be free from blame.

*abesse a culpa* }  
*prope abesse a culpa* } to be almost culpable.  
*affinem esse culpae* }

*culpam in aliquem conferre, transferre, conicere*—to put the blame on another.

*culpam alicui attribuere, assignare*—to attribute the fault to some one.

*aliquid alicui crimini dare, vitio vertere* (Verr. 5. 50)—to reproach, blame a person for . . .

*culpam committere, contrahere* } to commit some blame-  
*facinus, culpam in se admittere* } worthy action.

*non committere, ut . . .*—to take care not to . . .

*culpam alicuius rei sustinere*—to bear the blame of a thing.

*culpam a se amovere*<sup>1</sup>—to exonerate oneself from blame.

*veniam dare alicui*—to pardon a person.

<sup>1</sup> Note *purgare aliquid*, to justify oneself in a matter; *se alicui purgare de aliqua re* (Fam. 12. 25); *alicui purgatum esse* (B. G. 1. 28).

## 6. PUNISHMENT—ACQUITTAL

- poena afficere aliquem* (Off. 2. 5. 18)  
*animadvertere in aliquem*  
*punire aliquem*  
*ulcisci aliquem (pro aliqua re)* } to punish some one.
- poenas alicuius persequi*  
*poenam petere, repetere ab aliquo*  
*poenas expetere ab aliquo*  
*supplicium sumere de aliquo* } to exact a penalty from  
 some one.
- hanc poenam constituere in aliquem, ut . . .*—to ordain as  
 punishment that . . .
- graviter consulere in aliquem* (Liv. 8. 13)—to deal severely  
 with a person.
- poenas (graves) dare alicui*—to be (heavily) punished by  
 some one.
- poenas alicui pendere (alicuius rei)*—to be punished by some  
 one (on account of a thing).
- poenas dependere, expendere, sol-  
 vere, persolvere*  
*poenam (alicuius rei) ferre, per-  
 ferre* } to suffer punishment.
- poenam luere (alicuius rei)* (Sull. 27. 76)—to be punished  
 for a thing, expiate it.
- luere<sup>1</sup> aliquid aliqua re* (De Sen. 20)—to atone for some-  
 thing by . . .
- poenam subire*—to submit to a punishment.
- pecunia multare aliquem*—to condemn some one to a  
 fine.

<sup>1</sup> To express the passive use *expiari*, e.g. *scelus supplicio expiatum est*.

- multam irrogare alicui* (Cic. dom. 17. 45)—to impose a  
 fine (used of the prosecutor or the *tribunus plebis*  
 proposing a fine to be ratified by the people).
- decem milibus aeris damnari*—to be fined 10,000 asses.
- in vincula (custodiam) dare aliquem*  
*in vincula, in catenas conicere ali-  
 quem* } to put some one in  
 irons, chains.
- in carcerem conicere aliquem*—to throw some one into prison.
- capitis or capite damnare aliquem*—to condemn some one  
 to death.
- capitis absolvere aliquem*—to repeal a death-sentence  
 passed on a person.
- supplicium alicui decernere, in aliquem constituere*—to decree  
 the penalty of death.
- Solo capite sanxit, si quis . . .* (Att. 10. 1)—Solon made  
 it a capital offence to . . .
- morte multare aliquem* (Catil. 1. 11. 28)—to punish any  
 one with death.
- supplicium sumere de aliquo*—to execute the death-  
 sentence on a person.
- supplicio (capitis) affici*—to suffer capital punishment.
- ad palum deligare* (Liv. 2. 5)—to bind to the stake.
- virgis caedere*—to beat with rods.
- securi percutere, ferire aliquem*—to execute a person, cut  
 off his head.
- in crucem agere, tollere aliquem*  
*cruci suffigere aliquem* } to crucify.
- impune fecisse, tulisse aliquid*—to go unpunished.
- impunitum aliquem dimittere*—to let a person go scot-free.
- mortem<sup>1</sup> deprecari* (B. G. 7. 40. 6)—to beg for life.

<sup>1</sup> One can also say *vitam, salutem deprecari*, as *deprecari* means  
 (1) to obtain by supplication, (2) to avert by supplication.

## XVI. WAR

## I. LEVIES—MILITARY OATH—ARMIES IN GENERAL

*aetas militaris*—military age.

*qui arma ferre possunt* or *iuventus*—men of military age.

*qui per aetatem arma ferre non possunt* or *aetate ad bellum*

*inutiles*—men exempt from service owing to age.

*exercitum conficere* (Imp. Pomp. 21. 61)—to raise an army.

*militēs (exercitum) scribere, conscribere*—to levy troops.

*dilectum habere*—to hold a levy.

*imperare milites civitatibus*—to compel communities to provide troops.

*nomen (nomina) dare, profiteri*—to enlist oneself.

*ad nomen non respondere* (Liv. 7. 4)—to fail to answer one's name.

*militiam* (only in the sing.) *capessere*—to take service in the army.

*militiam detrectare, subterfugere*—to try to avoid military service.

*excusare morbum, valetudinem*—to plead ill-health as an excuse for absence.

*militiae vacationem habere*—to be excused military duty.

*equo, pedibus merere* (Liv. 27. 11)—to serve in the cavalry, infantry.

*sacramentum (o) dicere* (*vid. p. 179, note*)—to take the military oath.

*militēs sacramento rogare, adigere*—to make soldiers take the military oath.

*evocare undique copias*—to call up troops from all sides.

*evocati, voluntarii* (B. G. 5. 56)—the volunteers.

*omnes ad arma convocare*—to issue a general call to arms.

*efficere duas legiones*—to form two legions.

*complere legiones* (B. C. 1. 25)—to fill up the numbers of the legions.

*supplementum cogere, scribere, legere*—to levy recruits to fill up the strength.

*auxilia*<sup>1</sup> *arcessere*—to summon auxiliary troops.

*copias (arma) cum aliquo iungere* or *se cum aliquo iungere*—to join forces with some one.

*conducere, contrahere copias*—to concentrate troops.

*cogere omnes copias in unum locum*—to concentrate all the troops at one point.

*parare exercitum, copias*—to equip an army, troops.

*alere exercitum* (Off. 1. 8. 25)—to support an army.

*recensere, lustrare, recognoscere exercitum* (Liv. 42. 31)—to review an army.

*dimittere exercitum*—to disband an army.

*commeatum militibus dare* (opp. *petere*)—to give furlough, leave of absence to soldiers.

*magnae copiae* (not *multae*)—a large force, many troops.

*exiguae copiae* (Fam. 3. 3. 2)—a small force.

*ingens, maximus exercitus* (not *numerosus*)—a numerous army.

*robora peditum*—the flower of the infantry.

*militēs levis armaturae*—light infantry.

<sup>1</sup> *auxilia* = auxiliary troops raised in the provinces, usually light cavalry. In Caesar's army the cavalry consisted of Gaulish, Spanish, and German auxiliaries. A thousand of these were attached to each legion and were usually commanded by a Roman officer.

*vetus miles, veteranus miles* } veterans; experienced  
*qui magnum in castris usum habent* } troops.  
*expeditus* (opp. *impeditus*) *miles*—a soldier lightly armed,  
 ready for battle.  
*exercitatus in armis*—practised in arms.  
*milites tumultuarii*<sup>1</sup> (opp. *exercitus iustus*) (Liv. 35. 2)—  
 soldiers collected in haste; irregulars.  
*tirones*—recruits.

## 2. PAY—SERVICE—COMMISSARIAT

*stipendium*<sup>2</sup> *dare, numerare, persolvere militibus*—to pay  
 the troops.  
*stipendia facere, merere*—to serve.  
*emeritis stipendiis* (Sall. Jug. 84. 2)—after having completed  
 one's service.  
*militia functum, perfunctum esse* } to retire from service.  
*rude donatum esse*<sup>3</sup> (Phil. 2. 29) }  
*milites mercennarii* or *exercitus conducticius*—mercenary  
 troops.  
*rem frumentariam comparare,*  
*providere* } to look after the com-  
*rei frumentariae prospicere* (B. } missariat.  
 G. 1. 23)

<sup>1</sup> *tumultus* is used of a sudden rising, rebellion, to repress which all able-bodied men were called to arms. Such risings were particularly common in Gaul, but cf. *tumultus servilis* (B. G. 1. 10); *tumultus Istricus* (Liv. 41. 6. 1).

<sup>2</sup> *stipendium* first established in 406 B.C.; it was paid at the end of the campaign, hence *stipendia* often = campaigns, years of service.

<sup>3</sup> Used originally of gladiators, who on their retirement received a staff or wooden sword (*rudis*), hence they were called *rudiarum*. Cf. Ov. Tr. 4. 8. 24 *me quoque donari iam rude tempus erat*.

*frumentum providere exercitui*—to provide corn-supplies  
 for the troops.  
*frumenti vim maximam comparare*—to procure a very  
 large supply of corn.  
*intercludere commeatum*—to cut off the supplies, intercept  
 them.  
*intercludere, prohibere hostes commeatu*—to cut off all  
 supplies of the enemy.

## 3. COMMAND—DISCIPLINE

*praeficere aliquem exercitui*—to place some one at the  
 head of an army, give him the command.  
*praeficere aliquem bello gerendo*—to charge some one with  
 the conduct of a war.  
*praeesse exercitui*—to be at the head of an army.  
*magnum usum in re militari habere* (Sest. 5. 12)—to pos-  
 sess great experience in military matters.  
*rei militaris rudem esse*—to have had no experience in  
 war.  
*vir fortissimus*—a hero.  
*magnas res gerere*—to perform heroic exploits.  
*res fortiter feliciterque gesta* } a success; a glorious feat of  
*res bene gesta* } arms.  
*res gestae*<sup>1</sup>—exploits in war; brilliant actions.  
*summa belli, imperii* (B. G. 2. 4. 7)—the command-in-  
 chief.  
*cum imperio esse*—to hold a high command.

<sup>1</sup> Thus *magnae, memorabiles, praestantissimae res gestae*, and also *meae, tuae, suae*, etc. The phrase *rem gerere* can be used either of the combat (*proelium*) or the whole war (*bellum*), cf. B. G. 5. 44. 11; Off. 3. 108.



- imperii summam tenere* (Rep. 2. 28) } to be commander-  
*imperii summae praeesse* } in-chief.  
*imperii summam deferre alicui* or *ad aliquem, tradere alicui*  
 —to appoint some one commander-in-chief.  
*imperium transfertur ad aliquem* (not *transit*)—the com-  
 mand is transferred, passes to some one.  
*imperium alicui abrogare* (Off. 3. 10)—to depose a person  
 from his command.  
*modestia*<sup>1</sup> (opp. *immodestia*)—discipline (insubordina-  
 tion).  
*dicto audientem esse alicui*—to obey a person's orders.  
*militis disciplina coërcere* }  
*militis coërcere et in officio* } to keep good discipline  
*continere* (B. C. I. 67. 4) } amongst one's men.

## 4. WEAPONS

- arma capere, sumere*—to take up one's arms.  
*arma expedire* (Tusc. 2. 16. 37)—to make ready for  
 battle.  
*galeam induere*—to put on one's helmet.  
*armis (castris) exuere aliquem*—to disarm a person.  
*arma ponere* (not *deponere*)—to pile arms (cf. p. 189,  
 note).  
*ab armis discedere* (Phil. 11. 33)—to lay down arms.  
*in armis esse*—to be under arms.  
*cum telo esse*—to be armed.  
*extorquere arma e manibus*—to wrest weapons from some  
 one's hands.

<sup>1</sup> *modestia*, the character of the man who observes a mean (*qui servat modum*), is used morally of self-restraint, moderation (*σωφροσύνη*). In politics it means loyalty; in the army, discipline.

- res ad arma venit*—matters have reached the fighting-  
 stage.  
*tela iacere, conicere, mittere*—to discharge missiles.  
*extra teli iactum, coniectum esse*—to be out of range.  
*ad teli coniectum venire* (Liv. 2. 31)—to come within  
 javelin-range.  
*se obicere telis*—to expose oneself to missiles.  
*eminus hastis, comminus gladiis uti*—to use javelins at a  
 distance, swords at close quarters.  
*gladium educere (e vagina)*—to draw one's sword (from  
 the scabbard).  
*gladium in vaginam recondere*—to sheath one's sword.  
*gladium stringere, destringere*—to draw one's sword.  
*gladium alicui in pectus infigere*—to plunge one's sword  
 in some one's breast.  
*gladio aliquem per pectus transfigere* (Liv. 2. 46)—to trans-  
 fix, pierce a man's breast with one's sword.  
*sicam, cultrum in corde alicuius defigere*<sup>1</sup> (Liv. 1. 58)—to  
 plunge a dagger, knife in some one's heart.  
*decurrere (in armis)*—to manœuvre.  
*vi et armis*—by force of arms.

## 5. WAR

- bellum parare*—to make preparations for war.  
*apparatus (rare in plur.) belli*—preparations for war; war-  
 material.  
*bellum indicere, denuntiare*—to make formal declaration  
 of war.

<sup>1</sup> *defigere* is also used metaphorically, e.g. *defigere omnes curas, cogitationes in rei publicae salute* (Phil. 14. 5. 13).

- res repetere (ab aliquo)* (Off. I. II. 36)—to demand satisfaction, restitution.
- res reddere (alicui)* (cf. p. 57)—to make restitution.
- bellum iustum (pium)*—a regular, formal war.
- bellum intestinum, domesticum* (opp. *bellum externum*)—a civil war.
- bellum facere, movere, excitare*—to cause a war.
- bellum conflare* (Fam. 5. 2. 8)—to kindle a war.
- bellum moliri*—to meditate war.
- bellum incipere, belli initium facere* (B. G. 7. I. 5)—to commence hostilities.
- bello se interponere* (Liv. 35. 48)—to interfere in a war.
- bello implicari*—to be involved in a war.
- bellum cum aliquo inire*—to begin a war with some one.
- bellum impendet, imminet, instat*—a war is imminent.
- bellum oritur, exardescit*—war breaks out.
- omnia bello flagrant* or *ardent* (Fam. 4. I. 2)—everywhere the torch of war is flaming.
- bellum gerere cum aliquo*—to make war on a person.
- bellum coniungere* (Imp. Pomp. 9. 26)—to wage war in conjunction with some one.
- bellum ducere, trahere, extrahere*—to protract, prolong a war.
- omni studio in (ad) bellum incumbere*—to carry on a war energetically.
- bellum inferre alicui* (Att. 9. I. 3)—to invade.
- bellum* or *arma ultro inferre*—to be the aggressor in a war; to act on the offensive.
- bellum (inlatum) defendere*—to act on the defensive.
- proficisci ad bellum, in expeditionem* (Sall. Iug. 103)—to go to war, commence a campaign.
- mittere ad bellum*—to send to the war.

- bellum administrare*—to have the control of the war.
- bello persequi aliquem, lacescere*—to harass with war.
- belli finem facere, bellum finire*—to put an end to a war.
- bellum conficere, perficere*—to terminate a war (by force of arms and defeat of one's opponents).
- bellum componere* (Fam. 10. 33)—to terminate a war (by a treaty, etc.)
- bellum transferre alio, in . . .*—to transfer the seat of war elsewhere.
- belli sedes* (Liv. 4. 31)—the seat of war, theatre of operations.
- rationem belli gerendi mutare* (Liv. 32. 31)—to change one's tactics.

## 6. THE ARMY ON THE MARCH

- agmen medium* (Liv. 10. 41)—the centre of the marching column.
- agmen primum*—the vanguard.
- agmen novissimum (extremum)*—the rearguard.
- agmen claudere, cogere*—to bring up the rear.
- signa<sup>1</sup> ferre, tollere* } to begin the march, break up the  
*castra movere* } camp.
- agmen agere*—to set the army in motion.

<sup>1</sup> *signa* = standards of a maniple, cohort, or legion. Since Marius' time the *signum* of a legion was an eagle, those of the maniples different animals, wolf, horse, etc. In the camp the standards were fixed in the ground, in action they were carried in the front rank, hence several phrases—*signa convellere, tollere, efferre*, to break up camp; *signa proferre, promovere*, to advance in battle-order; *signa inferre*, to attack; *signa conferre*, to come to close quarters; *signa statuere*, to halt; *signa convertere*, to change one's route; *signa referre*, to retire; *signa relinquere*, to desert, etc.

- procedere cum exercitu*—to advance with the army.  
*magnis itineribus* (Sall. Iug. 37)—by forced marches.  
*quam maximis itineribus (potest)*—by the longest possible forced marches.  
*citatum agmen rapere* } to lead the army with forced  
*raptim agmen ducere* } marches.  
*citato gradu incedere* (cf. p. 15)—to advance rapidly.  
*loca, regiones, loci naturam explorare*—to reconnoitre the ground.  
*iter facere*—to march.  
*iter conficere* (B. C. I. 70)—to traverse a route.  
*iter maturare, accelerare*—to quicken the pace of marching.  
*iter continuare* (B. C. 3. 11)—to march without interruption.  
*iter non intermittere*—not to interrupt the march.  
*iter flectere, convertere, avertere* } to deviate, change the  
*signa convertere* (B. G. I. 25) } direction.  
*averso itinere contendere in . . .*—to change one's route and march towards . . .  
*iter tentare per vim* (cf. p. 11)—to force a way, a passage.  
*agmen, exercitum demittere in . . .*—to march down on to . . .  
*exercitum admovere, adducere ad . . .*—to advance on . . .  
*signa sequi* (opp. *a signis discedere, signa relinquere*)—to follow the standards.  
*ordines servare* (B. G. 4. 26)—to keep the ranks.  
*confertis, solutis ordinibus*—with close ranks; with ranks in disorder.  
*raris ordinibus*—in open order.  
*ordines turbare, perrumpere*—to break the ranks.

- agmine quadrato incedere, ire*—to march with closed ranks, in order of battle.  
*agmine duplici, triplici*—in two, three columns.  
*novissimos premere*—to press the rearguard.  
*novissimos turbare*—to throw the rearguard into confusion.  
*novissimos carpere*—to harass the rear.  
*novissimis praesidio esse*—to protect the troops in the rear.  
*opprimere hostes (imprudentes, incautos, inopinantes)*—to surprise and defeat the enemy.  
*subsistere, consistere* } to halt.  
*gradum sistere* }  
*capere, occupare locum*—to occupy a position (with troops).  
*occupare loca superiora*—to occupy the high ground.  
*praeoccupare locum* (Liv. 35. 27)—to occupy a place beforehand.  
*tenere montem* (B. G. I. 22)—to hold a mountain.  
*consistere in monte*—to take up one's position on a mountain.  
*considere sub monte (sub montis radicibus)*—to occupy the foot of a hill.  
*praesidiis firmare urbem* } to garrison a town.  
*praesidium collocare in urbe* }  
*praesidia, custodias disponere*—to station posts, pickets, at intervals.  
*vigilias crebras ponere* (Sall. Iug. 45. 2)—to place a close line of sentry-posts.

## 7. THE CAMP

- castra stativa* (Sall. Iug. 44)—a permanent camp.  
*castra hiberna, aestiva*—winter-quarters, summer-quarters.  
*castra ponere, locare*—to encamp.

- idoneo, aequo, suo* (opp. *iniquo*) *loco*—in a favourable position.
- castra metari* (B. C. 3. 13)—to mark out a camp.
- militēs in hibernis collocare, in hiberna deducere*—to take the troops to their winter-quarters.
- castra munire*—to make a fortified, entrenched camp.
- castra munire vallo* (*aggere*)—to fortify the camp with a rampart.
- fossam ducere*—to make a ditch, a fosse.
- vallum iacere, exstruere, facere*—to raise a rampart, earth-work.
- castra praesidiis firmare*—to strengthen the camp by outposts.
- praesidio castris milites relinquere*—to leave troops to guard the camp.
- castra coniungere, iungere* (B. C. 1. 63)—to make a camp in common.
- castra nudare* (B. G. 7. 70)—to leave the camp undefended.
- cohors, quae in statione est*—the cohort on guard-duty.
- vigilias agere in castris* (Verr. 4: 43)—to mount guard in the camp.
- custodias agere in vallo*—to keep watch on the rampart.
- stationes agere pro portis*—to be on duty before the gates.
- circumire vigilias* (Sall. Jug. 45. 2)—to make the round of the sentries.
- tesseram dare* (Liv. 28. 14)—to give the watchword, countersign.
- copias castris continere*—to keep the troops in camp.
- se (quietum) tenere castris*—to remain inactive in camp.
- excursionem in hostium agros facere*—to make an inroad into hostile territory.

- praedatum ire*—to go in search of plunder, booty.
- ferre atque agere*<sup>1</sup> *praedam*—to carry off booty.
- capere equos*—to capture horses.
- lignatum, aquatum ire*—to go to fetch wood, water.
- pabulatum, frumentatum ire*—to forage.
- pabulatione premi* (B. C. 1. 78)—to suffer from want of forage.
- omnia ferro ignique, ferro atque igni* or *ferro flammaque vastare*—to ravage with fire and sword.
- classicum* or *tuba canit ad praetorium*—the bugle, trumpet sounds before the general's tent.
- vasa conclamare* (B. C. 3. 37)—to give the signal for breaking up the camp, collecting baggage.
- vasa colligere* (Liv. 21. 47)—to pack the baggage (for marching).
- signa convellere* (*vid.* p. 253, note)—to pluck up the standards out of the ground (to begin the march).
- consilium habere, convocare*—to hold a council of war.
- rem ad consilium deferre*—to refer a matter to a council of war.

## 8. A SIEGE

- oppidum natura loci munitum* (B. G. 1. 38)—a town with a strong natural position.
- oppidum manu (opere) munitum*—a town artificially fortified.
- oppidum obsidere*  
*oppidum obsidione claudere* } to besiege a city.
- oppidum in obsidione tenere*—to keep a town in a state of siege.

<sup>1</sup> *ferre* of things inanimate, *agere* of cattle. Cf. φέρειν καὶ ἄγειν.

- oppidum fame domare*—to starve a town into surrender.  
*oppidum oppugnare*—to storm a town.  
*oppidum claudere operibus* (Nep. Milt. 7)—to invest a town with earthworks.  
*oppidum cingere vallo et fossa*—to surround a town with a rampart and fosse.  
*opera facere*—to raise siege-works.  
*vineas agere* (B. G. 3. 21)—to advance pent-houses, mantlets.  
*turres instituere, exstruere, excitare*—to raise towers.  
*testudine facta moenia subire* (B. G. 2. 6)—to advance to the walls protected by a covering of shields.  
*scalas admovere* (B. C. 3. 63)—to apply scaling-ladders.  
*positis scalis muros ascendere*—to scale the walls by means of ladders.  
*aries murum attingit, percutit*—the battering-ram strikes the wall.  
*iter ruina patefactum*  
*patentia ruinis* (*vid.* p. 185, note) } a breach.  
*cuniculos agere* (B. G. 3. 21)—to make mines, subterraneous passages.  
*oppidum tormentis verberare*—to rain missiles on a town, bombard it.  
*tela ingerere, conicere*—to discharge showers of missiles.  
*murum nudare defensoribus*—to drive the defenders from the walls.  
*eruptionem facere ex oppido*  
*crebras ex oppido excursiones* } to make a sally, sortie from the town.  
*facere* (B. G. 2. 30)  
*ignem inferre operibus* (B. C. 2. 14)—to set fire to the siege-works.  
*subsidium alicui summittere*—to send relief to some one.

- munitiones perrumpere*—to break through the lines (and relieve a town).  
*urbis obsidionem liberare* } to raise a siege (used of the  
*oppidum obsidione liberare* } army of relief).  
*obsidionem quattuor menses sustinere*—to hold out for four months.  
*oppugnationem, obsidionem relinquere*—to give up an assault, a siege.  
*portas obstruere* (B. G. 5. 50)—to barricade the gates.  
*portas refringere*  
*claustra portarum revellere* } to break down the gates.  
*in oppidum irrumperere*  
*in oppidum irruptionem facere* } to break into the town.  
*oppidum capere, expugnare*—to take, storm a town.  
*oppidum recipere*—to retake a town.  
*oppidum incendere*—to fire a town.  
*oppidum diripere*—to plunder a town.  
*oppidum evertere, excidere*—to completely destroy a town.  
*oppidum solo aequare*—to raze a town to the ground.  
*deditione facta* (Sall. Jug. 26)—after capitulation.  
*arma tradere*—to surrender weapons.  
*salutem petere a victore*—to beg for mercy from the conqueror.  
*se suaque omnia dedere victori* } to give up one's person  
*se suaque omnia permittere* } and all one's possessions to the conqueror.  
*victoris potestati*  
*se permittere in fidem atque in potestatem alicuius* (B. G. 2. 3)  
 —to surrender oneself to the discretion of some one.  
*in fidem recipere aliquem* (Fam. 13. 16)—to deal mercifully with some one.

*libera corpora sub corona (hasta) veneunt* (B. G. 3. 16. 4)  
—the free men are sold as slaves.  
*cum uxoribus et liberis*—with wife and child.  
*aliquem (incolumem) conservare*—to grant a man his life.

## 9. BEFORE THE FIGHT

*potestatem, copiam pugnandi hostibus facere*—to offer battle to the enemy.  
*potestatem sui facere (alicui)* (cf. p. 196, notes)—to accept battle.  
*proelio (ad pugnam) hostes lacessere, provocare*—to provoke the enemy to battle.  
*pugnam detrectare* (Liv. 3. 60)—to decline battle.  
*supersedere proelio*—to refrain from fighting.  
*hostem e manibus non dimittere*—to not let the enemy escape.  
*locum ad pugnam idoneum deligere*—to choose suitable ground for an engagement.  
*diem pugnae constituere* (B. G. 3. 24)—to fix a day for the engagement.  
*signum proelii (committendi) exposcere* (B. G. 7. 19)—to demand loudly the signal to engage.  
*signum proelii dare*—to give the signal to engage.  
*vexillum proponere* (Liv. 22. 3)—to fix the ensign on the general's tent (as a signal to commence the engagement).  
*ad arma concurrere*—to rush to arms.  
*exercitum educere or producere in aciem*—to lead the army to the fight.  
*ad vim et arma descendere* (vid. p. 54, notes)—to have recourse to force of arms.

*in certamen descendere*—to engage in the fight.  
*in aciem descendere* (Liv. 8. 8)—to enter the field of battle.  
*aciem (copias, exercitum) instruere or in acie constituere*—to draw up forces in battle-order.  
*aciem triplicem instruere* (B. G. 1. 24) to draw up the army in three lines.  
*aciem explicare or dilatate*—to extend the line of battle, deploy the battalions.  
*media acies*—the centre.  
*subsidia collocare*—to station reserve troops.  
*equites ad latera disponere* (B. G. 6. 8)—to place the cavalry on the wings.  
*contionari apud milites* (B. C. 1. 7) } to harangue the soldiers.  
*contionem habere apud milites* } diers.  
*ad virtutem excitare, cohortari* (or simply *adhortari, cohortari*)  
—to incite to valour.  
*animos militum confirmare* (B. G. 5. 49)—to encourage, embolden the soldiery.

## 10. THE FIGHT

## (a) THE FIGHT IN GENERAL

*proelium committere*—(1) to begin the battle, (2) to give battle.  
*proelium inire* (Liv. 2. 14)—to engage.  
*proelium facere*—to give battle.  
*proelio equestri contendere* } to give battle with a cavalry-  
*proelium equestre facere* } division.  
*proelium facere secundum* } to fight successfully.  
*proeliis secundis uti* }  
*rem (bene, male) gerere* (vid. p. 187, note)—to win, lose a fight (of the commander).

- proelium intermittere*—to interrupt the battle.  
*proelium dirimere* (B. C. I. 40)—to break off the fight.  
*proelium restituere*—to renew the battle with success.  
*proelium renovare, redintegrare*—to begin the fight again.  
*proelium deserere*—to give up the fight.  
*proelio, armis decertare* (B. G. I. 50)—to fight a decisive battle.  
*acie (armis, ferro) decernere*  
*in acie dimicare* } to fight a pitched battle.  
*proelio interesse*—to take part in the engagement.  
*ex equo pugnare*—to fight on horseback.  
*certamen singulare*—single combat.  
*provocare aliquem ad certamen singulare*—to challenge some one to single combat.  
*proelium cruentum, atrox*—a bloody battle.  
*proelium iustum (opp. tumultuarium)*—a pitched battle.

## (b) THE ATTACK

- classicum canit* (B. C. 3. 82)—the trumpet sounds for the attack.  
*gradum inferre in hostem*—to march on the enemy.  
*aggredi hostem*  
*invadere, impetum<sup>1</sup> facere in hostem* } to attack the enemy.  
*signa inferre in hostem*  
*impetum sustinere* (B. G. I. 26)—to resist the attack, onset.  
*impetum excipere<sup>2</sup>* (Liv. 6. 12)—to parry the attack.

<sup>1</sup> *impetus* is not used in the dative sing. or in the plur.; these cases are supplied by *incurio*.

<sup>2</sup> Caesar's method of attack was usually this: the troops drawn up on rising ground charged at the double (*concursum*); when within range came *emissio telorum* or *pilorum*. This was followed up by a hand-to-hand *mêlée* (*impetus gladiatorum*).

- in medios hostes se inicere*—to rush into the midst of the foe.  
*per medios hostes (mediam hostium aciem) perrumpere*—to break through the enemy's centre.  
*manum (us) conserere cum hoste*  
*signa conferre cum hoste<sup>1</sup>* } to come to close quarters.  
*proelio concurritur* (Sall. Jug. 59)—the lines charge in battle one on another.  
*adversis hostibus occurrere*—to attack the enemy in the front.  
*aversos hostes aggredi*  
*hostes a tergo adoriri* } to attack the enemy in the rear.  
*iusto (opp. tumultuario) proelio configere cum hoste* (Liv. 35. 4)—to fight a pitched, orderly battle with an enemy.  
*acies inclinatur* or *inclinatur* (Liv. 7. 33)—the line of battle gives way.  
*proelium anceps est*  
*incipiti Marte pugnatur* } the issue of the battle is undecided.  
*diu anceps stetit pugna*—the issue of the day was for a long time uncertain.  
*res est in periculo, in summo discrimine*—the position is critical.  
*res ad triarios<sup>2</sup> redit* (Liv. 8. 8)—the triarii must now fight (proverbially = we are reduced to extremities).

<sup>1</sup> *signa conferre cum aliquo* also sometimes means to join forces.

<sup>2</sup> The *triarii* were the veterans who made up the third line behind the *principes* and *hastati*. If these first two lines were beaten or in difficulties (*laborare*), the *triarii*, who were in a kneeling posture (*dextro genu innixi*, Liv. 8. 9), stood up (*consurgebant*, Liv. 8. 10) and continued the fight. Hence this proverb (*inde rem ad triarios redisse cum laboratur proverbio increbuit*). For the organisation of the legion in general *vid.* Liv. book 8.

## (c) CLOSE QUARTERS

*collatis signis (viribus) pugnare*—to fight hand-to-hand, at close quarters.

*tum pes cum pede collatus est* (Liv. 28. 2)—a hand-to-hand engagement ensued.

*collato pede* (Liv. 6. 12)—hand to hand.

*gladio comminus* (opp. *eminus*) *rem gerere*—to fight with swords at close quarters.

*omissis pilis gladiis rem gerere*—to throw down the javelins (*pila*) and fight with the sword.

*res ad gladios venit* } swords must now decide the  
*res gladiis geri coepta est* } day.

*strictis gladiis in hostem ferri*—to throw oneself on the enemy with drawn sword.

*res ad manus venit*—the fighting is now at close quarters.

*laxatis* (opp. *confertis*) *ordinibus pugnare*—to fight in open order.

*ferarum*<sup>1</sup> *ritu pugnare*—to fight like lions.

*manu fortis*—personally brave.

## (d) TACTICS—REINFORCEMENTS

*in latus hostium incurrere*—to fall upon the enemy's flank.

*circumvenire hostem aversum* or *a tergo* (B. G. 2. 26)—to surround the enemy from the rear.

*multitudine hostium cingi*—to be surrounded by the superior force of the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> The Latin language uses the general term (*fera*) where we use the special (lion). Similarly *pecorum modo fugiunt* (Liv. 40. 27), where we translate "they flee like deer."

*equitatu superiorem esse*—to have the advantage in cavalry.

*parem* (opp. *impārem*) *esse hosti*—to be a match for the enemy.

*orbem*<sup>1</sup> *facere* (Sall. Iug. 97. 5) }  
*in orbem consistere* } to form a square.

*cuneum facere* (Liv. 22. 47)—to draw up troops in wedge-formation.

*phalangem facere* (B. G. 1. 24)—to form a phalanx.

*phalangem perfringere*—to break through the phalanx.

*subsidia summittere*—to send up reserves.

*integros defatigatis summittere*—to send fresh troops to take the place of those wearied with fighting.

*rari dispersique pugnare* (B. C. 1. 44)—to fight in skirmishing order.

*integri et recentes defatigatis succedunt*—fresh troops relieve the tired men.

## (e) SUCCESSFUL ATTACK

*pellere hostem*—to repulse the enemy.

*acies hostium impellitur*—the enemy's line is repulsed.

*loco movere, depellere, deicere hostem* (B. G. 7. 51)—to drive the enemy from his position.

*summovere* or *reicere hostium equites*—to repel the attack of the enemy's cavalry.

*repellere, propulsare hostem*—to repulse an attack.

<sup>1</sup> *orbis* properly a circle, but corresponding almost exactly in its objects to our square-formation (*vid.* B. G. 4. 37, 5. 33; Sall. Iug. 97. 5). For a good account of Roman military formation see Kraner, *Uebersicht des Kriegswesens bei Caesar*, in his edition of the *Bellum Gallicum*.



*undique premi, urgeri* (B. G. 2. 26)—to be pressed on all sides.

*prosternere, profligare hostem*—to rout the enemy

(f) RETREAT—FLIGHT—PURSUIT

*signa receptui canunt*  
*receptui canitur* (B. G. 7. 47) } the retreat is sounded.

*pedem referre*—to retire (without turning one's back on the enemy).

*equitatus tutum receptum dat*—the cavalry covers the retreat.

*se recipere* (B. G. 7. 20)—to withdraw one's forces.

*loco excedere*—to abandon one's position.

*in fugam dare, conicere hostem*  
*fugare hostem* } to put the enemy to flight.

*fundere hostium copias*—to rout the enemy's forces.

*caedere et fundere hostem*  
*fundere et fugare hostem* } to utterly rout the enemy.

*prae se agere hostem*—to drive the enemy before one.

*fugam facere* (Sall. Iug. 53)—(1) to put to flight, (2) to take to flight.

*terga vertere* or *dare*—to flee, run away.

*terga dare hosti*—to run away from the enemy.

*fugae se mandare* (B. G. 2. 24) }  
*fugam capessere, capere*  
*se dare in fugam, fugae*  
*se conicere, se conferre in fugam* } to take to flight.

*fuga salutem petere*—to seek safety in flight.

*fuga effusa, praeceps* (Liv. 30. 5)—headlong flight.

*pecorum modo fugere* (Liv. 40. 27)—to flee like deer, sheep.

*arma abicere*—to throw away one's arms.

*praecipitem se fugae mandare*—to flee headlong.

*ex (in) fuga dissipati* or *dispersi* (B. G. 2. 24)—soldiers routed and dispersed.

*hostes insequi, prosequi*—to pursue the enemy.

*hostes (fusus) persequi*—to follow up and harass the enemy when in flight.

*hostes assequi, consequi*—to overtake the enemy.

*fugientibus instare*—to press the fugitives.

*tergis hostium inhaerere*—to be on the heels of the enemy.

*fugam hostium reprimere* (B. G. 3. 14)—to bring the flying enemy to a stand.

*excipere aliquem fugientem*—to cut off some one's flight.

*magna caedes hostium fugientium facta est*—there was great slaughter of fugitives.

*capere aliquem vivum*—to take a person alive.

*effugere, elabi e manibus hostium*—to escape from the hands of the enemy

*dimittere e manibus hostes*—to let the enemy escape.

*eripere aliquem e manibus hostium*—to rescue some one from the hands of the enemy.

*se fuga recipere* (B. G. 1. 11)—to save oneself by flight.

(g) DEFEAT—MASSACRE—WOUNDS—LOSSES

*proelio vinci, superari, inferiorem, victum discedere*—to be defeated in fight, lose the battle.

*cladem hostibus afferre, inferre*—to inflict a defeat on the enemy.

*cladem accipere*—to suffer a defeat.

*ingentem caedem edere* (Liv. 5. 13)—to cause great slaughter, carnage.

*stragem edere, facere*—to massacre.

*omnia strata sunt ferro*—all have perished by the sword.

*hostes, exercitum delere, concidere*—to annihilate, cut up the enemy, an army.

*hostes ad internecionem caedere,*  
*delere* (Liv. 9. 26)  
*hostium copias occisione occidere*  
 (Liv. 2. 51) } to absolutely annihilate  
 the enemy.

*vulnus infligere alicui*—to wound a person (also used metaphorically).

*mortiferam plagam alicui infligere*—to inflict a mortal wound on some one.

*vulnus (grave, mortiferum) accipere, excipere*—to be (seriously, mortally) wounded.

*multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus* (B. G. 1. 50)—after many had been wounded on both sides.

*vulneribus confectus*—weakened by wounds.

*vulnera (cicatrices) adversa (opp. aversa)*  
*vulnera adverso corpore accepta* } wounds (scars) on the  
 breast.

*refricare*<sup>1</sup> *vulnus, cicatricem obductam*—to open an old wound.

*ex vulnere mori* (Fam. 10. 33)—to die of wounds.

*magno cum detrimento*—with great loss.

*nostri circiter centum ceciderunt*—about a hundred of our men fell.

*ad unum omnes*<sup>2</sup> *perierunt*—they perished to a man.

<sup>1</sup> *refricare* is also used metaphorically in the sense of renewing, recalling, e.g. *dolorem* (De Or. 2. 48); *memoriam* (Phil. 3. 7. 18); *desiderium* (Fam. 5. 17. 4).

<sup>2</sup> The phrase *ad unum omnes*, to a man, without exception, occurs De Am. 23. 86; Fam. 12. 14; Liv. 2. 55; and without *omnes*, Fam. 10. 16; B. C. 3. 14.

## II. VICTORY—TRIUMPH

*exercitus victor*—the victorious army.

*superiorem* (opp. *inferiorem*), *victorem* (*proelio, pugna*)  
*discedere*—to come off victorious.

*victoriam adipisci, parere*  
*victoriam ferre, referre*  
*proelio vincere* } to gain a victory, win a battle.

*victoriam reportare ab hoste*—to gain a victory over the enemy.

*victoriam praecipere (animo)* (Liv. 10. 26)—to consider oneself already victor.

*victoriam exploratam dimittere*—to let a sure victory slip through one's hands.

*sicut parta iam atque explorata victoria*—as if the victory were already won.

*victoriam conclamare* (B. G. 5. 37)—to raise a shout of victory.

*victoriam* or *de victoria gratulari alicui*—to congratulate a person on his victory.

*victoria multo sanguine ac vulneribus stetit* (Liv. 23. 30)—the victory cost much blood and many wounds, was very dearly bought.

*triumphare de aliquo (ex bellis)*  
*triumphum*<sup>1</sup> *agere de* or *ex aliquo* or c. Gen. (*victoriae, pugnae*) } to triumph over some one.

*per triumphum (in triumpho) aliquem ducere*—to lead some one in triumph.

<sup>1</sup> E.g. *triumphum agere Boiorum* (Liv.); *Pharsaliae pugnae* (Cic.); *de Liguribus* (Liv.); *ex Aequis* (Liv.) For other phrases cf. *triumphum postulare, imperare; triumphum tertium deportare; triumphum consulis celebrare.*

*triumphum senatus Africano decernit* (Fin. 4. 9. 22)—the senate decrees to Africanus the honours of a triumph.

## 12. TRUCE—PEACE—TREATIES—ALLIANCE

*indutias facere* (Phil. 8. 7)—to make a truce.

*indutias violare*—to break a truce.

*ius gentium violare*—to violate the law of nations.

*agere cum aliquo de pace*—to treat with some one about peace.

*pacem conciliare* (Fam. 10. 27)—to bring about a peace.

*pacem facere cum aliquo*—to make peace with some one.

*pacem dirimere, frangere*—to break the peace.

*his condicionibus*—on these terms.

*pacis condiciones ferre* (not *proponere*)—to propose terms of peace.

*pacis condiciones dare, dicere alicui* (Liv. 29. 12)—to dictate the terms of peace to some one.

*pacis condiciones accipere, subire* (opp. *repudiare, respuere*)—to accept the terms of the peace.

*pax convēnit in eam condicionem, ut . . .*—peace is concluded on condition that . . .

*summa pax*—deep peace.

*captivos permutare, commutare*—to exchange prisoners.

*captivos redimere* (Off. 2. 18)—to ransom prisoners.

*captivos sine pretio reddere*—to restore prisoners without ransom.

*obsides dare*—to give hostages.

*obsides civitatibus imperare*—to compel communities to provide hostages.

*pactionem facere cum aliquo* (Sall. Jug. 40)—to conclude a treaty with some one.

*ex pacto, ex foedere*—according to treaty.

*foedus facere (cum aliquo), icere, ferire*—to conclude a treaty, an alliance.

*foedus frangere, rumpere, violare*—to violate a treaty, terms of alliance.

*socium aliquem asciscere* (B. G. 1. 5)—to make some one one's ally.

*in amicitia populi Romani esse* (Liv. 22. 37)—to be on friendly terms with the Roman people.

*a senatu amicus<sup>1</sup> appellatus est* (B. G. 1. 3)—he received from the senate the title of friend.

## 13. CONQUEST—SUBMISSION

*terra potiri*—to conquer a country.

*terram suae dicionis facere*

*populum in potestatem suam redigere* (B. G. 2. 34)

*populum in deditionem venire cogere*

} to reduce a country to subjection to oneself.

*populum in deditionem accipere*—to accept the submission of a people.

*populum perdomare, subigere*—to subjugate a nation.

*populum, terram suo imperio, suae potestati subicere* (not *sibi* by itself)—to make oneself master of a people, country.

<sup>1</sup> *amicus*, the friend of the Roman people, distinct from *socius*, an ally; a *socius* was always *amicus*, but not necessarily *vice versa*. The title *amicus populi Romani* was granted by the senate to foreign princes in recognition of some signal service.

*se imperio alicuius subicere* (not *alicui*)  
*in deditionem venire* (without *alicui*)  
*in alicuius potestatem se permittere*  
*sub imperio et ditione alicuius esse*  
*subiectum esse, obnoxium esse im-*  
*perio or ditioni alicuius* (not simply *alicui*)  
*in potestate, in ditione alicuius esse*

to make one's submission to some one.

to be subject to some one, under some one's dominion.

*qui imperio subiecti sunt*—subjects.

*aliquem ad officium* (cf. p. 172, note) *reducere* (Nep. Dat. 2. 3)—to reduce a people to their former obedience.

*aliquem in officio continere*—to keep some one in subjection.

*in officio manere, permanere*—to remain in subjection.

*Asiam in provinciae formam (in provinciam) redigere* (B. G. 1. 45)—to make Asia into a Roman province.

*Asia populi Romani facta est*—Asia was made subject to Rome.

*gentem ad interuersionem redigere or adducere* (B. G. 2. 28)—to completely annihilate a nation.

## XVII. SHIPPING

### I. NAVAL AFFAIRS IN GENERAL

*navis actuaria*—a cutter.

*navis longa*—a man-of-war.

*navis oneraria*—a transport or cargo-boat.

*navis mercatoria*—a merchantman.

*oppidum maritimum*—a seaport town.

*navibus plurimum posse rebus maritimis multum valere* } to have a powerful navy.  
*navem, classem aedificare, facere, efficere, instituere*—to build a ship, a fleet.

*navem (classem) armare, ornare, instruere*—to equip a boat, a fleet.

*navem deducere* (*vid.* p. 186, note)—to launch a boat.

*navem subducere (in aridum)*—to haul up a boat.

*navem reficere*—to repair a boat.

*navem conscendere, ascendere*—to embark.

*exercitum in naves imponere* (Liv. 22. 19)—to embark an army.

*milites in terram, in terra exponere*—to disembark troops.

*classiarii*<sup>1</sup> (B. C. 3. 100)—marines.

*nautae, remiges*—sailors, rowers.

*vectores* (Phil. 7. 9. 27)—passengers.

*naves annotinae*—ships of last year.

### 2. VOYAGE—SHIPWRECK—LANDING

*solvere* (B. G. 4. 28)  
*navem (naves) solvere*  
*ancoram (ancoras) tollere* } to weigh anchor, sail.

*naves ex portu solvunt*—the ships sail from the harbour

*malacia et tranquillitas* (B. G. 3. 15)—a dead calm.

*vela in altum dare* (Liv. 25. 27)—to put to sea.

*ventum (tempestatem) nauti idoneum ex portu exeunt*—the ships sail out on a fair wind.

<sup>1</sup> Also *classici milites, classica legio* (Liv. 21. 41; 22. 19). The marines were recruited from the lowest classes (*capite censi*) and from the *liberti*. The rowers were slaves; the ordinary sailors were *socii navales*.

- vela facere, pandere* } to set the sails.  
*vela dare* }
- vela contrahere* (also metaph.)—to furl the sails.  
*oram legere* (Liv. 21. 51)—to hug the coast.  
*superare insulam, promunturium*—to double an island, cape.  
*ventis reflantibus* (Tusc. 1. 49)—with the wind against one.  
*cursum dirigere aliquo*—to set one's course for a place.  
*cursum tenere* (opp. *commutare* and *deferri*)—to hold on one's course.  
*cursum conficere* (Att. 5. 12. 1)—to finish one's voyage.  
*gubernaculum tractare* } to steer.  
*clavum tenere* }
- navem remis agere* or *propellere*—to row.  
*remis contendere* } to row hard.  
*navem remis concitare, incitare* }
- sustinere, inhibere remos* (De Or. 1. 33)—to stop rowing; to easy.  
*navem retro inhibere* (Att. 13. 21)—to back water.  
*naufragium facere*—to be shipwrecked.  
*navis ad scopulos alliditur* (B. C. 3. 27)—the ship strikes on the rocks.  
*vento se dare*—to run before the wind.  
*in litus eici* (B. G. 5. 10)—to be stranded.  
*deferri, deici aliquo* } to be driven out of one's course; to  
*tempestate abripi* } drift.  
*procella (tempestat) aliquem ex alto ad ignotas terras (oras) defert*—the storm drives some one on an unknown coast.  
*naufragium colligere* (Sest. 6. 15)—to collect the wreckage.  
*appellere navem (ad terram, litus)*—to land (of people).  
*appelli (ad oram)* (Att. 13. 21)—to land (of ships).

- ancoras iacere*—to drop anchor.  
*ancoras tollere*—to weigh anchor.  
*naves ad ancoras deligare* (B. G. 4. 29) } to make fast boats to  
*naves (classem) constituere (in)* } anchors.  
*alto)* }
- ad ancoram consistere* } to ride at anchor.  
*ad ancoras deligari* }  
*in ancoris esse, stare, consistere* }
- exire ex, de navi* } to land, disembark.  
*egredi (ex) navi* }  
*exire, egredi in terram* }  
*escensionem facere* (of troops) }
- portu, terra prohiberi* (B. C. 3. 15)—to be unable to land.  
*litora ac portus custodia clausos tenere*—to keep the coast and harbours in a state of blockade.  
*deperire*—to founder, go down.  
*aestu incitato*—at high tide.

## 3. A NAVAL BATTLE

- navis praetoria* (Liv. 21. 49)—the admiral's ship; the flagship.  
*pugnam navalem facere*<sup>1</sup>—to fight a battle at sea.  
*navem expedire*—to clear for action.  
*navem rostro percutere*—to charge, ram a boat.  
*navem expugnare*—to board and capture a boat.  
*navem, classem deprimere, mergere*—to sink a ship, a fleet.  
*classes concurrunt* (Liv. 26. 39)—the fleets charge.

<sup>1</sup> For a description of a sea-fight *vid.* B. G. iii. 13-16.

*copulas, manus ferreas (in navem) inicere* } to throw grappling-  
 } irons on board; to  
*in navem (hostium) transcendere* } board.  
*navem capere, intercipere, deprehendere*—to capture a boat.  
*vela armamentaque*—sails and rigging.  
*ex eo navium concursu magnum incommodum est acceptum*  
 —much damage was done by this collision.  
*navigia speculatoria*—reconnoitring-vessels.

## APPENDIX

*ut ait Cicero* (always in this order)—as Cicero says.  
*ut Ciceronis verbis utar*—to use Cicero's expression; to  
 say with Cicero (not *ut cum Cicerone loquar*).  
*ut ita dicam*—so to speak (used to modify a figurative  
 expression).  
*ut non (nihil) dicam de . . .*—not to mention . . .  
*ut plura non dicam*—to say nothing further on . . .  
*ne dicam*—not to say . . . (used in avoiding a stronger  
 expression).  
*ne (quid) gravius dicam*—to say the least . . .  
*ut breviter dicam*—to put it briefly.  
*denique*  
*ne multa, quid plura? sed quid*  
*opus est plura?*  
*ut paucis (rem) absolvam*  
*ut paucis (brevis, breviter) com-*  
*plectar*  
*ut brevi comprehendam*  
*ut brevi praecidam* } in short; to be brief.  
*ut eorum, quae dixi, summam faciam*—to sum up . . .  
*ne longum sit*  
*ne longus, multus sim* } not to be prolix.  
*ne diutius vos demorer*

*ne in re nota et perouulgata multus sim*—not to be diffuse on such a well-known subject.

*ut levissime dicam* (opp. *ut gravissimo verbo utar*)—to use the mildest expression.

*ut planius dicam*—to express myself more plainly.

*ut verius dicam*—to put it more exactly.

*ut semel* or *in perpetuum dicam*—to say once for all.

*ut in eodem simili verser*—to use the same simile, illustration.

*ut hoc utar* or *afferam*—to use this example.

*dicam quod sentio*—I will give you my true opinion.

*tantum* or *unum illud* or *hoc dico*—I will only say this much . . .

*non nego, non infitior*—I do not deny.

*hoc dici potest de aliqua re*  
*hoc cadit in aliquid*  
*hoc transferri potest in aliquid* } this can be said of . . . ,  
applies to . . .

*dixi quasi praeteriens* or *in transitu*—I said *en passant*, by the way.

*sexcenties, millies dixi*—I have said it a thousand times.

*ut supra* (opp. *infra*) *diximus, dictum est*—as I said above.

*dici vix (non) potest* or *vix potest dici* (*vix* like *non* always before *potest*)—I cannot find words for . . .

*incredibile dictu est*—it sounds incredible.

*supersedeo oratione* (not *dicere*)  
*omitto dicere* } I avoid mentioning . . . ; I  
prefer not to touch upon . . .

*haec habeo dicere* or *habeo quae dicam*—this I have to say.

*haec (fere) dixit*—he spoke (very much) as follows.

*hanc in sententiam dixit*—the tenor of his speech was this . . .

*mihī quaedam dicenda sunt de hac re*—I have a few words to say on this.

*quod vere praedicare possum*—without wishing to boast, yet . . .

*quod non arroganter dixerim*—which I can say without offence, arrogance.

*pace tua dixerim* or *dicere liceat*  
*bona (cum) venia tua dixerim* } allow me to say . . .

*non est huius loci c. Inf.*  
*non est hic locus, ut . . .* } this is not the place to . . .

*sed de hoc alias pluribus*—more of this another time.

*atque* or *sed haec (quidem)*  
*hactenus*  
*atque haec quidem de . . .*  
*ac (sed) de . . . satis dixi,*  
*dictum est* } so much for this subject . . . ;  
enough has been said  
on . . .

*haec (quidem) ille*—this much he said.

*haec Ciceronis fere*—this is very much what Cicero said.

*atque etiam hoc animadvertendum est*—there is this also to notice.

*ad reliqua pergamus, progrediamur*—to pass on.

*hic (ille) locus obscurus est*—this passage is obscure.

*hoc in medio relinquamus*—let us leave that undecided.

*sed labor longius*—but that takes us too far.

*non id ad vivum reseco* (Lael. 5. 8)—I do not take that too strictly.

*nonnulla praedicam*—I wish to say a few words in preface.

*ut omittam c. Accus.*  
*cum discessi, -eris, -eritis ab*  
*praeter c. Accus.* } putting aside, except.

*ut praetermittam c. Acc. c. Inf.* } to except the fact  
*praeterquam quod* or *nisi quod* } that . . .

*hoc in promptu est* } it is clear, evident.  
*hoc in aperto est* }  
*hoc est luce (sole ipso) clarius*—this is as clear as daylight.  
*hoc facile intellegi potest* } that is self-evident, goes without  
*hoc per se intellegitur* } saying.  
*hoc sua sponte appāret* }  
*ex quo intellegitur or intellegi* }  
*potest, debet* } from this it appears, is  
*ex quo perspicuum est* } apparent.  
*inde patet, appāret* }  
*apparet et exstat* } it is quite manifest.  
*exstat atque eminet* }  
*si quaeris, si verum quaerimus*—to put it exactly.  
*id quod maximum, gravissimum* }  
*est* } the main point.  
*quod caput est* }  
*quod maius est*—what is more important.  
*testis est, testatur, declarat* }  
*documento, indicio est (without* } this shows, proves . . .  
*demonstr. pron. but cui rei* }  
*documento, indicio est)* }  
*sed hoc nihil (sane) ad rem*—but this is not to the point.  
*aliquid (τι) dicis (opp.)* } there is something in what you  
*nihil dicis)* } say; you are more or less  
*est istuc quidem aliquid* } right.  
*audio, fateor*—I admit it, say on.  
*ain tu?*—do you think so? are you in earnest?  
*nonne?*—is it not so?  
*quorsum haec (dicis)?*—what do you mean?  
*male (opp. bene) narras (de)*—I am sorry to hear . . .  
*monstra dicis, narras*—it is incredible.  
*clarius loquere*—speak up, please.

*mihī crede (not crede mihī)*—believe me.  
*per me licet*—I have no objection.  
*rem acu tetigisti*—you have hit the nail on the head.  
*ita prorsus existimo*—that is exactly what I think.  
*ita res est*—it is so.  
*res ita (aliter) se habet*—the matter stands so (otherwise).  
*nec mirum, minime mirum (id quidem), quid mirum?*—no  
wonder.  
*neque id mirum est or videri debet*—there is nothing strange  
in that.  
*et recte (iure, merito)* }  
*et recte (iure) quidem* } quite rightly.  
*recte, iure id quidem* }  
*neque immerito (iniuria)* } and rightly too.  
*neque id immerito (iniuria)* }  
*meo (tuo, suo) iure* } with perfect right.  
*iusto iure* }  
*iustissime, rectissime* } legitimately; with the fullest  
*optimo iure (cf. summo iure)* } right.  
p. 237).  
*macte virtute (esto or te esse iubeo)*—good luck to you.  
*sed manum de tabula!*—but enough!



## INDEX

[The numbers refer to the pages. *f.* = "and following pages."]

- ABALIENARE, 59  
abdere, 92, 142  
abdicare, 232  
abdicere, 189  
abducere, 76, 80, 182  
aberrare, 130  
abesse, 11, 21  
abhinc, 21  
abhorrere, 80, 161  
abicere arma, 267  
    ad pedes, 28  
    cogitationes, 77  
    consilium, 84  
    dolorem, 147  
    memoriam, 88  
    spem, 154  
    timorem, 150  
abire, 16  
abolere, 90  
abominari, 182  
abrogare, 159  
abrumperere, 195  
absolutus, 77, 114  
abstergere, 149  
abstinere, 168  
absumere, 5, 37  
abundantia, 55  
abuti, 73 (note)  
accelerare, 254  
accendere animum, 151  
accepimus (we know), 111  
accepti et expensi ratio, 204  
accessus et recessus, 5  
accipere in bonam partem, 138  
accipere omen, 184  
    hospitio, 192  
acclamare, 119 (note)  
acclivis, 3  
accuratus, 121 (note)  
accusatio, 241  
acerbitas, 133 (note)  
acies, 261  
    oculorum, 27  
acquiescere, 92  
acroama, 117 (note)  
actio, 103, 117  
actor, 119  
actum agere, 71  
actum est de, 40, 153  
actus (act of a play), 117  
acu rem tangere, 281  
adamasse, 92, 156  
addere gradum, 15  
addicere alicui, 184  
adesse alicui, 54  
    animo, 75, 152  
    sacris, 178  
adiacere mari, 9  
aditus, 196  
admirabilia, 158  
admiratio, 158  
adulterini nummi, 202  
adumbrare, 77 (note), 125  
adventicius, 29  
adventus, 14

adversae res, 50  
 adversa fortuna, 50  
 adverso flumine, 5  
 advesperascit, 22  
 advocatus, 241 (note)  
 aedificare, 1, 208  
 aedificator, 2, 208  
 aegre ferre, 146, 162  
 aegritudo, 148  
 aegrotare, 36  
 aequare solo, 259  
 aequi iniqui, 63  
 aer, 6, 31  
 aes alienum, 207  
   signatum, 202  
 aestas, 22  
 aestimare, 175  
 aestiva castra, 255  
 aestus, 5, 36  
 aetas, 32  
 aetas heroica, 112 (note)  
   militaris, 246  
   puerilis, 97  
   recentior, 111  
 affectio, 145  
 afficere, 61 (note)  
 affirmare, 83  
 afflictae res, 42, 50  
 ager, 189, 208  
 agere alias res, 75  
   animam, 39  
   causam, 222, 240  
   cum populo, 216  
   fabulam, 118  
   iure, lege, 238  
   partes, 119  
   vigilias, 256  
   vineas, 258  
 agitare equum, 15  
 agitur caput, 242  
   vita, 53  
 agmen, 254  
 agrestis vita, 96  
 agricultura, 208 *f.*  
 ain tu? 280  
 alienare, 59  
 Alpes, 3  
 altercari, 136  
 alternis diebus, 23  
 ambages, 122  
 ambigua verba, 136  
 ambitio, ambitus, 230  
 ambitus verborum, 135  
 ambulare, 197  
 amicitia, 62  
 amicus pop. rom., 271  
 amor, 162  
 amplecti, 26 (note)  
 amputare errorem, 81  
 anatocismus, 206  
 ancora, 275  
 angor, 150  
 angustiae, 42  
 anima, 31, 39  
 animadversio censoria, 234  
 animadvertere, 27 (note)  
 animalia, 2  
 animantia, 2  
 animata, 2  
 animus, 59 (note)  
 annales, 112  
 annonae, 209  
 annotare, 142  
 annus, 21, 33  
 ansa, 49  
 antiquare, 217  
 antiquitas generis, 214  
 antiquitatem redolere, 124  
 antiquitates, 19 (note)  
 antiquitatis memoria, 112  
 antiquus, 157  
 aperire se, 179 (note)  
   viam, 11  
 apparare, 192  
 apparatus belli, 251  
 se applicare, 97, 101  
 appropinquare, 17  
 apud, coram, 122 (note)  
 aqua, 4  
 aquae ductio, 4 (note)  
 aquatum ire, 257  
 arae focicae, 186  
 arbitrium, 47  
 arbores, 2, 209  
 arcessitum dictum, 132  
 ardere, 5  
 ardere amore, 157  
   cupiditate, 166

ardere odio, 162  
   studio, 158  
 argentum, 202  
 argumentum, (proof) 106, (subject)  
   117  
 aries, 258  
 arithmetica, 113 (note)  
 arma, 311  
 armare navem, 271  
 armatura levis, 247  
 ars, 114  
 ars ludicra, 117  
   dicendi, 120  
 artes ingenuae, 91  
 artus, 24  
 aspergere infamiam, 69, 70  
   sales, 132  
 asperitas caeli, 6  
 ex asse, 200  
 assidere, 37  
 assiduus, 194  
 assuescere, 200  
 astra, 7  
 astrologus, 113 (note)  
 atrium, 186 (note)  
 attendere, 75  
 auctorem esse, 85  
 auctores consilii publici, 213  
 auctoritas, 64, 100  
 aucupari, 58  
 aucupium verborum, 140  
 audire bene, 68  
 audientes, 143 (note)  
 audientia, 123, 195  
 auditione accepisse, 66  
 augurari, 79  
 augurium, 184  
 aura, 219  
 auris, 24  
 auspicari, 184  
 auspicium, 184  
 australis, 9 (note)  
 autumnale tempus, 21  
 auxilia, 247 (note)  
 auxilium, 54  
 aversus, 173  
 axis, 7  
 BARBA, 25  
 beata vita, 50  
 beatitas, 50 (note)  
 belligerare, 248  
 bellum, 246 *f.*  
 bellum pro religionibus susceptum,  
   179  
 bene audire, 68  
   latine, 94 (note)  
   tibi, 190  
   vertere, 62  
   vivere, 191  
 beneficium, 59  
 benevolus, 57  
 bibere, 190  
 bibliotheca, 142  
 biduo serius, 23  
 bilem evomere, 163  
 bis die, 23  
 in bivio, 12  
 blanditia, 74  
 boni (cives), 222  
 bonitas, 165  
 cui bono? 56  
 brachium, 26 (note)  
 CACHINNUS, 35  
 cadaver, 41 (note)  
 caelestia, 6, 113  
 caelum, 6  
 caerimoniae, 177  
 calamitas, 51  
 calcaria, 15, 97  
 calculi, 204  
 calida lavari, 4  
 caligo, 75  
 callum, 147 (note)  
 calor, 8  
 calumnia, 241  
 candidatus, 230 *f.*  
 canis, 210  
 canticum, 119  
 cantus, 116  
 capacitas, 75 (note)  
 capessere, 211  
 capilli, 25  
 capita conferre, 196  
 capitalis, 162, 242  
 captare, 35  
 captio, 107

captivus, 270 *f.*  
 ut captus est, 75 (note)  
 caput, 24 (note)  
 carcer, 245  
 cardo caeli, 7  
 carere, 225  
 caritas, 209  
 carmen, 116  
 carus, 156  
 castigator, 176  
 castra, 255  
 casus, 20, 51  
 catena, 245  
 caterva, 119  
 caupo, 201 (note)  
 causa (cause), 44  
     (interest), 212  
     (process), 240  
     (situation), 43  
 cavere, 199, 238  
 cedere de iure, 237  
     fortuna, 52  
     tempori, 18  
 celare, 79  
 celebritas, 120  
 cena, 192  
 censor, 234  
 centesima usurae, 205  
 cernere hereditatem, 119  
 certiore facere, 67  
 certo, certe, 83 (note)  
 cervices, 25  
 ceteris rebus, 46  
 chorus, 119  
 cibarius, 190  
 cibus, 190  
 cicatrices, 268  
 cingulus, 7  
 circuitus, 135  
 circumferre oculos, 27  
 circumfluere, 55  
 circumfundere, 6, 17  
 circumsedere, 258  
 circumvenire, 264  
 citare, 239  
 citato equo, 15  
 citeriora, 178  
 civilis, 212 (note)  
 civitas, 214 *f.*  
 clades, 267 *f.*  
 clamare, 129  
 clamor, 129  
 classarii, 273  
 classicum, 257  
 classis, 272  
 claudere agmen, 253  
     aures, 24  
     fores, 186  
     oppidum, 258  
 claudicare, 129  
 clavum tenere, 211, 274  
 coagmentare, 105  
 codex, 204  
 coercere animum, 167  
     milites, 250  
 coetus, 194  
 cogitatio, 77, 78  
 cognitiones, 180  
 cohors, 256  
 colere agrum, 208  
     aliquem, 70  
     amicitiam, 62  
     deum, 177  
     fidem, 159  
     litteras, 92  
     virtutem, 164  
 colligere animum, 150  
     coniectura, 79  
     ex aliqua re, 106  
     gloriam, 68  
     gratiam, 58  
     invidiam, 161  
     laudem, 65  
     se, 37  
     stipem, 55  
     vasa, 257  
     vires, 30  
 collis, 3, 9  
 collocare fiduciam, 159  
     filiam, 198  
     insidias, 169  
     multitudinem, 189  
     pecuniam, 203  
     praesidium, 255  
     sedem, 189  
     studium, 70  
 colloquium, 196 *f.*  
 colonia, 229

comicus, 115 (note)  
 comitia, 217  
 commearere, 14  
 commeatus, 249  
 commemorare, 99  
 commendare, 68, 89  
 commenta, 76, 79  
 commentari, 121, 134  
 commentarii, 142  
 commenticius, 78  
 commercium linguae, 133  
 comminus, 264 *f.*  
 (non) committere ut, 243  
 commode dictum, 132  
 commodum, 56  
 communicare, 84 (note)  
 commutare, 242 (note)  
 commutationes, 21  
 comoedia, 115  
 comparare frumentum, 248  
     gloriam, 67  
 compensare, 57  
 competitor, 231  
 complecti animo, 76  
 complere, 146 (note)  
 complexus, 26 (note)  
 compos, 75, 152  
 composita verba, 139  
 compositio verborum, 135  
 comprobare, 106  
 comptus, 25  
 conatus, 86  
 concedere, 108  
 conciliare, 57, 64  
 concilium, 216  
 concinere, 109  
 concipere animo, 76, 78  
     ignem, 5  
     seelus, 166  
     vota, 182  
 concitare equum, 15  
 misericordiam, 155  
     navem, 274  
     odium, 162  
     risum, 35  
     seditionem, 223  
 conclamare ad arma, 228  
     ad libertatem, 228  
     ignem, 6  
 conclamare victoriam, 269  
 concludere, 107  
 conclusiuncula, 107  
 concoquere, 189  
 concubia nocte, 22  
 concupiscere, 69,  
 concurrere, 14, 260, 275  
 concursus, 263  
 condemno, 217  
 condere fructus, 209  
     in sepulcro, 40  
     leges, 219  
     lustrum, 234  
     poema, 115  
     urbem, 184, 208  
 condicio (match), 198  
 conducere, 228, 247  
 conducticius, 248  
 conductum esse mercede, 61  
 conferre capita, 196  
     operam, 70  
     pecuniam, 55  
     signa, 253 (note), 263  
     studium, 92  
 confidere, 159  
 conflagrare, 5  
 conflare bellum, 252  
     infamiam, 69, 70  
     odium, 162  
     periculum, 53  
 conflictari, 36, 51 (note)  
 confluere, 14  
 confutare, 106  
 conglutinare, 105  
 congressus, 194, 196  
 coniector, 38  
 coniectura, 79  
 coniuratio, 223  
 conivere, 27 (note)  
 connexum esse, 105  
 conqueri, 66  
 conquiescere, 92  
 conscendere equum, 14  
 conscientia, 174  
 consciscere, 39  
 consensus mundi, 1  
     omnium, 109  
 consentire, 109  
 consequentia, 107

- considerare, 85  
 consignare, 140  
 consilia et facta, 164  
 consilium capere, 84  
 consilium est ut, 87  
 consilium publicum, 235  
 consilium quo liber scriptus est, 87 (note)  
 consistere mente, 153  
 consolari, 54  
 conspirare, 223  
 constantia (consistency), 104  
 constare ex, 47  
 mente, 152  
 sibi, 110, 176  
 constat, 83  
 consternari, 15  
 constructio verborum, 135  
 consuetudo (habit), 200  
 (relation), 194  
 saeculi, 20  
 sermonis, 133  
 consul, 233  
 consulatus, 234  
 consulere famae, 68  
 in aliquem, 244  
 oraculum, 183  
 rei publicae, 212  
 saluti, 54  
 valetudini, 36  
 contaminare, 165  
 contemplatio, 103  
 contentus, 148  
 contestari, 181  
 contextus, 125  
 continens, 2, 10  
 contingere, 62  
 continuare magistratum, 231  
 continuatio, 105, 135  
 continuus, 23  
 contio, 122, 216 (note)  
 contionari, 261  
 contra dicere, 110  
 contrariae partes, 16  
 controversia, 108  
 contumacia, 151  
 contumelia, 168  
 convalescere, 37  
 convenientia et consensus, 1  
 convertere ex graeca, 134  
 in rem suam, 56  
 iter, 254  
 oculos, 27  
 odium in se, 161  
 se ad aliquem, 59 (note)  
 signa, 253  
 convivium, 192  
 copia orationis, 125  
 pugnandi, 260  
 verborum, 136  
 copiae, 247  
 cor, 157 (note)  
 coram, 122 (note), 196  
 cordi esse, 157  
 corrigere, 68 (note), 81, 96  
 corroborata aetas, 32  
 corrumpere tabulas, 242 (note)  
 corrumpi, 74  
 cotidianus sermo, 128, 133, 196  
 cras, 23  
 crassa Minerva, 97  
 creare, 1 (note)  
 creber sententiis, 125  
 credere, 203  
 creditor, 206  
 cremare, 5, 41  
 crimen, 242  
 crinis, 25  
 cruciari, 34, 147, 155  
 crudelitas, 156  
 crux, 245  
 cubitum ire, 37  
 cujas, 31  
 culmen, 3  
 culpa, 243  
 cultus, 96, 177  
 cumulus, 50, 146  
 cunabula, 43 (note)  
 cuneus, 265  
 cuniculus, 259  
 cupere, 58  
 cura, 150  
 curae esse, 157  
 habere, 157  
 cursationes, 37  
 currere, 120  
 curriculum, 31 (note)  
 curru vehi, 14

- cursus (navis), 274  
 (stellae), 7  
 (vitae), 31  
 custodia, 245  
 DAMNARE, 243  
 damnum, 57  
 dare ansas ad, 49  
 consilium, 85  
 copiam, 48  
 crimini, 66  
 dotem, 198  
 epistulam, 144  
 fabulam, 118  
 facultatem, 48  
 fenori, 203  
 fidem, 159  
 frenos, 15  
 in praeceps, 52  
 iusiurandum, 179  
 laudi, 65  
 locum, 48  
 ludos, 41  
 mandatum, 62  
 manus, 26  
 negotium, 62  
 nomen, 246  
 nuptum, 198  
 occasionem, 48  
 operam, 70  
 optionem, 82  
 oraculum, 183  
 palmam, 61  
 poenam, 244  
 responsum, 131, 183  
 salutem, 197  
 se ignaviae, 73  
 se in conspectum, 28  
 se in fugam, 266  
 se in viam, 12  
 se somno, 37  
 senatum, 235  
 signum, 260  
 spatium, 18  
 stipendium, 248  
 suspensionem, 160  
 tempus, 18  
 terga, 266  
 tesseram, 256  
 dare testes, 239  
 vela, 274  
 veniam, 243  
 verba, 171  
 debere, 203, 206  
 debitor, 206  
 decedere, de iure, 237  
 de officio, 172  
 de potestate, 232  
 de provincia, 14 (note)  
 de scena, 118  
 de sententia, 78  
 loco, 14  
 vita, 14 (note), 39  
 decessus, 5  
 declamatio, 129 (note)  
 declarare, 233  
 declinare de via, 12  
 declivis, 3  
 decrescere, 6  
 decretum, 101  
 decurrere, 16  
 se dedere desidiae, 73  
 libidinibus, 167  
 litteris, 92  
 victori, 259  
 vitiis, 165  
 deditio, 259  
 deducere a fera vita, 96  
 coloniam, 186 (note)  
 de capite, 24, 186 (note)  
 de domo, 186  
 de fide, 159  
 de sententia, 78, 186 (note)  
 naves, 186 (note)  
 deesse occasioni, 48  
 officio, 48 (note), 172  
 defectio solis, 6  
 defendere, 168, 215  
 deferre honores, 232  
 imperium, 226  
 negotium, 62  
 palmam, 61  
 principatum, 216  
 regnum, 227  
 defervescere, 32, 163  
 defigere, 251 (note)  
 definitio, 104  
 defunctus, 216

- defungi calamitatibus, 51  
 periculis, 53  
 sua morte, 39 (note)  
 degenerare, 165  
 degere, 31, 55  
 deicere de gradu, 152, 216  
 de possessione, 187  
 iugum, 228  
 oculos, 27  
 se, 16  
 spe, 154  
 delabi, 100  
 delectari, 74, 146  
 delenire, 74  
 delere, 70, 89,  
 deleri incendio, 5  
 deliberare, 18, 85  
 delicatus, 190  
 deliciae, 157  
 deligare, 245, 275  
 demere, 81, 160  
 deminutio capitis, 25 (note)  
 demoliri, 185  
 demorari, 277  
 denegare, 62  
 denique, 277  
 denuntiare, 170  
 depellere de gradu, 152, 216  
 de sententia, 78  
 dolorem, 147  
 famem, 34  
 depellere vim vi, 169  
 depingere, 76, 126  
 deponere consilium, 84  
 dolorem, 147  
 errorem, 81  
 inimicitias, 63  
 librum, 142 (note)  
 luctum, 149  
 magistratum, 232  
 memoriam, 88  
 spem, 154  
 vestem, 189 (note)  
 depravari, 165  
 deprecari, 245  
 deprehendere, 144, 239  
 deprimere, 275  
 deridere, 171  
 derivare, 4, 137 (note)
- derogare, 206, 218  
 descendere, 15, 54 (note), 177, 260  
 desciscere, 80, 165  
 describere, 113  
 descriptio civitatis, 210  
 juris, 238  
 temporum, 22  
 terrae, 112  
 vitae, 31  
 deserere agros, 208  
 honestatem, 165  
 officium, 172  
 proelium, 262  
 deserta loca, 3  
 desiderium, 157  
 desidia, 73  
 desipere, 146  
 desperare, 153 (note)  
 desperatio, 153  
 despiciere, 6 (note), 42  
 despondere, 198  
 destringere, 251  
 desudare, 71, 98  
 deterreri, 78, 84  
 detrahere, 68  
 detrectare, 246, 260  
 detrimentum, 57  
 deturbare animum, 152  
 deus, 177 *f.*  
 deverti, 193  
 devincire, 59, 166  
 dextra, 197  
 dialectica, 102  
 dicendi ars, 120  
 dicere causam,  
 contra aliquem, 110  
 dictatorem, 233  
 diem, 237  
 falsa, 171  
 in aurem, 24  
 sacramentum, 246  
 sententiam, 79  
 dicio, 271  
 dictator, 233  
 dictum, 132  
 dies, 22  
 differre diem, 87  
 ignem, 6  
 in tempus, 18

- difficultas, 42, 133 (note)  
 diffluere, 4, 74  
 diffundere, 2, 17  
 diffusus, 81, 105  
 digere, 180, 140  
 digitus, 25  
 dignitas, 64  
 digressio, 128  
 diiudicare, 80, 108  
 dilatare, 261  
 dilectus (subst.), 246  
 diligens, 80, 113, 133  
 diluculum, 22  
 dimicare, 262 *f.*  
 dimittere concilium, 217  
 e manibus, 26, 49, 267  
 exercitum, 247  
 hostes, 267  
 impunitum, 245  
 occasionem, 48  
 senatum, 236  
 in directum, 16  
 dirigere, 12, 175  
 dirimere, 108, 236  
 diripere, 259  
 discedere a latere, 25  
 a lege, 218  
 a sententia, 78  
 a signis, 254  
 a virtute, 165  
 ab armis, 250  
 ab officio, 172  
 e loco, 13  
 ex animo, 89  
 in diversas partes, 16  
 in duas partes, 221  
 in sententiam, 236  
 victum, 267  
 vita, 39  
 discessio, 236  
 discordia, 223  
 discrepare, 109  
 disertus, 121  
 disiungere, 11  
 displicere sibi, 132  
 disponere eleganter, 103  
 equites, 261  
 praesidia, 255  
 dispositio, 130
- disputare, 107  
 disputatio, 107  
 dissentire, 109, 221  
 disserere, 102, 108  
 dissidere, 109, 162  
 dissimulare, 170 (note)  
 dissimulatio, 170  
 dissipare, 192  
 dissolvere acta, 219  
 aes alienum, 207  
 amicitiam, 63  
 argentariam, 204  
 crimina, 242  
 nomina, 207  
 pontem, 208  
 dissuere, 63  
 distare, 11  
 distentum esse, 72  
 distineri et divelli, 147  
 diurnus, 13  
 diurnitas, 23, 149  
 diverbium, 119  
 diversus, 16  
 dives, 125 (note)  
 dividere, 10, 104  
 divinitus, 178  
 divitiae, 55  
 sub divo, 6  
 divortium, 199  
 divulgari, 67  
 docti, 94  
 doctrina, 94, 102  
 documentum, 280  
 ex dodrante, 200  
 dolere, 146  
 dolor, 146  
 dolus, 171  
 domesticas, 112  
 domicilium, 188  
 dominatio, 221, 226 (note)  
 dominatus unius, 221  
 domus, 186  
 donum, 239  
 dormire, 37  
 dos, 198  
 sine dubio, 82  
 dubitatio, 82  
 ducere aliquo, 12  
 animam, 31

- ducere argumentum, 106  
 bellum, 252  
 familiam, 120 (note)  
 fossam, 256  
 funus, 40  
 infra se, 65  
 initium, 43  
 laudi, 65  
 nomen, 137  
 originem, 31  
 spiritum, 31  
 tempus, 18  
 uxorem, 198  
 ductus aquae, 4  
 dupliciter dici, 138  
  
 EDAX, 189  
 edere animam, 39  
 exemplum, 100  
 fabulam, 118  
 librum, 140  
 in lucem, 30  
 munus gladiatorium, 120  
 oraculum, 183  
 risum, 35  
 spiritum, 39  
 testes, 239  
 in vulgus, 66  
 edicere, 235, 239  
 ediscere, 88 (note)  
 edita loca, 3  
 educari, 96  
 educere exercitum, 260  
 gladium, 251  
 efferre fruges, 2  
 laudibus, 65  
 se insolentius, 151  
 signa, 253 (note)  
 efferri fortuna, 50  
 funere, 40  
 gaudio, 146  
 iracundia, 163  
 efficere legiones, 247  
 efflorescere, 45  
 effluere, 89  
 effrenatus, 167  
 effugere, 26 (note)  
 effundere dolorem, 147  
 iram, 163  
  
 effundere lacrimas, 35  
 sanguinem, 40  
 effusa fuga, 146 (note), 266  
 laetitia, 146  
 effusae habenae, 15  
 effusi imbres, 7  
 sumptus, 146, 191  
 egestas, 55  
 egressio, 128  
 eicere e civitate, 225  
 e senatu, 234  
 histrionem, 119  
 in exilium, 225  
 in litus, 274  
 sententiam, 102  
 elaborare, 71  
 elatio orationis, 124  
 elegantia, 102, 124  
 elementa, 1, 97  
 elidere, 72 (note)  
 eligere, 99  
 elogium, 41  
 eloquens, 121  
 eluere, 70  
 eluvio, 4 (note)  
 emendate scribere, 135  
 emere, 201  
 emergere, 4  
 emetiri, 12  
 emigrare, 189  
 eminus, 251  
 emissio telorum, 262 (note)  
 eniti, 72  
 enodare, 137  
 enuntiatio, 135  
 epicus, 113 (note)  
 epistula, 144  
 epulae, 192  
 equestri loco natus, 214  
 equus, 14  
 erigere ad spem, 154  
 animum, 151  
 aures, 24  
 turrim, 208  
 eripere dolorem, 148  
 e periculo, 53  
 errorem, 81  
 libertatem, 227  
 potestatem, 48

- eripere spem, 154  
 erogare, 202, 218  
 errantes stellae, 7  
 error, 81  
 errores Ulixis, 12  
 eructare, 8  
 erudire, 96  
 eruditus, 93  
 erumpere, 35 (note)  
 eruptio, 8  
 escendere, 122  
 esse (live), 32  
 esurire, 34  
 eventus, 44  
 evertere bonis, 188  
 oppidum, 259  
 rationem, 104  
 rem publicam, 224  
 evincere, 106  
 evocare copias, 247  
 evocati, 247 (note)  
 evomere, 8, 163  
 exacta aetas, 33  
 exactio, 242 (note)  
 exaggerata oratio, 124  
 exalbescere, 149  
 exanclare, 50  
 exanimari, 31, 140  
 excedere dicimum annum, 33  
 ex pueris, 32  
 finibus, 10  
 modum, 174  
 vita, 39  
 excepti et expensi tabula, 204  
 excerptere, 142  
 excidere oppidum, 259  
 excipere hospitio, 193  
 impetum, 262  
 vulnus, 268  
 excitare a mortuis, 177  
 ad spem, 154  
 ad virtutem, 165, 261  
 admirationem, 158  
 animum, 151  
 bellum, 252  
 clamores, 118  
 e somno, 38  
 ignem, 5  
 libidinem, 167  
  
 excitare motus, 145  
 odium, 162  
 turrim, 208  
 excolere, 95  
 excrucari, 174  
 excubare, 256  
 excultus, 95  
 excurrere, 10, 13  
 excursio, 256, 258  
 excusare, 37  
 excutere iugum, 228  
 risum, 35  
 exedere, 51 (note)  
 exemplum, 99, 143  
 exercere artem, 114  
 crudelitatem, 156  
 imperium, 187  
 inimicitias, 63  
 iudicium, 51 (note)  
 metalla, 51 (note)  
 navem, 51 (note)  
 vectigalia, 51  
 exercitatus in armis, 248  
 in dicendo, 121  
 in re publica, 213  
 exercitus, 247 f.  
 exhaurire, 40  
 exheredari, 199  
 exigere fabulam, 118  
 nomina, 207  
 pecuniam, 203  
 existimatio, 68, 69 (note), 220  
 existimator, 114  
 exitium, 52  
 exitus, 39, 44  
 expedire arma, 250  
 navem, 275  
 negotium, 72  
 salutem, 54  
 expedita oratio, 124  
 expeditus ad, 121, 123  
 expellere ex urbe, 225  
 regno, 227  
 expendere poenas, 244  
 experientia, 90 (note)  
 experiri, 90  
 expetere poenas, 163  
 expiare manes, 182  
 scelus, 166

expiari, 244 (note)  
 explere animum, 163  
   cupiditates, 167  
   famem, 34  
   odium, 162  
 expleta forma, 78  
 explicare aciem, 261  
   frontem, 25  
   scholas, 102  
   sententias, 125  
   volumen, 140  
 explodere, 119  
 explorare, 254  
 explorata victoria, 269  
 exploratum habere, 83  
 explosae sententiae, 102  
 expolitus, 95  
 exponere merces, 202  
   praemium, 61  
   vitam, 126  
 exportare, 202  
 exposcere signum, 260  
 expostulare, 66  
 exprimere, 77 (note)  
 exprimere ad verum, 115  
   litteras, 140  
   verbis, 125  
   verbum e verbo, 134  
 exprobrare, 66  
 expugnare, 259  
 exsanguis oratio, 124  
 exsequiae, 40  
 exsequi consilium, 86  
   funus, 40  
   negotium, 72, 201  
   officium, 171  
 exsibilare, 118  
 exsilium, 225  
 exsolvere, 207  
 expectatio, 98, 155  
 extinguere bellum, 50 (note)  
   motus, 145  
   odium, 162  
 extirpare humanitatem, 156  
   perturbationes, 167  
   vitia, 166  
 exstruere aedificium, 208  
   mensas, 192  
   vallum, 256

exsulare, 225  
 exsultare, 146  
 exsurgere, 124  
 extendere fines, 10  
 extenuare, 128  
 exterminare, 225  
 extollere in maius, 128  
   laudibus, 65  
 extorquere, 26, 81  
 extrahere bellum, 252  
   errorem, 81  
   religionem, 179  
 exturbare, 188  
 exuere armis, 257  
   humanitatem, 156  
   servitutem, 228  
   vestem, 189

FABRICATOR mundi, 1  
 fabula, 112, 118  
 fabulam fieri, 67  
 fabularis historia, 112  
 fabulator, 115  
 facere aes alienum, 207  
   amicitiam, 62  
   argentariam, 204  
   audientiam, 123, 196  
   bellum, 252 *f.*  
   certiorem, 67  
   coniecturam, 79  
   contra rem publicam, 223  
   copiam, 48  
   cum aliquo, 221  
   cuneum, 265  
   detrimentum, 57  
   discessionem, 236  
   divitem, 55  
   eruptionem, 258  
   excursionem, 258  
   expectationem, 155  
   facinus, 166  
   fidem, 160  
   foedus, 271  
   fugam, 266  
   funus, 40  
   gratum, 58  
   heredem, 199  
   hospitium, 193  
   iacturam, 57 (note)

facere ignem, 5  
   indutias, 270  
   initium, 43  
   insidias, 169  
   irruptionem, 259  
   iter, 12  
   iussa, 62  
   iusta, 40  
   lectisternium, 183  
   leges, 219  
   ludos, 119  
   mentionem, 67  
   mercaturam, 201  
   messem, 209  
   modos, 117  
   moram, 87  
   naufragium, 274  
   navem, 273  
   officium, 171  
   opera, 258  
   opus, 71  
   orbem, 265  
   pactionem, 271  
   periculum, 53  
   periurium, 180  
   poema, 115  
   potestatem pugnandi, 48 (note),  
     260  
   potestatem sui, 48, 196  
   proelium, 261  
   quaestum, 202  
   sacra, 182  
   scelus, 166  
   sementem, 209  
   spem, 153  
   sponsionem, 160  
   stipendia, 248  
   stragem, 268  
   suae dicionis, 271  
   summam, 205  
   sumptum, 191  
   testamentum, 199  
   turrim, 208  
   vallum, 256  
   verba, 122, 136  
   verbum nullum, 138  
   versuram, 203  
   versus, 115  
   viam, 11

facere vim, 169  
   vota, 182  
 facessere, 73  
 facete dicere, 132  
 facilitas, 193  
 facinus, 166  
 facta et consilia, 164  
 factio, 220  
 factum sui iuris, 32  
 faex populi, 215  
 fallacia, 171  
 fallere, 81, 160  
   spem, 154  
 falsae tabulae, 242  
 fama, 66  
 fames, 34  
 familia (histrionum), 118, 120  
   (schola), 102  
 familiaris homo, 63  
   res, 187  
   sermo, 133  
 familiaritas, 63, 194  
 fas, 238  
 fasces praeferre, 234  
 fasti 22  
 favere, 58, 219  
 favor, 58, 219  
 febris, 36  
 felicitas, 50  
 fenerari, 203  
 fenori dare, 203  
 fenus, 206  
 fera, 264  
 ferire foedus, 271  
   frontem, 25  
   hostias, 182  
   securi, 245  
 ferre arma, 246  
   auxilium, 54  
   centuriam, 231  
   condiciones, 270  
   et agere, 257  
   expensum, 204  
   fruges, 2  
   in maius, 128  
   in oculis, 28  
   legem, 211  
   opem, 54  
   personam, 119

- ferre poenam, 244  
 prae se, 94, 170  
 repulsam, 231  
 salutem, 54  
 signa, 253  
 suffragium, 217  
 victoriam, 269  
 ferri impetu caeco, 176  
 instinctu, 116  
 libidine, 167  
 ferro ignique, 257  
 fessus, 12  
 fides, 159, 206  
 fides rerum, 112  
 fidibus discere, 116  
 fiducia, 159  
 figere oculos, 27  
 filia, 198  
 fines, 10  
 fingere animo, 77  
 verba, 137  
 vultum, 29  
 fingendi ars, 117  
 finis, 40, 43  
 finitimum esse, 10  
 firmare, 256  
 firmata aetas, 32  
 ut fit, 201  
 flagitium, 166 (note)  
 flagrare bello, 252  
 cupiditate, 166  
 desiderio, 157  
 incendio, 5  
 invidia, 161  
 flamma, 5  
 flare, 8  
 flectere animum, 145  
 equum, 15  
 iter, 254  
 fletus, 35  
 florere aetate, 32  
 antiquitate, 214  
 arte dicendi, 121  
 auctoritate, 64  
 gratia, 58  
 laude, 67  
 opibus, 55  
 flores dicendi, 125  
 flos, 32, 209  
 flosculi, 136  
 fluctuari, 4  
 fluctus, 4  
 fluens oratio, 124  
 flumen, 4  
 pro aris et focis, 186  
 foedus, 270 *f.*  
 fons, 25 (note), 45  
 forensis lux, 98 (note)  
 fores, 186  
 foris, 186  
 forma, 78, 113  
 forma rei publicae, 210  
 formare verba, 137  
 formidines, 181  
 fortis, 264  
 fortuna, 51  
 fortunae, 55, 188  
 forum fugere, 212  
 fossa, 256  
 fragor, 8  
 frangere animum, 151  
 cervices, 25  
 fidem, 160  
 pacem, 270  
 fraus, 57 (note)  
 freni, 15  
 frequentare domum, 185  
 scholam, 97  
 triumphum, 269  
 frigere, 85, 92 (note)  
 frigus, 8  
 frondescere, 2  
 frons, 25  
 fructus, 56, 209  
 fruges, 2  
 frugi esse, 187 (note)  
 frumentum, 209, 249  
 sine fuco, 171  
 fuga, 266  
 fugare, 266  
 fugere, 267  
 me fugit, 82  
 fulmen, 8  
 fundamentum, 208  
 fundere et fugare, 266  
 fundere fruges, 2  
 versus, 115  
 fundi (property), 188

- funeris oratio, 41  
 fungi munere, 232  
 suo officio, 171  
 supremo officio, 40  
 funus, 40  
 furiae, 174  
 furor, 164  
 in futurum, 20  
 GALEA, 250  
 gaudium, 146  
 gemma, 2  
 generare, 2, 31  
 genere Gallus, 31  
 genus dicendi, 123  
 vitae, 98  
 (genus), 104  
 geographia, 113  
 geometria, 113  
 gestare in manibus, 26  
 sinu, 157  
 gestire, 146  
 gestum agere, 129  
 gignere, 2  
 gladiatorium munus, 120  
 gladius, 251  
 glare, 11  
 gloria, 67  
 gradus, 15  
 graece loqui, 134  
 grammaticus, 135  
 grammatista, 135 (note)  
 granditas, 124  
 grates, 60, 181  
 gratia, 59, 219  
 gratus, 60  
 gratulari, 197  
 gratus, 60  
 grave caelum, 6  
 grex, 118, 210  
 gubernacula rei publicae, 211  
 gubernaculum, 274  
 gurgis, 4  
 gustare, 93  
 gymnici ludi, 120  
 HABENAE, 15  
 habitare, 188  
 habitus animi, 145  
 hactenus, 279  
 haerere, 129  
 equo, 15  
 in animo, 89, 100  
 in complexu, 26 (note)  
 in tergis, 267  
 haesitare, 129  
 hasta, 251  
 haurire calamitatem, 50  
 e fontibus, 45  
 luctum, 149  
 voluptates, 74  
 haustus, 34  
 hebescere, 73  
 hebetes sensus, 29  
 herbae, 2  
 in herbis esse, 209  
 hereditas, 199  
 heroicus, herous, 112 (note)  
 hesternus dies, 23  
 hiberna, 255  
 hiems, 22  
 historia, 111  
 historicus, 111 (note)  
 histrio, 119  
 hodie, 23  
 homines huius aetatis, 34  
 honestas, 165  
 honor, 215  
 hora, 23  
 horrere, 25  
 hortus, 4  
 hospitium, 192  
 hostia, 182  
 huc et illuc, 16  
 humanae res, 42  
 humanitas, 96, 156  
 humi, 17  
 humiles res, 77  
 ICERE foedus, 271  
 ici fulmine, 8  
 idiota, 114 (note)  
 idoneus locus, 256  
 ventus, 273  
 ignarus, 83  
 ignavia, 73  
 ignis, 5  
 ignominia, 70



- illata vis, 116  
 illecebrae, 74  
 illudere, 64, 171  
 illustris, 214  
 imago, 7  
 imbecillitas, 75  
 imber, 7  
 imbuere, 103 (note)  
 imitari, 100  
 imitatio, 115  
 imminere, 170 (note)  
 imminuere auctoritatem, 64  
   famam, 68  
   fidem, 159  
   gratiam, 220  
 immodestia, 250  
 immolare, 182  
 immortalitas, 68, 106  
 immunitas, 239  
 immutatio, 139  
 impeditus, 13  
 impendere, 25 (note), 170 (note)  
 imperare, 246  
 imperator, 231  
 imperitus, 91  
 imperium, 250  
 impertire civitatem, 214  
   laudem, 65  
   salutem, 197  
 impetrare, 62, 86  
 impetus, 262  
 impietas, 180  
 implacabilis, 162  
 imponere in navem, 273  
 importari, 202  
 impotens dominatio, 227  
 impotens sui, 167  
 imprudens, 255  
 impunitus, 245  
 impurus, 124 (note)  
 inanima, 2  
 incendere, 5  
 incendium, 5  
 inceptum, 86  
 incertus, 86  
 incidere in aes alienum, 207  
   in aetatem, 34  
   in aliquem, 14  
   in manus, 26  
 incidere in mentionem, 67  
   in morbum, 36  
   in sermonem, 195  
   in vituperationem, 66  
 incidere in aes, 218  
   linum, 144  
   nervos, 72  
 incipere, 43  
 incitare, 166  
 incitatio mentis, 158  
 inclinare, 235  
 includere, 128  
 incognitus, 239  
 incolere, 188 (note)  
 incommodum, 57  
 inconditus, 116, 123  
 inconstantia, 109  
 incorruptus, 29  
 increbrescere, 66, 263 (note)  
 inculta loca, 3  
 incumbere, 70, 212  
 incunabula, 43  
 incursio, 262 (note)  
 incutere, 149, 179  
 indagare, 137  
 index, 141  
 indicare (se), 79 (note)  
 indicio est, 280  
 indicta causa, 241  
 indignatio, 164  
 indignitas, 162  
 indoles, 98, 176  
 inducere animum, 86  
   in mores, 200  
   in scenam, 118  
   in spem, 154  
   verbum, 137  
 induere galeam, 250  
   personam, 119  
   vestem, 189  
 industria, 70, 87  
 indutiae, 270 *f.*  
 inedia, 34  
 ineleganter, 103  
 ineptiae, 76  
 ineptus, 133  
 inerrantes stellae, 7  
 inexorabilis, 59 (note)  
 inexplabilis, 179

- iniuria, 52, 168  
 innatus, 77, 180  
 inopia, 55, 136  
 inops, 85  
 inquinata oratio, 124  
   vita, 166  
 inquisitio, 80  
 inscribere librum, 141  
   sepulcro, 41  
   statuas, 117  
 inscriptio, 141  
 insculptus, 180  
 insequente anno, 21  
 insequi hostes, 267  
 inserere, 128  
 insidiae, 169  
 insinuare se, 194  
 insistere, 16  
 insitus, 77, 180  
 insolentia, 151  
 inspicere libros, 184  
 instaurare, 120  
 instinctus, 116  
 institor, 201 (note)  
 instituere religiones, 179  
   sermonem, 195  
 institui, 96  
 instituta ac leges, 210  
 institutio, 97  
 ex instituto, 201  
 institutum, 176  
 instructa domus, 185  
 instruere aciem, 261  
   convivium, 192  
   insidias, 169  
   navem, 273  
 insula, 274  
 insusurrare, 24  
 integer, 47 (note)  
 integritas orationis, 124  
   sermonis, 134  
 intellegens, 114  
 intellegentia, 75  
 intellegere, 68  
 intemperans, 167  
 intempesta nox, 22  
 intentus, 73  
 intercalaris, 22  
 intercessio, 234  
 infamia, 69  
 infaustus, 184  
 inferi, 177  
 inferre bellum, 253  
   calamitatem, 51  
   damnum, 57  
   gradum, 262  
   ignem, 258  
   infamiam, 69  
   iniuriam, 168  
   signa, 253 (note)  
   vim, 169  
 inferum mare, 5 (note)  
 infinitus, 99  
 infirmare, 159  
 infirmitas, 75  
 infitari, 278  
 infixus, 100, 147  
 inflare, 117  
 inflammare animos, 123  
   cupiditate, 69  
   odium, 162  
   urbem, 5  
 inflammatio, 158  
 inflatus, 116, 151  
 informare, 77, 96  
 ingenium, 75  
 ingerere, 258  
 ingratus, 59  
 ingravescere, 32, 37 (note), 209  
 inhaerere, 161  
 inhibere navem, 274  
 inhumatus, 41  
 inicere manus, 26  
   mentionem, 67  
   pontem, 208  
   spem, 153  
   timorem, 149  
 inimicitia, 63  
 iniquitas, 42, 51  
 inire consilium, 84  
   gratiam, 58, 220  
   magistratum, 232  
   rationem, 204  
   societatem, 193  
   viam, 12  
 initiari, 178  
 initium, 43  
 iniungere, 227

- intercipere, 144,  
intercludere, 249  
interdicere, 225  
interesse consiliis, 85  
    proelio, 262  
    rebus divinis, 177  
    scholis, 102  
interficere, 39  
interimere, 39 (note)  
interiora Asiae, 2  
interire, 34  
interitus, 52  
intermittere iter, 12  
    laborem, 71  
    proelium, 262  
    tempus, 18, 20  
internecio, 268  
internum mare, 5  
interpellare, 129  
interpolare, 142  
interponere causam, 44  
    fidem, 160  
    moram, 87  
    se bello, 252  
interpretari, 38, 135  
interpretatio nominum, 137  
interregnum, 224  
interrogare, 131  
interserere, 44  
intervallum, 11, 20  
intestinalis, 252  
intimus, 63  
intrare, 14  
introire, 14  
intueri, 28  
inundare, 4  
inurere, 70, 147  
inutilis, 57  
inventum, 101  
investigari, 80  
investigatio, 80, 113  
inveterascere, 200  
inveteratus, 79, 162  
invidia, 191, 220  
invitare, 192  
invitus, 97  
ira, 163  
iracundia, 163  
ire, 13  
irridere, 171  
irrigare, 4  
irrogare, 218 (note), 245  
irrupere, 259  
iter, 11, 12  
iterum, 20  
itinere (in), 13 (note)  
itineribus magnis, 254  
IACENT litterae, 92  
iacere ad pedes, 28  
    graviter, 36  
    in luctu, 148  
    in malis, 51  
    in oblivione, 90  
iacere ancoras, 275  
    fundamenta, 208  
    minas, 170  
    tela, 251  
    voces, 136  
iacet pecunia, 203  
    philosophia, 101  
iactare, 170  
iactari casibus, 51  
    febri, 36  
    fluctibus, 4  
    (nummus), 203  
iactatio, 223  
iactura, 57 (note)  
ianua, 186  
ieiuna oratio, 124  
ieiunium, 190  
iocare, 132  
iocus, 132  
iubere, 216  
iucunditas, 132  
iudex, 238  
iudicare, 243  
iudicium, 237  
iugis aqua, 4  
iungere amicitiam, 51 (note), 62 *f.*  
    copias, 247  
    dextram, 197  
    fluvium, 208  
iurare, 179  
iure, 281  
iuris consulti, 238  
ius, 237 *f.*  
ius gentium, 270

- ius vitae, 233  
iusiurandum, 179  
iussa, 62  
iusta facere, 40  
iustis de causis, 44  
iustitium, 238  
iustum bellum, 252  
iuvantibus dis, 181  
iuventus, 246  
KALENDAE, 144  
LABEFACTARE, 50 (note), 179  
labor, 71  
laborare fame, 34  
    inopia, 55  
    pecunia, 207  
    pedibus, 37  
labrum, 93  
lacerare, 192  
lacerti, 123  
lacrima, 35 *f.*  
lacteus orbis, 7  
laedere, 159  
laetitia, 146  
languor, 73  
lassitudo, 38  
latine doctus, 94  
    loqui, 134  
    scire, 134  
    scribere, 135  
latinitas, 134 (note)  
latinus, 94 (note), 134  
latitudo, 10  
latus (lungs), 123 (note)  
laudare, 65  
laudatio, 41 (note)  
laus, 64  
lavari, 4  
laxare, 209  
lectisternium, 183  
lector, 143 (note)  
lectus, 36, 38  
legare, 199  
legentes, 143  
legere, 142, 235  
leges dicendi, 135  
legio, 260 *f.*  
legis lator, 219  
legitimus, 231  
lenis vox, 129  
leo, 264 (note)  
lepos, 132  
lepus, 264 (note)  
levitas animi, 177  
lex, 210, 217  
liber populus, 211  
liber (book), 140  
libera republica, 19  
liberaliter, 96  
liberare obsidione, 259  
libere dicere, 122  
liberi, 30  
libertas, 228  
libido, 167  
libri Sibyllini, 184  
lictors, 233  
limare, 142  
lingua, 123, 133  
lis, 241  
littera, 97 (note), 140  
litterae, 91, 97, 140, 144, 172  
litterator, 135 (note)  
litteratus, 93  
loca, 3, 255  
locare aedes, 234  
    castra, 255  
    insidias, 169  
    opus, 208  
    vectigalia, 229  
loci argumentorum, 106  
locus (motive), 48  
    (rank), 214  
    (situation), 9, 11  
locutio, 136  
longa navis, 272  
longe lateque, 16, 81  
longinquus, 11  
longitudo, 10  
longus, 277  
luce clarius, 280  
lucere, 22  
lucrum, 206  
luctus, 149  
lucubrare, 71  
luculentus, 99  
ludere aliquem, 171  
ludi circenses, 119

ludi funebres, 41  
 ludibrium, 171  
 ludicra ars, 117  
 ludus discendi, 97  
 luere, 244  
 lumina dicendi, 125  
   litterarum, 93  
   (oculi), 28  
 luminibus obstruere, 208  
   officere, 208  
 luna, 6  
 lustrare, 247  
 lustrum, 234  
 lux, 22  
 luxuria, 191  
  
 MACHINARI, 52  
 mactare, 182  
 macte, 281  
 macula, 70  
 magister, 96  
 magistratus, 230 *f.*  
 magniloquentia, 124  
 maiestas, 242  
 male audire, 68  
 maleficium, 60  
 malum, 51  
 manare, 29, 45  
 mandare animo, 101  
   litteris, 140  
   memoriae, 88  
 mandatum, 62  
 manere, 78, 172  
 manes, 182  
 manum de tabula, 281  
 manus, 26, 142  
 mare medium, 5 (note)  
   nostrum, 5 (note)  
 maritimus, 5, 272  
 Mars, 263  
 materia, 130  
 mathematica, 113  
 matrimonium, 198  
 maturare, 17  
 matutinus, 23  
 mederi, 57  
 medicina, 54, 98  
 mediocritas, 175  
 e medio tollere, 40  
  
 meditata oratio, 121  
 mediterranea terra, 2  
 medium esse, 221  
 memoria, 88  
 mendacium, 115 (note), 171  
 mendicitas, 55  
 mendum, 143  
 mens, 76, 87  
 mensa, 192  
 mentio, 67  
 mentis compos, 152  
 mercator, 143 (note), 201 (note)  
 mercatoria navis, 272  
 mercatura, 201  
 merces, 202  
 merere, 248  
 mereri, 60  
 mergere, 275  
 meridianus, 23  
 meridies, 9  
 merito, 281  
 meritum, 60  
 messis, 209  
 metalla, 229  
 metari, 256  
 metere, 209  
 metiri, 175  
 metus, 149  
 micare, 8  
 migrare, 39  
 miles, 246 *f.*  
 militia, 247  
 Minerva, 97  
 ministrare, 190  
 minitari, 170  
 miscere, 224  
 misericordia, 155  
 mitigare, 23  
 mittere colonos, 229  
   consultum, 183  
   foras, 186  
   librum, 141  
   tela, 251  
   voce, 129  
 mobilis animus, 177  
 moderari, 15  
 moderatio, 175  
 modestia, 250  
 modi, 117

mutare consilium, 84  
   vestem, 189  
   vultum, 29  
 mutua accusatio, 242  
 mutuari, 203 *f.*  
  
 NARRARE, 128  
 narratio, 195 *f.*  
 natio, 31  
 natura adversante, 97  
   caeli, 6  
   et mores, 176  
   loci, 9, 254, 257  
   rerum, 1  
 naturalis, 102  
 natus, 31  
 naufragium, 274  
 nauta, 273  
 navalis pugna, 275 *f.*  
 navis, 272  
 necare, 34, 39  
 necessitudo, 194  
 nefas, 166 (note)  
 negare, 62  
 neglegere, 168, 172  
 negotiator, 201  
 negotium, 72, 201  
 nervus, 72 (note), 116  
 nescio quis, 141  
 nescius, 83  
 neutri generis esse, 138  
 neutrius partis esse, 221  
 niti, 71 *f.*  
 nobilis, 214  
 nobilitari, 68  
 nobilitas, 214  
 nocturnus, 23  
 nomen (debt), 207  
 nominare, 69, 99  
 nonae, 23  
 nota, 234  
 notare, 70  
 novae res, 223  
 novissimum agmen, 255  
 novus homo, 214  
   viam, 11  
 noxius, 57 (note)  
 nubere, 198  
 nudare, 258

modus, 174  
 moenia, 258  
 moleste ferre, 146  
 molestia, 133 (note)  
 momentum, 20 (note), 46  
 mons, 3  
 monstra, 76, 79  
 monstrare, 12  
 montuosa regio, 3  
 monumentum, 89, 93  
 mora, 87  
 mōratus, 175  
 morbus, 36  
 morderi, 174  
 mordicus, 27  
 morem gerere, 58  
 mores, 96, 175  
 mori, 39  
 his moribus, 20  
 nil moror, 236 (note)  
 mors, 39  
 morsus doloris, 147  
 mortuus, 41  
 mos, 200  
 motus animi, 145  
   stellarum, 7  
 moventes res, 188 (note)  
 movere admirationem, 158  
   bellum, 252 *f.*  
   bilem, 163 *f.*  
   castra, 253  
   de sententia, 78  
   lacrimas, 36  
   loco, 16  
   risum, 35  
   sensus, 29  
   suspicionem, 160  
   tribu, 234  
 ne multa, 277  
 multa nox, 22, 195  
 multare, 245  
 multum esse, 97, 127  
 mundanus civis, 222  
 mundus, 1  
 munire castra, 256  
   viam, 11  
 munitiones, 259  
 murus, 16  
 musica, 116

nudus, 251  
 numen, 177  
 numerare, 202  
 numeri, 117, 125  
 numerose cadere, 125  
 numerus, 117  
 nummus, 203 *f.*  
 nuncupare, 182  
 nundinae, 217  
 nuntius, 67, 198  
 nuptiae, 198  
 nutus, 1, 59

OB, 44  
 obducere, 147  
 obdurescere, 147  
 obiectum esse, 52  
 obire, 39  
 obligare, 59  
 obliquum agmen, 254  
 obliquus, 16  
 obliterari, 90  
 oblivio, 89 *f.*  
 obnoxium esse, 272  
 obnuntiare, 184  
 obortis lacrimis, 35  
 obrepere, 33  
 obscurus, 214  
 obsecrare, 61 *f.* (note)  
 obsequi, 61, 173  
 obserare, 186  
 obsidere, 257  
 obsides, 270  
 obsidio, 257  
 obsignare, 144, 199  
 obsitus, 189  
 obsolescere, 200  
 obsoletus, 136, 189  
 obstare, 56  
 obstringere beneficio, 59  
   fide, 160  
   religione, 179  
   scelere, 166  
 obstruere iter, 11  
   luminibus, 208  
   portas, 259  
 obterere, 28  
 obtinere dignitatem, 215 *f.*  
 imperium, 226

obtinere ius, 237  
   provinciam, 230  
 obtingere, 230  
 obtrectare, 68  
 obtundere, 24  
 obvenire, 230  
 obversari, 76  
 obviam, 14  
 obvolvere caput, 24  
 occaecari, 49, 167  
 occasio, 48  
 occasus solis, 6, 9  
 occidens, 9  
 occidentalis, 9 (note)  
 occidere, 39  
 occumbere, 39  
 occupare aliquem, 149  
   locum, 255  
   pecuniam, 203  
   regnum, 226  
 occupatus, 73, 211  
 occurrere, 263  
 Oceanus, 5  
 oculus, 27, 126  
 odium, 161 *f.*  
 odor, 209, 224  
 offendere, 14, 168 *f.*  
 offensio, 168 *f.*, 220  
 officiosus, 172  
 officium, 172 *f.*  
 oleum, 71  
 Olympia (ludi), 120  
 omen, 184 *f.*  
 omittere occasionem, 48  
   pila, 264  
   timorem, 150  
 onerare, 168  
 onerarius, 272  
 opem ferre, 54 *f.*  
 opera, 71 *f.* (note)  
 opes, 55 *f.*, 220  
 opifex, 1  
 opinio, 79 *f.*  
 oppetere, 39  
 oppidum, 9, 257 *f.*  
 opponere, 108 *f.*  
 opportunitas loci, 9  
 oppressum esse, 38, 207  
 oppugnare, 258 *f.*

optimates, 222 *f.*  
 optio, 82 *f.*  
 opus, 71 (note), 208,  
 oraculum, 183  
 orare, 61, 240  
 oratio, 122, 124 *f.*  
 orator, 122  
 orbare, 28  
 orbatus, 213  
 orbem facere, 265  
 orbis finiens, 6  
   lacteus, 7  
   medius, 7  
   signifer, 7  
   terrarium, 2  
 orcus, 177  
 ordo equester, 214  
   litterarum, 140  
   senatorius, 214  
   temporum, 112  
   verborum, 138  
 Orestes, 115 (note)  
 oriens, 9  
 orientalis, 9 (note)  
 origo, 31  
 oriundus, 31  
 ortus solis, 6  
 os, oris, 66  
 ostendere, 100, 154  
 ostium, 186  
 otiosus, 73, 212  
 otium, 73 *f.*, 212  
 ovum, 192

PABULATUM ire, 257  
 pacta merces, 61  
 pactio, 259, 270  
 paeninsula, 10  
 paenitere, 148 (note)  
 palliatus, 189  
 palma, 61  
 paludatus, 189  
 palus, 245  
 pandere, 274  
 panis, 190  
 pannus, 189  
 parare (with Infin.), 43  
   aliquid, 86  
   bellum, 251

parare copias, 247  
   insidias, 169  
   nuptias, 198  
   perniciem, 52  
 parcere, 71, 191  
 parentare, 183  
 pārēre (obey), 167  
 pārēre sibi, 68  
   verba, 137  
 victoriam, 269  
 intra parietes, 196  
 parietinae, 185 (note)  
 par pari referre, 60  
 pars, 46, 107  
 pars maior, 235  
 partes (party), 221  
   (rôle), 119  
   (species), 104  
 parte virili (pro), 30  
 particeps, 173  
 partiendi spinae, 105  
 partiri, 105  
 pascere gregem, 210  
   oculos, 27  
 passim, 16  
 passus, 11  
 patentia ruinis, 258  
 patere, 10 (note), 138, 193  
 paterfamilias, 187  
 patria, 31, 40, 225  
 patria urbs, 31  
 patricius, 222  
 patrimonium, 192  
 patronus, 241  
 paupertas, 55 *f.*  
 pax, 270 *f.*  
 peccare, 133  
 pecorum modo, 264 (note)  
 pectus, 101, 157 (note)  
 pecuaria res, 210  
 peculatus, 242  
 pecunia, 202 *f.*  
 pedem referre, 266  
 pedestre iter, 13  
 pedibus ire, 13  
 pellere animum, 145  
   ex urbe, 225  
   hostem, 265  
   nervos, 116

- pellere sensus, 29  
 Penates, 186 (note)  
 penes, 47  
 penetrare, 2  
 pensare, 60  
 peragraré, 13  
 percipere aliquid, 95  
   fructum, 56, 209  
   laetitiam, 146  
   voluptatem, 74  
 percussum esse, 149  
 percutere frontem, 25  
   murum, 258  
   rostrum, 275  
   securi, 245  
 percuti de caelo, 8  
 perditae res, 42, 50  
 perdomare, 271  
 perducere ad exitum, 43  
   ad suam sententiam, 78  
   ad summum, 77  
 perduellio, 242  
 peregre, 13  
 peregrinari, 13  
 perennis, 4  
 perfecte planeque, 93  
 perfectio, 77 *f.*  
 perferre legem, 217  
 perfringere, 265  
 perfunctus honoribus, 232  
   periculis, 53  
 pergere, 12  
 Pericles, 19  
 periclitari, 52  
 periculum, 52 *f.*  
 periodus, 135  
 perire, 39 *f.*  
 periurium, 180  
 perlustrare, 126  
 permanere, 78  
 permiscere, 224  
 permutare, 230, 271  
 pernicies, 52  
 perorare, 122  
 perpendere, 85 *f.*  
 perpeti, 152  
 perpetrare, 182  
 perpetua oratio, 121  
 perpetui sumptus, 191  
 in perpetuum, 20  
 perpolire, 142  
 perumpere, 255  
 persequi bello, 253  
   hostes, 267  
   ius, 237  
   litteris, 140  
   negotium, 62  
   poenas, 163 *f.*  
   vestigia, 16  
   viam, 12  
 perseverare, 78  
 persona, 119 (note)  
 persolvere fidem, 160  
   poenas, 244  
   praemium, 61  
   stipendium, 248  
   vota, 182  
 perspicue dicere, 122  
 perstare, 78  
 persuadere, 83 *f.*  
 pertinere, 10, 46  
 perturbare animum, 152  
   mentem, 145  
   republicam, 224  
 perturbationes animi, 167  
 pervertere, 238  
 pes, 28  
 pessumdare, 52  
 pestilentia, 37  
 pestis, 52  
 petitio, 241  
 phalanx, 265  
 philosophia, 101 *f.*  
 physica, 102  
 pictura, 117  
 pilum, 251  
 pinguis Minerva, 97  
 plaga, 40, 268  
 plana, 3  
 Platonici, 102  
 plaudere, 118  
 plebeius, 214  
 plebis dux, 223  
 poculum, 190  
 poema, 115  
 poena, 163  
 poesis, 115  
 politicus, 212 (note)

- pompa, 41, 136  
 ponderare, 175  
 pondus, 1  
 ponere ante oculos, 126 *f.*  
 ponere arma, 189 (note)  
 pons, 208  
 popularis, 219  
 porrigere dextram, 197  
 porta, 14  
 portenta, 76, 79  
 portorium, 229  
 portus, 101  
 possessio, 187  
 posterus, 34  
 posteritas, 19 (note), 89  
 posterum (in), 20  
 postridie, 23  
 potare, 190  
 potentia, 220 *f.*  
 potio, 34  
 praebere aures, 24  
   occasionem, 48  
   potestatem, 196  
   speciem, 170  
   utilitatem, 56  
 praecipere, 76  
 praecipitare, 17, 215  
 praecipuum ius, 239  
 praecurrere, 17  
 praedari, 257  
 praedicare, 65  
 praedicere, 255  
 praeditus, 75  
 praeesse exercitui, 249  
   iudicio, 237  
   quaestioni, 239  
   rei publicae, 211  
 praeficere exercitui, 249  
   muneri, 232  
 praefere verba, 181  
 praeiudicata opinio, 79  
 praeiudicium, 79  
 praematurus, 39  
 praemium, 61 *f.*  
 praeruptus, 3  
 praesagire, 161  
 praesens animus, 152  
   auxilium, 54  
   medicina, 54 (note)  
 praesens pecunia, 54, 202  
   remedium, 54 (note)  
 praesens (in), 20  
 praesidium, 256  
 praestare aliquem, 160  
   benevolentiam, 58  
   fidem, 160  
   officium, 172 *f.*  
 praetendere, 45  
 praeterire aliquem, 83  
   silentio, 127  
 praetermittere occasionem, 48  
 praetexere, 45  
 praetoria navis, 275  
 precari, 181  
 preces, 181 *f.*  
 premere argumentum, 106  
   servitute, 227  
 prensare, 230  
 pretium, 202 *f.*  
 primarum partium actor, 119  
 primas deferre, 216  
 princeps senatus, 235  
 principatus, 216  
 principes, 213, 222  
 principia, 1  
 prius habere, 8, 157  
 privare, 28, 39  
 privata causa, 240  
 privilegium, 239 (note)  
 probabilis, 80  
 probare, 65, 99, 106  
 probe scio, 83  
 procella, 274  
 proclivis, 173  
 procreare, 1  
 procumbere, 17  
 procurare, 184  
 procurare, 9  
 prodigia, 184  
 prodire, 174  
 producere exercitum, 260  
   in scenam, 118  
   sermonem, 195  
   syllabam, 139  
   testes, 239  
 proelium, 261 *f.*  
 proferre diem, 23  
 fines, 10

- proferre in medium, 127  
   signa, 253 (note)  
   testes, 239  
 proficere, 98  
 proficisci a Platone, 102  
   a principiis, 104  
   ab aliqua re, 45  
   ab exiguis initiis, 43  
   ad bellum, 252  
   in Sequanos, 10  
   recta, 12  
   Romam, 17  
 profiteri artem, 114  
   disciplinam, 102  
   medicinam, 98  
   verum, 8  
 profligare, 266  
 profluens, 4  
 profundere, 35, 40  
 profundum (in), 16  
 profusus, 191  
 progressus, 98  
 proicere, 28, 41  
 promissum, 160  
 promittere, 192  
 promovere, 315 (note)  
 promptus, 123, 132  
 promulgare, 217  
 promunturium, 9  
 pronuntiare, 116, 129  
 pronus, 181 (note)  
 propagare fines, 10  
   nomen, 89  
 propellere navem, 275  
 propensus, 58, 173  
 properare, 17  
 propinare, 190  
 propitius, 177  
 proponere in medio, 127  
   legem, 218  
   merces, 202  
   quaestionem, 131  
   rem, 130  
   sibi, 86, 100  
   spem, 154  
   vexillum, 260  
 proposita res, 130  
 propositio, 107 (note)  
 proprietas, 20 (note)
- propulsare hostem, 265  
   iniurias, 168  
   suspicionem, 161  
 proripere, 17  
 prorogare imperium, 226  
   in annum, 232  
 proscribere, 224  
 prosequi amore, 156 *f.*  
   benevolentia, 58  
   exsequias, 40  
   honore, 88 (note)  
   memoria, 88  
   omnibus, 88  
   proficientem, 13  
   studiis, 88  
 prospectus, 3  
 prospicere casus, 213  
   futura, 20  
   rationibus, 56  
   rei frumentariae, 248  
   saluti, 54  
 prosternere ad pedes, 28  
   hostem, 266  
   humi, 17  
 provectus, 32  
 provenire, 2  
 proverbium, 139 *f.*, 263 (note)  
 provincia, 229 (note)  
 provocare, 234, 260  
 proximus, 6, 21  
 prudentia civilis, 213  
 publicani, 51 (note)  
 publicare, 224  
   publice, 40  
   publico carere, 186, 212  
   publicum (in), 41  
   publicus ager, 229  
   puerilis disciplina, 97  
   pugna, 260  
   pugnare inter se, 110  
   pulsare fores, 186  
   pulsus, 29  
   pulvinar, 183  
   puncto temporis, 19  
   punctum ferre, 231  
   punire, 244  
   purgare, 243 (note)  
   putare, 204 (note)  
 Pythagoras, 102

- Pythia (ludi), 120  
 Pythium oraculum, 183
- QUADRANTES usurae, 205  
 quadratum agmen, 253  
 quaerere de, 239, 240  
 quaesitor, 239  
 quaestio, 239  
 quaestiones perpetuae, 237  
 quaestui habere, 202  
 quaestum facere, 202 *f.*  
 quantum in me est, 47  
 quies, 38  
 quincunx, 206  
 quotus, 23
- RADICES, 2  
 radicitus, 181  
 rami, 2  
 rapere agmen, 254  
   in errorem, 81  
 ratio (account), 204  
   (argument), 106  
   (method), 104  
   (principles), 176  
   (reason), 173  
   (regard), 45  
   (spirit), 20 (note)  
   (system), 103  
   (theory) 90  
 ratiocinatio, 107  
 rationes (interests), 56, 212  
 ratus, 218  
 reapse, 81  
 recensere, 247  
 receptus, 266  
 recessus aestuum, 5  
 recipere animum, 150  
   in amicitiam, 63  
   in civitatem, 214  
 recipere (se) ad bonam frugem, 173  
   ex fuga, 267 (note)  
 recipiendi signum, 266  
 recitare, 116  
 recognoscere, 247  
 reconciliare, 64  
 recondere, 251  
 reconditae artes, 94  
   sententiae, 125
- recordatio, 89 *f.*  
 recreare, 74  
 recta, 12  
 recte, 281  
 rector civitatis, 213  
 recuperare, 228  
 recusare, 62  
 reddere debitum, 39  
   epistulam, 143  
   ius, 237  
   latine, 134  
   rationem, 205  
   verbum pro verbo, 134  
   vota, 182  
 redigere ad artem, 103  
   ad irritum, 44  
   in memoriam, 88  
   in ordinem, 105  
   in provinciam, 272  
   in servitutum, 227  
   in statum, 42  
 redintegrare animum, 150  
   memoriam, 88  
   proelium, 262  
   spem, 153  
 reditus, 12  
 redolere, 124  
 redundare, 29, 56  
 refellere, 106  
 referre ad senatum, 235  
   ad virtutem, 164  
   gradum, 16  
   gratiam, 60  
   in numerum, 224  
   in tabulas, 204  
   signa, 315 (note)  
   victoriam, 269  
 reficere animum, 74  
   navem, 273  
 refrenare, 167  
 refringere, 228, 259  
 regio aspera, 3  
 regnum, 227  
 regula, 135 (note)  
 reicere ad populum, 236  
   equitatum, 265  
   iudices, 242  
 relaxare, 74  
 religio, 178 *f.*

- relinquere domum, 13 (note)  
   in controversia, 108  
   in dubio, 82  
   in medio, 279  
   signa, 254  
 reliquiae, 141  
 remiges, 273  
 remittere animum, 74  
   nihil ex, 165  
   nuntium, 198  
   studia, 93  
 remittit dolor, 147  
   ventus, 7  
 remunerari, 60  
 renuntiare amicitiam, 63  
   consulem, 233  
   hospitium, 193  
 renovare memoriam, 88  
   proelium, 262  
 repellere hostem, 265  
 repercussa vox, 7  
 repetere memoriam, 88  
   rationem, 205  
   res, 57  
 repetundae, 242  
 reponere in deos, 178  
 reportare, 269  
 reposcere, 205  
 repraesentare, 88  
 reprehendere, 49, 65  
 reprehensio, 49, 65  
 repudiare condiciones, 271  
   preces, 61  
 repudium, 198  
 repulsa, 231  
 reputare, 85  
 rerum auctor, 111  
   fides, 112  
   natura, 1, 115  
   potiri, 227  
   scriptor, 111  
   usus, 90  
 res, 46 (note)  
 res capitalis, 241  
   divina, 177  
   domestica, 187  
   familiaris, 187  
   frumentaria, 248  
   ita est, 42  
   nummaria, 204 *f.*  
   pecuaria, 210  
   pecuniaria, 204 *f.*  
   publica, 210 *f.*, 221  
   romana, 110  
 res adversae, 50  
   civiles, 213  
   divinae, 177  
   dubiae, 42  
   externae, 42  
   fictae, 76  
   gestae, 110 *f.*  
   humanae, 42  
   maritimae, 273  
   moventes, 188  
   novae, 223  
   oculis subiectae, 29  
   perditae, 42, 50  
   repetere, 57  
   restituere, 57  
   romanae, 110  
   secundae, 50  
 rescindere acta, 219  
   iudicium, 243  
   pontem, 208  
   testamentum, 199  
 resignare epistulam, 144  
   testamentum, 199  
 resipiscere, 173  
 resonare, 7  
 respicere, 45  
 respirare, 150  
 responsum, 131, 183  
 respuere, 271  
 restinguere ardorem, 158  
   iram, 161  
   odium, 162  
 restituere, 57  
 reus, 241  
 revellere ianuam, 186  
   portas, 259  
 reversio, 13 (note)  
 reverti, 13  
 revocare ad artem, 90  
   ad rationem, 90, 103  
   histrionem, 118  
   in consuetudinem, 200  
   studia, 93  
 rheda, 4

- Rhenus, 5  
 rhetor, 121  
 ridiculus, 115, 132  
 rigere, 8  
 rima, 185  
 ripa, 4  
 risus, 35  
 rite, 177  
 rogare, 230  
   populum, 217  
   sacramento, 246  
   sententiam, 235  
 romanus, 110  
 rostra, 122  
 rude donatus, 248  
 rudis, 95  
 ruere, 17 (note)  
 ruina, 185  
 rumor, 66  
 rus, 13  
 rusticari, 13  
 rusticum opus, 209  
 rusticus, rusticanus, 13  
  
 SACRA, 177  
 sacramentum, 179 (note), 246  
 sacrificium, 182  
 saeculum, 20  
 sagum, 189  
 sales, 132  
 salubritas, 6  
 salutare, 230  
 salvere, 197  
 salvus, 172 (note), 218  
 sanare, 37  
 sancire, 179, 218  
 sanitas, 36, 173  
 sanus, 29  
 sapere, 172  
 sapiens, 46  
 satiari, 167  
 satis habere, 148  
 scaena, 3, 11  
 scaena, 118  
 scaenicus, 118  
 scala, 258  
 scelus, 166 (note)  
 schola, 97, 102  
 scientia, 95  
 sciscere, 218  
 scopulus, 274  
 scribere emendate, 135  
   heredem, 199  
   historiam, 110  
   leges, 219  
   librum, 140  
   milites, 246  
   versus, 115  
 scripto (de), 88  
 scrupulus, 82  
 secreto, 196  
 secta, 102  
 secunda mensa, 192  
 secundo flumine, 5  
 sedare controversiam, 108  
   iram, 163  
   sitim, 34  
   tumultum, 224  
 sedere, 15, 27  
 sedes belli, 253  
 seditio, 223  
 seditiosi homines, 223  
 segetes, 209  
 semel, 20  
 semen, 1, 209  
 semisses, 205  
 senatus, 234, 235  
 senatus-consultum, 236  
 senectus, 33  
 senescere, 6  
 sensus, 29  
 sententia (meaning), 137  
   (opinion), 79 *f.*  
 sententia (ex) 62  
 septentriones, 9  
 sepulcrum, 41  
 sepultura, 41  
 sequi partes, 221  
   sectam, 102  
   signa, 255  
 sequitur ut, 107  
 serere, 209  
 series rerum, 105  
 serium, 132  
 sermo, 129 *f.*  
 sero, 23 (note)  
 serpere, 66  
 servare de caelo, 183

- servare fidem, 160  
 officium, 172  
 servire bello, 18 (note)  
 cupiditatibus, 167  
 iracundiae, 18 (note)  
 tempori, 18  
 valetudini, 18 (note)  
 servitus, 227  
 sevocare, 30  
 sexus, 30  
 Sibyllini libri, 183  
 sica, 252  
 sicarius, 242  
 siccitas, 124  
 sidus, 7  
 signa conferre, 253, 263  
 signare, 144  
 significare, 127  
 signum, 117  
 silentium, 22, 127  
 silex, 11  
 silva, 3  
 simili uti, 139  
 similitudo, 1 (note), 100  
 simplicitas, 59 (note)  
 simulacrum, 117  
 simulare, 170 (note)  
 simulatio, 170  
 simultas, 194  
 sinceritas, 124  
 singularis, 226, 262  
 singulis annis, 21  
 sinus, 2, 101, 157  
 sistere, 255  
 sitire, 34  
 sitis, 34  
 situs, 9  
 socialis, 193 (note)  
 societas, 193  
 socius, 193  
 socordia, 73  
 Socrates, 100  
 sol, 6  
 solacium, 54  
 solet (ut), 201  
 solemnis, 182  
 solidus, 94  
 solitudo, 194  
 sollicitare plebem, 223  
 sollicitudo, 147 *f.*  
 solum vertere, 225  
 soluta oratio, 124  
 solutio linguae, 123  
 solvere epistolam, 144  
 navem, 274  
 nomen, 204  
 pecuniam, 203  
 poenas, 244  
 vota, 182  
 somnium, 38  
 somnus, 38  
 sonare, 137  
 sonitus verborum, 136  
 Sophocles, 119  
 sopitum esse, 38  
 spatium, 12, 20  
 specie, 81  
 species, 38, 78  
 speciosus, 80  
 spectare ad arma, 87  
 alte, 77  
 in orientem, 9  
 magna, 86  
 verba, 136  
 spectator siderum, 113  
 sperare, 153  
 spes, 153  
 spinae disserendi, 102  
 partiendi, 105  
 spirare, 143  
 spiritus, 151  
 splendidus, 214  
 splendor vitae, 70  
 spoliare, 227  
 sponsio, 160  
 sponte, 280  
 stabilire, 212  
 stadium, 120  
 statio, 256  
 stativa, 255  
 statua, 117  
 statuere exemplum, 100  
 modum, 174  
 pretium, 202  
 signa, 253 (note)  
 stella, 7  
 sternere equum, 14  
 viam, 11

- succedere, 231, 265  
 sudor, 71  
 sufficere, 231  
 suffragium, 217  
 sumere arma, 250  
 initium, 43  
 otium, 43  
 sibi, 151  
 spiritus, 151  
 venenum, 40  
 summa aqua, 3  
 summa belli, 249  
 summam, 127  
 summissa vox, 129  
 summittere, 129  
 summovere, 234  
 sumptus, 191  
 superare, 3  
 superbia, 151  
 superi, 177  
 superiora loca, 3  
 supersedere, 71  
 superstes, 34  
 superstitione, 180  
 superum mare, 5  
 supervenire, 249  
 supinus, 181 (note)  
 suppeditare, 31 (note)  
 suppetere, 31  
 supplementum, 247  
 supplicare, 180  
 supplicatio, 183  
 supplicium, 166  
 supponere, 199  
 suppressa vox, 129  
 suppressere navem, 276  
 supra modum, 174 (note)  
 supremus dies, 39  
 surgere ad dicendum, 122 (note)  
 e lecto, 38  
 suscipere causam, 222  
 inimicitias, 63  
 liberos, 30  
 odium, 162  
 partes, 119 (notes)  
 scelus, 166  
 vota, 182  
 suspensum esse, 155  
 suspicere, 6 (note)  
 stilus 123 (note)  
 stimulus, 68, 97  
 stipendium, 248  
 stips, 55  
 stirps, 2  
 stomachus, 147, 163  
 strages, 268  
 stragula, 189  
 strictim, 126  
 stringere, 251  
 structura verborum, 135  
 studere alicui, 58, 221  
 litteris, 93  
 novis rebus, 223  
 partibus, 221  
 studia optima, 91  
 studiosus alicuius, 58, 221  
 antiquitatis, 19 (note)  
 virtutis, 164  
 studium artium, 114  
 libertatis, 228  
 litterarum, 91  
 partium, 221  
 suadere, 217  
 suavitas, 22  
 subdere, 15  
 subducere navem, 273  
 rationem, 85  
 subesse, 22  
 subigere, 271  
 subire animum, 76  
 calamitatem, 50  
 condiciones, 270  
 famam, 69  
 infamiam, 70  
 moenia, 258  
 odium, 161  
 periculum, 52  
 poenam, 244  
 vituperationem, 66  
 subiectio, 126  
 subita mors, 39  
 oratio, 121  
 sublime ferri, 16  
 submergere, 4  
 subsidia, 258, 261  
 substruere, 11  
 subtilitas disserendi, 102  
 subtiliter, 107



suspicio, 160  
 syllaba, 139  
 symphonicus, 117

## TABELLAE, 217

tabescere, 147  
 tabulae excepti et expensi, 204  
   pictae, 117  
   publicae,

tangere, 8

tarditas ingenii, 75

tectum, 5, 185

tegere, 79

tela fortunae, 52

telum, 251

temere agere, 173

temperantia, 175

temperare, 6, 35

temperatio, 6

tempestas, 8

templum, 178

tempus, 17*f.*

tenere animos, 123

  clavum, 211

  consuetudinem, 200

  imperium, 187

  institutum, 176

  ius, 237

  mediocritatem, 175

  memoria, 88

  principatum, 216

  propositum, 86

teneri desiderio, 157

  iureiurando, 80

  lecto, 36

  studio, 101

  testibus, 240

tentare animos, 145

  fortunam, 49

tentari morbo, 36

teretes aures, 24

tergum, 266

terminus, 11

terra, 2

terrestris, 13

terror, 149*f.*

tessera, 256

testamentum, 199

testari, 181

testimonium, 240

testis, 240, 280

testudo, 258

theatrum, 118

tibia, 116

timor, 149*f.*

titulus, 141 (note)

togatus, 189 (note)

tollere de medio, 40

  in crucem, 245

  liberos, 30

tolerare vitam, 55, 191

tonitru, 8

tormentum, 170, 258

torpere, 8

torqueri, 155

torreri, 8

tractare artem, 115

  gubernaculum, 211

tractatio, 91

tradere artem, 115

  memoriae, 112

  se litteris, 92

  se somno, 38

  (teach), 102

traducere ad, 78

  vitam, 31

tragice, 128

tragicus, 115

tragoedia, 115

transferre ad Romanos, 116

  bellum, 253

  ex graeco, 134

transfigere, 251

transigere, 108

transitio, 215

translatio, 135, 138

transversus, 16

triarrii, 263

tribuere civitatem, 214

  multum, 60

  primas, 216

tribunus plebis, 234

tribus, 231, 234

tributum, 229

trinundinum, 217

triplex acies, 261

  agmen, 255

trita via, 11

tritae aures, 24

triumphus, 269

trivio (in), 12

tuba, 257

tumultus, 224 (note)

tunicatus, 189 (note)

turbare mare, 5

  mentem, 145

  omnia, 224

  ordines, 254

turbator vulgi, 223

turpis, 164

turris, 208

tus, 182

tuto (in), 53

tyrannis, 226

## UBERTAS, 125

  ulcisci, 163*f.*

  ultimae terrae, 11

  ultra citroque, 16

  umbilicus, 3

  umbracula, 98 (note)

  umbratilis, 94 (note)

  unguiculis (ab), 32

  universitas rerum, 1

  unus, 21 (note)

  urbs patria, 31

  urere, 8

  usura, 203, 205

  usus (experience), 90

  (utility), 56

  uti aliquo, 62

  crudelitate, 84 (note)

  magistro, 96

  prudencia, 84 (note)

  solacio, 55

  suo consilio, 84

  suo iudicio, 83

  valetudine bona, 84 (note)

  verbis, 136

  utilitas, 56

  uxor, 198

## VACARE, 72

  vacatio, 247

  vacillare, 88

  vadum, 4

  vagina, 251

vagus, 7

valedicere, 197 (note)

valere eloquentia, 121

  memoria, 88

valetudo, 36 (note)

vallum, 256, 258

valva, 186

varietas caeli, 6

vasa, 257

vastare, 257

vectigal, 51

vectores, 273

vehi, 14

velle alicuius causa, 58

  aliquem, 196

velum, 273

venalis, 59 (note)

venere, 228

veneficia, 242

venenum, 40

veneo, 228 (note)

venerari, 177

venia, 156

venire ad gladium, 264

  in dubium, 81

  in mentem, 76

  in morem, 200

  in oblivionem, 89

  in proverbium, 139

  in sermonem, 67

  in vituperationem, 66

  obviam, 14

ventus, 5, 7

ver, 22

verba copulata, 139

  dare, 171

  facere, 122

verbi causa, 99 (note)

verbis alicuius, 136

verbum (ad), 136

vergere, 9

verisimilis, 80

veritas, 80 (note)

verno tempore, 22

versari ante oculos, 28

  in angustiis, 42

  in discrimine, 53

  in ore, 66

  in periculo, 53

- versari in suis nummis, 207  
 versura, 207  
 versus, 115, 116  
 vertente anno, 21  
 vertere crimini, 66  
   in omen, 184  
   manum, 25  
   stilum, 123 (note)  
   (translate), 134  
   vitio, 243  
 vertex caeli, 7  
 verum, 80  
 vesperascente die, 22  
 vespertinus, 23  
 vestigium, 16  
 vestis, 189 *f.*  
 vestiti montes, 3  
 Vesuvius, 8  
 vetare, 139, 218  
 veteranus, 248  
 vetus, 19 (note)  
 vetus est, 139  
 vetustas, 51, 139  
 vexillum, 260  
 via, 11  
 via et ratione, 104  
 vicem, 147 (note)  
 vicinus, 10 (note)  
 vicissitudines, 22, 51  
 victima, 182  
 victoria, 269  
 victus, 190  
 videre, 23, 126  
 videri, 170  
 vigere, 66  
 vigiliae, 256  
 villa, 9  
 vim inferre, 39, 169  
 vincere, 115  
 vincere animum, 167  
   argumentis, 106  
   causa, 241  
   Olympia, 120  
 vinculum, 63, 228, 245  
 vindicare ab interitu, 52  
 vindicare ab oblivione, 90  
   in libertatem, 229  
 vinea, 258  
 vires, 30, 72  
 viribus (pro), 72  
 virili parte (pro), 30  
 virtus, 164 *f.*  
 virus, 163  
 vis, 169, 252  
   dicendi, 121  
   verbi, 137  
 vita, 31 (note), 40, 53  
   honesta, 164  
   moresque, 103  
   occupata, 211  
   rusticana, 13  
 vitia, 165  
 vitium sermonis, 133  
 vituperatio, 66  
 viva aqua, 4  
 vivere, 32 (note)  
 vivere bene, 191  
   in diem, 23  
 vocabulum, 138  
 vocare ad calculos, 204  
   ad cenam, 192  
   ad exitium, 52  
   in controversiam, 108  
   in dubium, 82  
   in invidiam, 162  
   in iudicium, 237  
   in periculum, 53  
   in suspicionem, 53  
 volubilitas, 133  
 volumen, 140  
 voluntaria mors, 39  
 voluntarii, 247  
 voluptas, 74 *f.*  
 votum, 182  
 vox, 7, 138  
 vulnus, 268  
 vulpes, 264 (note)  
 vultus, 28  
 Zenonis schola, 132

## INDEX II

[The numbers refer to pages; *f.* = "and following pages"; *n.* = "note."  
 Clarendon type refers to headings.]

- ABANDON oneself to profligacy, 167, 191  
   to fate, 52  
 abandoned, 167  
 abate one's anger, 167  
 abdicate, 232  
 ability (man of), 75  
   (to the best of), 30  
 abroad, 13  
 abrogate, 159  
 absolute power, 226  
 absolve, 207  
 abstain, 190  
 abstract, 77 *f.*  
 abundance, 191  
 abuse (to), 73  
 abuse, 168  
 accept an invitation, 192  
   battle, 260  
   omens, 184  
   submission, 271  
   terms, 259, 270  
 accident, 51 *f.*  
 accommodate, 18 *n.*, 59, 76  
 accompany, 13  
   (music), 117  
 accomplish, 201  
 accounts, 204  
 accrue, 45  
 accumulate instances, 99  
 accusation, 241  
 acquire, 67  
 acquittal, 244  
 act of a play, 117  
 action (battle), 264  
 address (to), 122  
 adieu, 197  
 adjacent, 10  
 adjourn, 18, 23  
 adjudicate, 47  
 administration, 210  
 admiral, 275  
 admiration, 159  
 admit, 280  
 adopt advice, 85  
   a law, 217  
 advance, 17, 255  
 advancing years, 33  
 advantage, 56  
 adverbs with adjectives, 94 *n.*  
 adversity, 50 *f.*  
 advice, 85, 176  
 advocate, 240  
 aesthetics, 114  
 affable, 193  
 affairs (domestic), 187 *n.*  
   (naval), 272  
   (peccuniary), 207  
   (public), 211  
 affection, 156  
 affirm, 83, 278  
 affliction, 148

- affluence, 55  
 affront, 168  
 age (military), 246  
   (old), 33  
 ages of man, 32  
 aggrandise, 212  
 aggravate, 148  
 agitated, 145  
 agitator, 223  
 agony, 146  
   of thirst, 34  
**agreement**, 109  
**agriculture**, 200  
 aid (to), 54  
   (with the) of the gods, 181  
**aim**, 86  
**air**, 6  
   (appearance), 170  
 Ajax, 119  
 alienated, 59  
 allegory, 139  
**alliance**, 270  
 allot, 229  
 allude to, 127  
 alms, 55  
 aloft, 16  
 Alps, 3  
 alphabet, 140  
 altar, 186 *n.*  
 alter, 84  
 altercation, 136  
 alternative, 82  
 ambition, 68, 86  
**ambuscade**, 169  
 amends, 57  
**amnesty**, 224  
 analogy, 100  
 analyse, 104  
**anarchy**, 223  
 anchor, 275  
 anecdote, 195  
**anger**, 162  
 anguish, 148 *f.*  
 animals (domestic), 210  
 animate nature, 2  
 annihilate, 268, 272  
 annotate, 143  
 annual, 182  
 annul, 196, 218 *n.*  
 anonymous, 141  
**answer**, 131  
 Antigone, 119  
 antiquity, 19 *n.*  
**anxiety**, 149  
 Apennines, 3  
 Apollo Pythius, 183  
 apparent, 280  
**appearance**, 170  
 appease, 163  
 appetite, 190  
 applause, 118  
 application, 92  
 apply oneself, 70, 92  
 approach, 17  
**approval**, 65  
 aqueduct, 4  
 arbitration, 241  
 archaeology, 19 *n.*  
 archaic, 124  
**argument**, 130, 106 *n.*  
 arise from, 45  
**aristocracy**, 220  
 arithmetic, 113  
 arms, 250 *f.*  
   (in one's), 26  
**army in general**, 246  
   on the march, 253  
 arrangement, 103  
 arrest, 237 *f.*  
 arrive, 13  
**arrogance**, 150  
**art in general**, 114  
 articulate, 129  
**arts (the)**, 91  
 ascertain, 67  
 asleep, 38  
 aspect, 170  
 aspiration, 68, 86  
 assassinate, 242  
 assault, 262 *f.*  
 assembly, 216  
 assert, 108  
**assistance**, 54  
 assizes, 237  
 associate with, 194  
 assuage, 149  
 assume, 108  
 assure, 108

- astonishment, 158  
**astronomy**, 113  
 atheist, 180  
 Atlantic, 5  
 atmosphere, 6  
 attach, 194  
**attack**, 262  
   (successful), 265  
 attempt, 86  
 attend, 75, 77  
 attention, 75, 77  
 Atticism, 124  
 attribute, 141  
**audience**, 195  
   in theatre, 118  
**audit**, 204  
 augury, 184  
**auspices**, 183  
 author, 140  
**authority**, 64, 226  
 autocracy, 226  
 autonomy, 211  
 autumn, 21  
 auxiliary troops, 247  
 avenge, 163  
 BAGGAGE, 257  
 balance, 204  
 ballot, 236 *n.*  
**banishment**, 213  
 banker, 204  
 bankrupt, 203  
 bathe, 4  
 battering-ram, 258  
**battle (land)**, 261 *f.*  
   (sea), 275  
 beat, 245  
 bed, 37  
 beg, 55, 247  
 begin, 43  
 beginnings (first), 1  
**belief**, 158  
   (religious), 180  
 belles-lettres, 91 *f.*  
 below (world), 177  
**benefit**, 59  
 benevolence, 57  
 besiege, 257  
 betray, 242  
 betrothal, 198  
 beware of, 199  
**bills**, 217  
 biography, 126  
**birth**, 30  
 blame, 243  
 blind, 28  
 bliss, 80  
 blockade, 275  
 bloodshed, 268 *f.*  
 board, 275  
 boat, 273  
**bodies (heavenly)**, 6  
**body (parts of human)**, 24 *f.*  
   (properties of human), 29 *f.*  
 bodyguard, 25  
**books**, 140  
 booty, 251  
 borrow, 203  
 boundaries, 10  
 boyhood, 32  
 bravery, 150  
 breach, 258  
 bread, 190  
 breathe, 31  
 bribe, 230  
 bridge, 208  
 briefly, 126, 277  
 bring up, 96 *f.*  
   forth fruit, 2  
 bud, 2  
**building**, 208  
 burgess, 214, 234  
**burial**, 40  
 burn, 5  
**business**, 72, 201  
 CADENCE, 117, 125  
 calamity, 51  
 calculation, 204 *n.*  
 calendar, 22  
 call to arms, 228  
   to witness, 181  
 callous, 147  
 calm, 152, 273  
**camp**, 255  
 campaign, 252  
**candidate**, 230  
 canvassing, 230

capacity, 75  
 cape, 10  
 capital, 241, 245  
 capitulation, 271, 259  
 caprice, 173  
 captivity, 270  
 cardinal points, 9  
 care, 148  
 career, 31 *n.*  
 carnage, 268  
 case, 240  
 cash, 202  
 cause, 44  
 cavalry, 246  
 cease, 43  
 celebrate, 119  
 celebrities, 93  
 censors, 234  
 censure, 65  
 cent (per), 205  
 ceremonial, 177 *f.*  
 certitude, 83  
 chagrin, 148  
 chance, 47  
 change one's dress, 189  
 character, 175  
 characteristic, 177  
 sketch, 126  
 charge, 241  
 (in battle), 263, 275  
 chase, 267  
 chastisement, 244  
 cheap, 202  
 cherish, 153  
 chief men in the state, 222  
 childhood, 32  
 chimera, 79  
 choice, 82  
 choir, 117  
 chronology, 110  
 circumstances, 41  
 circus, 119  
 citadel, 9  
 cite as witness, 239  
 city, 9  
 citizenship, 213  
 civil case, 240  
 civilisation, 95  
 classification, 104

clear, 280  
 climate, 6  
 close quarters, 264  
 clothing, 188  
 coherence, 105  
 cohort, 256  
 cold, 8  
 colony, 228  
 column (marching), 255  
 combat, 261 *f.*  
 (cavalry), 261  
 (naval), 275  
 (single), 262  
 come, 13  
 comedy, 115 *n.*  
 comfort, 54, 190  
 command (military), 249  
 commencement, 43  
 commerce (in general), 201 *f.*  
 commercial traveller, 201 *n.*  
 commissariat, 248  
 commissions, 61  
 commit oneself, 47  
 commonwealth, 212  
 communicate, 84 *n.*  
 company (theatrical), 118  
 comparison, 139  
 compass (points of), 9  
 compassion, 155  
 compose (a book), 140  
 (a poem), 115  
 (music), 117  
 composure, 152  
 compound interest, 206  
 concede, 280  
 concentrate troops, 247  
 conceptions, 77  
 conclusion, 106  
 condemnation, 243  
 conditions of human life, 41 *f.*  
 conductor, 118  
 conduit (of water), 4  
 conference, 195  
 confidence, 158  
 confiscation, 224  
 conflagration, 6  
 congratulate, 197, 289  
 conjecture, 78  
 connection, 104

connection of thought, 125  
 connoisseur, 114  
 conquest, 271  
 conscience, 173, 179  
 consent, 109  
 consistent, 109  
 consolation, 54  
 conspiracy, 223  
 constitution of the state, 210  
 of body, 36  
 construction (the), 125  
 consul, 217, 233  
 consultation, 84  
 contemplative life, 94  
 contemporary, 33, 34  
 contentment, 148  
 contested point, 108  
 continent, 2  
 contracts, 208, 234  
 contradiction, 109  
 contribute, 55  
 control (self-), 166  
 controversy, 107  
 conversation, 195  
 convict, 240  
 convince, 83  
 copy, 115  
 corn, 209  
 corpse, 41 *n.*  
 correctness of style, 134  
 correspondence, 144  
 corruption (electoral), 230 *n.*  
 (moral), 165, 175  
 cosmopolitan, 222  
 cost, 202  
 coterminous, 10  
 council of war, 257  
 count (money), 202  
 country life, 13  
 courage, 150  
 course (of life), 31  
 (of teaching), 96  
 (of time), 17  
 (second), 192  
 court favour, 58, 63, 219  
 courteous, 172  
 cradle, 32  
 creation, 1  
 credit, 206, 159

crime, 165  
 criminal case, 240  
 critic, 114  
 critical moment, 20, 53, 263  
 position, 52  
 criticise, 66, 114, 176  
 crocodiles' tears, 30  
 crop, 209  
 crowning happiness, 50  
 crucify, 170, 245  
 cruelty, 155  
 cult, 178  
 cultivate (friendship), 194  
 (literature), 93  
 (the ground), 208 *f.*  
 (virtue), 164  
 culture (intellectual), 95  
 cup, 190  
 cure, 37  
 curse, 179, 181  
 cursory, 126  
 custom, 200  
 cut off supplies, 249  
 cutter, 272

DACTYL, 112 *n.*  
 damage, 57  
 danger, 52  
 date, 23, 113  
 (of letter), 145  
 day, 22  
 death, 39, 245  
 debate, 107  
 debtor, 206  
 decadence, 165  
 deceit, 170  
 decide, 85 *f.*  
 decision (legal), 241  
 decisive, 262  
 declamation, 129  
 declare elected, 233  
 null, 196, 218  
 war, 251  
 decree, 101  
 defeat, 267  
 defend (legal), 240  
 defiance, 151  
 definition, 104

degenerate, 165  
 deify, 178  
 delay, 87  
 deliberate, 18  
**deliberation**, 84  
 delight, 146  
**deliverance**, 54, 228  
**delivery of speech**, 129  
**demagogue**, 223  
 demand audience, 195  
   satisfaction, 252  
**democracy**, 220  
 demolish, 185, 259  
 demonstrate, 106  
 demoralise, 165  
 denounce, 241  
 depart this life, 39  
 depend, 46  
 depict, 126  
 deploy, 261  
 depose, 215, 216  
   as witness, 239  
 depraved, 175  
**derision**, 170  
 derivation, 137  
 descend a river, 5  
   from Cato, 30  
 desert, 3  
 deserve, 60  
**design**, 85  
**desire**, 166  
**despair**, 152  
 desperate position, 53  
 despotism, 227  
 destiny, 50 *f.*  
 destitute, 55  
 destroy, 185, 268, 272  
 detail, 127  
 deteriorate, 165  
 determine, 86  
 detest, 161  
 develop a question, 127  
 devote oneself to, 70, 92, 211,  
   213  
   time to, 18  
 devout, 179  
 dialectic, 102  
 dialogue, 119  
 dictate, 233

didactic, 100  
 die, 39  
 differ, 104  
**difficulty**, 41  
   (pecuniary), 207  
 digest, 189  
**dignity**, 64  
   civil, 215  
 digression, 128, 130  
 dilemma, 42  
 dimension, 10  
 dinner, 191  
**direction**, 15, 16  
 direction of a war, 249  
 direct one's attention to, 75, 77  
**disadvantage**, 56  
 disappear, 28  
 disappoint, 153  
 disagree, 109  
 disband, 248  
 discharge one's duty, 171  
 disciple, 97, 102  
**discipline**, 249  
 disconcert, 152  
**discontent**, 162  
 discord, 109  
 discover, 101  
**discouragement**, 150  
 discourse, 107 *n.*  
 discuss, 107 *n.*, 127  
 disease, 37  
 disembark, 273, 275  
 disfavour, 57  
**disgrace**, 69  
 dish, 192  
 dishonour, 69  
 disinherit, 199  
 disloyalty, 242  
 dismiss, 236  
 disorder, 254, 267  
 dispense with, 71  
 disperse, 267  
**disposition**, 145  
 disputed question, 131  
 dissemble, 29  
**distance**, 10  
 distinguished, 67  
 distribute land, 229  
 diversion, 74

divinity, 181  
 division of day, 22  
   of year, 21  
   (subtle), 104  
**divorce**, 198  
 document (literary), 93  
 dogmas (philosophical), 101  
 domain of philosophy, 101  
**domestic life**, 185 *f.*  
   animals, 210  
 domicile, 188  
 door, 186  
**doubt**, 82  
 downstream, 5  
 dowry, 198  
**drama**, 117  
 dramatically, 126  
**dreams**, 37  
 dress, 189  
**drink**, 189  
**driving**, 14  
 drown, 4  
 duel, 262  
**duty**, 171  
 dwell, 188

EAR, 24  
**earnest**, 132  
**earth and its surface**, 2  
 east, 9 *n.*  
 eat, 189  
 ebb, 5  
 echo, 7  
 eclipse, 6  
 eclipse (to), 68  
 economy, 187  
 edict, 235 *n.*  
 eddies, 4  
**education**, 94, 96  
 effect, 43  
**effort**, 70  
**election**, 230  
 elegance of style, 121 *f.*  
 elements, 1  
 eloquence, 121  
 embark, 273  
 embarrassment, 88, 129, 207  
 embellish, 128  
 embezzle, 229, 242  
 embrace (metaph.), 102  
 eminence, 67  
**emotions (the)**, 145 *f.*  
 employ, 84 *n.*  
 encamp, 256  
 encore, 118  
 encouragement, 180, 261  
**end**, 43, 141  
 enemy, 258 *f.*  
 energy, 71 *f.*  
 enervate, 72 *n.*  
 engagement, 260  
 engulf, 4  
 enlist, 296  
**enmity**, 62  
 enrich, 229  
 enroll, 246  
 ensign, 253 *n.*, 260  
 enslave, 227  
 enter, 14  
   office, 232  
 entertain, 192  
**enthusiasm**, 156  
 entreat, 61  
**envy**, 161  
 epic, 115  
 episode, 128  
 epitaph, 41  
**equanimity**, 148  
 equip, 247  
 equitable, 281  
**error**, 80, 143  
**erudition**, 93  
 eruption, 8  
 escape, 267  
 escort, 186 *n.*  
 essay (to), 86  
 establish a camp, 255  
 esteem, 58, 69  
 ethics, 103  
 etymology, 137  
 eulogise, 41, 65  
 evacuate, 266  
 evening, 22  
 everyday language, 133  
 evidence, 239  
 exactly, 281  
 exaggerate, 128

examine, 239  
**example**, 99, 278  
 excel, 216  
 excerpt, 142  
 excess, 191  
 exclude from the senate, 234  
 excuses, 45, 243, 246  
 execute, 245  
 exercise (gymnastic), 120  
   (oratorical), 129 *n.*  
 exertion, 70  
 exile, 225  
 expectation, 153  
 expenditure, 191, 205  
 experience, 90  
 expiate, 166, 244  
 expiry, 232  
 explain, 127  
 exploits, 249  
 exportation, 202  
 expostulate, 66  
 express, 77 *n.*, 125  
**expression** (oratory), 123  
   (*i.e.* phrase), 137, 278  
 extent, 10  
 extortion, 242  
 extraction, 30  
 extravagance, 191  
 extreme measures, 86  
 extremity of the world, 11  
 eye (mind's), 28  
 eyes, 27

FABLE, 115 *n.*

face, 25  
 facility of style, 123  
 fact (historic), 83 *n.*  
 faction, 221  
 fail, 203  
 faith, 158 *n.*  
 fall, 17, 185  
 false, 81  
 falsehood, 170  
 falsify, 242  
 fame, 67  
 familiar, 63, 200  
 famine, 208  
 farewell, 197

fashion, 20, 201  
 fate, 50  
 fatigue, 38  
 fault, 165, 243  
**favour**, 57  
   of fortune, 49  
   **popular**, 219  
 favourite, 57  
   of fortune, 49  
**fear**, 149  
 feast, 192  
**feeling** (want of), 155  
 feelings, 29  
 festival, 182  
 fever, 36  
 fiction, 76  
 fidelity, 158 *n.*  
**fight**, 261 *f.*  
 figurative expression, 139  
 figures (geometrical), 113  
 finance, 204  
 fine (a), 245  
 finger, 25  
 finish, 43, 201  
 finishing touch, 142  
**fire**, 5  
 firmament, 7  
 first place, 216  
 fix a day, 237  
   one's thoughts on, 27  
 flagship, 275  
 flame, 5  
 fleet, 273  
**flight**, 266  
 flood, 4  
 flow and ebb, 5  
 flowers of language, 125  
 fluent, 121, 122, 124, 136  
 flute, 117  
 follow, 16  
 follows (it), 107  
 food, 189  
 foolish, 133  
 foot (on), 13  
   (under), 28  
 foot-race, 120  
 footsteps, 15  
 forage, 257  
 forbid (God), 182

force, 169  
 force a way, 254  
 forced marches, 254  
 forces, 247  
 ford, 4  
 forest, 3  
 foresee, 20  
 forfeit, 224  
 forfend (Heaven), 182  
 forge, 242  
**forget**, 87  
 form words, 137  
   the rearguard, 255  
 fortify, 256  
**fortune** (good), 49  
   (bad), 50  
 found a colony, 229  
 foundations, 208  
 founder, 275  
 fragment of a book, 141  
 frank, 122  
**freedom**, 227  
 freeze, 8  
 frequent (to), 185  
**friendship**, 62  
 frontier, 10  
 frost, 8  
 fruit, 2  
**functions of mind**, 75 *f.*  
 funeral, 40  
 fury, 162  
 future, 20

## GAIETY, 146

gain a victory, 269  
   money, 206  
   time, 18  
 gallop, 15  
 games, 119  
 garrison, 255  
 gaze, 27  
 general, 249  
 generation, 19  
**genius**, 75  
 genus, 104 *n.*  
**geography**, 110  
 geometry, 113  
 gesticulate, 129

gifts (natural), 75  
 give account of, 126, 205  
   audience, 196  
   back, 57  
   games, 119  
   orders, 249  
 gladiator, 120  
 globe (terrestrial), 2  
 glory, 67  
**go**, 13  
   into a matter, 127  
   on foot, 13  
   on horseback, 15  
   to bed, 37  
   to law, 237  
   to pasture, 210  
 God, 181  
**good fortune**, 49  
**goodwill**, 57  
**gossip**, 66  
 gout, 37  
**government**, 210  
 grace, 172  
**grammar**, 133  
 grappling irons, 276  
 grasp (metaph.), 76, 95  
**gratitude**, 59  
 grave (a), 40  
 gravel path, 11  
 gravity, 1  
**greeting**, 197  
 grief, 147 *f.*  
 guard, 256  
 guardian, 32  
 guest, 193  
**guilt**, 243  
 gymnastic contests, 120

## HABIT, 200

**habitation**, 188  
 hair, 25  
 halt, 255  
 hand, 25 *f.*  
   (hand to), 264  
   (on), 26  
 hand down, 111, 201  
 hands (lay on), 26  
   (shake), 197

happiness, 50  
 harangue, 122, 216  
 harbour, 101  
 hardihood, 71  
 harm, 56  
 harvest, 209  
 hatred, 161  
 hazard, 52  
 head, 24 *n.*  
 headlong, 16  
 health, 36  
 hear, 24  
 hearsay, 66  
 heart, 157  
   (by), 88  
   of city, 2  
 heat, 8  
 heaven (power of), 177  
 heavenly bodies, 6  
 heavy-armed, 247  
 hegemony, 216  
 heir, 199  
 helmet, 250  
 help, 54  
 Hercules, 12 *n.*  
 herd, 210  
 heritage, 199  
 hero, 249  
 heroic, 112 *n.*, 249  
 hesitation, 86  
 hexameter, 112  
 high ground, 3  
 hill, 3  
 hint, 127  
 hiss a play, 119  
 historian, 111  
 history, 110  
 honest, 187 *n.*  
 honour, 69  
 honours (funeral), 40  
   (public), 215  
 home, 186  
 hope, 153  
 horizon, 6  
 horse, 15  
 horsemen, 15  
 hospitality, 192  
 hostages, 270  
 hostilities, 252

hour, 23  
 house, 185 *f.*  
 household, 187 *f.*  
 human body (parts of), 24 *f.*  
   (properties), 29 *f.*  
 human life, 41 *f.*  
 humanity, 96, 156  
 humour, 132  
   (to), 58  
 hunger, 34  
 hurt, 168  
 hypothesis, 106

IDEA, 76  
 ideas (rich in), 125  
 ideals, 77  
 idleness, 72  
 ignominy, 69  
 ignorance, 97  
 illness, 36, 171  
 imagination, 76  
 imitation, 192  
 imminent, 170 *n.*  
 immoderate, 174  
 immorality, 174  
 immortalise, 68, 89  
 immortality, 68, 89  
 immunity, 229  
 impartial, 238  
 impassable, 13  
 impassive, 29  
 implore aid, 54  
   pity, 155  
   protection, 158  
 importance, 45  
 imports, 202  
 impossible, 47  
 impost, 229  
 impression, 29, 89, 123  
 improve, 96, 98  
 improvise, 116  
 impute, 243  
 inactivity, 72  
 inanimate nature, 2  
 inattentive, 75  
 incendiary, 5  
 incense, 182  
 inclination, 45, 57, 171

income, 203  
 inconsistent, 110, 177  
 incorrupt, 238  
 incredible, 158, 278, 280  
 indecision, 85  
 independence, 221  
 indifference, 148  
 indignation, 164  
 indignity, 70  
 induce, 86  
 indulgence, 155  
   (self-), 167  
 industry, 70  
 infamy, 234  
 infantry, 246  
 inference, 79, 106  
 inflexibility, 59  
 inflict pain, 146  
   punishment, 244  
 influence, 45, 64  
   (political), 219  
 inform, 67  
 inheritance, 199  
 initiate, 103  
 initiative, 43  
 injure, 57  
 injustice, 168  
 inquiry (legal), 239  
 insane, 75  
 inscription, 117  
 insensible to pain, 146  
   to pity, 155  
 insist, 78  
 insolence, 150  
 insolvent, 203  
 inspiration (divine), 116  
 inspire fear, 149  
   scruples, 82  
 instances, 99  
 instruction, 96  
 instrumental music, 116  
 insult, 168  
 integrity, 238  
 intelligence, 75  
 intention, 85  
 inter, 40  
 intercalate, 22  
 intercept a convoy, 249  
   letters, 144

intercourse, 193  
 interest, 56  
   (on money), 202  
   (rate of), 205 *f.*  
 interests (state), 212  
 interior, 2  
 internal wars, 252  
 interpolate, 128  
 interrogate, 131  
 interval, 20  
 interview, 196  
 intimacy, 63, 194  
 introduce a word, 137  
 inundation, 4  
 invade, 252  
 invest a town, 257  
   money, 203  
 invite to dinner, 192  
 irony, 139  
 irrigate, 4  
 isolation, 193  
 issue of a matter, 43  
   (point at), 108  
 itinerary, 11  
  
 JAVELINS, 251, 264  
 jealousy, 161  
 jest, 132  
 jetty, 9  
 joke, 132  
 journey, 12  
 joy, 146  
 judge, 238 *f.*  
 judgment, 173, 175  
 jury, 242  
 justice in general, 237 *f.*  
 justify, 45, 243  
  
 KEEP the peace, 270  
   watch, 256  
 kill oneself, 39  
 kindness, 57, 59, 165  
 king, 227  
 knee, 28  
 knight, 214  
 know by heart, 88  
 knowledge, 83  
   (scientific—in general), 91

**Labour**, 70  
 laity, 114 *n.*  
 lame, 129  
 land, 2  
     (to), 273  
 language, 134  
     (everyday), 133  
     (use of), 133  
 languish, 227  
 late (too), 23  
 Latin, 134 *f.*  
 latinist, 94  
 laughter, 35  
 launch, 273  
 law, 237 *f.*  
 lay aside, 142 *n.*, 189 *n.*  
 lay waste, 259  
 league, 270  
 learn, 94 *f.*  
 leave, 13 *n.*  
 lecture, 102  
 legacy, 199  
 legion, 247  
 legislation, 219  
 leisure, 73 *f.*, 212  
 lend, 203  
 lesson, 94 *f.*  
 letter, 91 *n.*  
 letters, 144  
 lettres (belles-), 91 *f.*  
 levy, 246  
 libation, 183  
 liberty, 227 *f.*  
 licence, 191  
 lictor, 233  
 lie (to), 9  
 lies (to tell), 171  
 life, 31  
     (time of), 32  
 lightning, 8  
 limb, 24  
 line of battle, 261 *f.*  
 lines (siege-), 259  
 linguist, 94, 124  
 liquidate, 206  
 list, 224  
 listen, 24  
 literally, 134, 136, 140  
 literature, 91  
 litigation, 240  
 livelihood, 191  
 loans, 203  
 logic, 102  
 look, 27  
 loss, 57 *n.*  
 loud, 129  
 love, 156  
 luck, 49  
 lungs, 123 *n.*  
 lust, 167  
 lustrum, 224  
 luxury, 191  
 Lycurgus, 211  
 lyre, 116  
 lyric, 119  
**Magistrates**, 230 *f.*  
 magnanimity, 75  
 magnificence of games, 119  
 maintain discipline, 249  
     one's reputation, 67  
     one's right, 213  
 majesty, 227  
 majority, 235  
 make, 1  
 malady, 36, 171  
 malefactor, 57 *n.*  
 malversation, 242  
 man-of-war, 272  
**management of stock**, 208  
 manes, 182  
 manhood, 32  
 manifest one's opinion, 78  
 mankind, 24 *f.*  
 manner of thought, 76  
     (in a dramatic), 118  
     (in an exemplary), 96  
 manoeuvres, 251  
 mantle (military), 189  
 marauders, 257  
**march (army on)**, 253  
 march (to), 17, 255  
 marines, 273  
 maritime, 9  
 market-place, 212  
**marriage**, 198  
 martial law, 233 *n.*  
 marvellously, 281

mask, 119 *n.*  
 mason, 208  
**massacre**, 267  
 master of house, 233  
     of oneself, 166  
     of rhetoric, 121  
 masterpiece, 119  
 material of war, 248  
     for a speech, 130  
**mathematics**, 130  
**matter (subject-)**, 130  
**matters (domestic)**, 187  
     (money), 204  
 maxims, 101  
 mean (golden), 175  
 meaning, 128  
**measure**, 174  
 measures (extreme), 86  
 meats, 191  
 medicine, 36, 171  
 meditate, 103  
 Mediterranean, 5  
 meet, 14, 196  
**meetings (public)**, 216  
 melody, 117  
 memoirs, 126  
 memory, 87 *f.*  
 men (ages of), 32  
 menace, 169  
 menacing, 170 *n.*  
**mention**, 66, 126  
 mercenaries, 248  
 merchant, 201 *n.*  
 merchantman, 272  
**merit**, 60  
 metaphor in Latin, 50 *n.*, 139  
**method**, 103  
 midday, 22  
 middle ages, 19  
 midnight, 22  
 mien, 170  
 might, 45, 226  
**military oath**, 246  
 milky way, 7  
**mind (its functions)**, 75 *f.*  
     (out of one's), 75  
     (presence of), 152  
 mines, 203  
 minor, 32  
 minute, 105  
**misfortune**, 50  
 mistake, 81, 133, 143  
 mobility of character, 110, 177  
 model, 100  
**moderation**, 174  
 moment (actual), 19  
     (important), 20  
**monarchy**, 226  
**money**, 202  
 month, 22  
 monument, 208  
     (in literature), 93  
 moon, 6  
 moral science, 103  
**morality**, 164  
**morals**, 175  
 morning, 22  
 mortal, 39  
 mother-tongue, 133  
**motive**, 44  
 mount a horse, 14  
     guard, 256  
 mountain, 3  
 mourning, 189  
 movable property, 188 *n.*  
**movement in general**, 18  
 multitude, 222  
 murderer, 242  
 murmur, 162  
 muscles, 72 *n.*  
**music**, 115  
**mythology**, 110  
 NARRATIVE, 195  
 nation, 31  
 native of, 31  
 natural characteristics, 177  
     death, 39  
     phenomena, 7  
     science, 110  
**nature (the world and)**, 1 *f.*  
**naval affairs**, 272 *f.*  
     battle, 275  
 navigation, 274  
 necessity, 50  
 neglect one's duty, 172  
 negotiations for peace, 270  
 nerves, 72 *n.*



**neutrality**, 220  
**news**, 66  
**night**, 22 *f.*  
**Nile**, 17  
**noble birth**, 214  
**nominate a dictator**, 69, 99  
**north**, 9  
**notices**, 235  
**notion**, 76, 77  
**nourishment**, 190  
  
**Oath**, 178  
     **military**, 246  
**obey**, 167  
**object**, 86  
**object of admiration**, 159  
     of suspicion, 160  
**obligation**, 59, 219  
**obliquely**, 16  
**oblivion**, 90  
**obscure (to)**, 68  
**obsequies**, 41  
**observe the flight of birds**, 184  
**obsolete**, 200  
**obstinately**, 151  
**obtain a hearing**, 195  
     **justice**, 237 *f.*  
     **votes**, 230  
**occasion**, 47  
**occupation (literary)**, 92  
**occupied (to be) with**, 70, 92,  
     211, 213  
     **literature**, 92  
     **politics**, 211, 220  
**occupy a place**, 255  
     the first place, 216  
**ocean**, 3, 273  
**odious**, 162  
**offence**, 168  
**offer battle**, 260  
     **sacrifice**, 182  
**office**, 216, 230  
**old age**, 33  
     (how?), 33  
     **time**, 19 *n.*  
**oligarchy**, 222  
**Olympian games**, 120  
**omen**, 184  
**open a book**, 140

**open a letter**, 144  
     a will, 199  
     **question**, 47  
**opinion**, 78, 236  
     **general**, 69, 220  
     **legal**, 238  
     **political**, 211, 220  
     **revolutionary**, 223  
**opportunity**, 47  
**option**, 82  
**oracle**, 183  
**oratory**, 120 *f.*  
**orchestra**, 117  
**order (chronological)**, 110  
     **equestrian**, 214  
     of words, 140  
**orders**, 61  
**organise games**, 117  
**orient**, 9 *n.*  
**origin**, 31  
**outlive**, 34  
**outposts**, 256  
**outrage**, 168  
**overtake**, 17  
**overthrow**, 52  
**overwhelmed with debts**, 207  
  
**PACE**, 15  
**pain**, 146  
**painting**, 115  
**pale with fear**, 149  
**panegyric**, 41 *n.*  
**paralyse**, 36  
     with fear, 149  
**pardon**, 155, 243  
**parry**, 202  
**part (for my)**, 30  
     (in play), 119  
     (take), 84  
**parts of philosophy**, 102  
     of human body, 24  
**party (political)**, 220  
**party-spirit**, 220  
**passage in a book**, 142  
**passenger**, 273  
**pass into a proverb**, 139  
     into custom, 200  
     one's life, 31  
     the night, 193

**pass the time**, 18  
**passion**, 166  
**pasture**, 210  
**pathos**, 124  
**patrician**, 215, 222  
**patrimony**, 192  
**patriot**, 222  
**pattern**, 99  
**pave**, 11  
**pay debts**, 206  
     **ready money**, 202  
     (soldiers'), 248  
     **taxes**, 228  
     **vows**, 182  
**peace**, 270  
**pedantic**, 133 *n.*  
**penalty**, 244  
**penates**, 186 *n.*  
**penetration**, 213  
**peninsula**, 10  
**penthouses**, 258  
**people**, 214  
**percentage**, 205  
**perceptible**, 77 *f.*  
**perfection**, 77, 164  
**performer**, 117  
**perfume**, 209, 224  
**peril**, 52  
**period**, 135  
**perish**, 39, 245  
**perjury**, 180  
**permit**, 280  
**peroration**, 122  
**perplexity**, 85  
**persist**, 78  
**personage in a play**, 119 *n.*  
**persuasion**, 83  
**pestilence**, 37, 52  
**petitions**, 61  
**Phaedo**, 143  
**phalanx**, 265  
**phenomena (natural)**, 7  
**philology**, 135  
**philosophy**, 101  
**phrase**, 136  
**physician**, 54  
**picket**, 255  
**picture (to)**, 28, 76, 88  
**pictures**, 117  
  
**piece (in theatre)**, 117  
**piety**, 178 *f.*  
**pity**, 155  
**place money on investment**, 203  
**plain**, 3  
**plan**, 84  
**planet**, 7  
**plant (to) trees**, 209  
**plants**, 209  
**Plato**, 78, 102, 134, 142  
**plausible**, 80  
**play**, 117  
**plead**, 241  
**pleasure**, 74, 146  
**plebeian tribunes**, 234  
**plebeians**, 214  
**pledge**, 160  
**plunder**, 257  
**plunge in grief**, 147  
     in misfortune, 50  
**poetry**, 115  
**poets (ancient)**, 115  
**point at issue**, 280  
     (important), 280  
     of view, 45  
**points (cardinal)**, 9  
**poison**, 40, 242  
**pole**, 7  
**politics**, 211, 220  
**popular favour**, 219  
     with, 58  
**port**, 101  
**position**, 215  
     (in life), 42  
     (military), 255  
**possession**, 187  
**possibility**, 47  
**posterity**, 19, 34, 89  
**postpone**, 18  
**poverty**, 55  
**power**, 45, 226  
     **kingly**, 226  
**powers of human body**, 29  
**practice**, 90  
**praise**, 65  
**prayer**, 181  
**precedent**, 99  
**precepts**, 101  
**precipitate**, 17, 215

- precision, 102  
 predilection, 82  
**pre-eminence**, 215  
**prejudice**, 78, 161  
 prematurely, 39  
 premises, 104, 107  
 preparations (warlike), 246  
 prepare arms, 250  
   a banquet, 192  
   a speech, 122  
 prerogative, 239 *n.*  
**presage**, 183  
 prescribe in a will, 199  
**presence of mind**, 152  
 present day, 19  
 present (to be), 178  
**presentiment**, 160  
 preserve, 54  
 president of tribunal, 237  
 press around, 17  
   on, 17, 255  
 pressing debts, 206  
 presume, 150  
 pretend, 170  
 pretext, 45, 170  
 prevail over, 271  
**price**, 201  
   of corn, 209  
**pride**, 150  
**principles** (moral), 175  
   (philosophic), 103  
 prison, 245  
 prisoner of war, 228, 270  
 private life, 212  
 privation, 55  
   of civil rights, 216  
 privilege, 239 *n.*  
 prize, 61, 120  
 probability, 80  
 proceed methodically, 104  
**process**, 240  
 proclamation, 235  
 proconsul, 233  
**prodigality**, 191  
**prodigies**, 183  
 product of the earth, 1 *n.*  
 profanation, 179  
**profession**, 96, 114  
**profit**, 206  
 profound erudition, 93  
 progress, 98  
 project, 84 *f.*  
 prolix, 277  
 prolong the conversation, 195  
   office, 231  
**promise**, 158  
 promising, 98  
 promontory, 9  
 prompt, 123, 132  
 pronounce distinctly, 140  
**proof**, 106  
 propensity, 166  
**properties of human body**, 29  
**property**, 187  
 propose terms, 270  
   a law, 216 *f.*  
 prorogue, 226, 232  
**proscription**, 224  
 prose, 124  
 prosecute, 241  
 prosperity, 50  
 prostrate oneself, 29  
**protection**, 158  
 prove, 106  
**proverb**, 135  
**provinces**, 228  
 provoke, 148  
 public (in), 186  
   life, 212  
   meetings, 216  
   (the), 214, 242  
 publish a book, 140  
   a secret, 66  
 punctuate, 142  
**punishment**, 244  
**purchase**, 201  
 pure Latin, 134  
 purity of style, 124  
**pursuit**, 266  
**pusillanimity**, 150  
 put off, 18  
 pyre, 41  
 Pythagoras, 102  
 Pythian games, 120  
 Quarters (close), 264  
 question, 131

- question, pecuniary, 207  
 political, 211, 220  
   (torture), 239  
 vexed, 280  
 quit a place, 14 *n.*  
   the theatre, 118  
   this world, 39  
 quote, 142  
 RADICALLY, 181  
 rage, 163  
 rail at, 168  
 rain, 7  
 rally, 262  
 rampart, 256  
**rank**, 213  
 ranks (military), 254  
**rate of interest**, 205  
 ratify a law, 218  
   a peace, 270  
 ravage, 257  
 ray of hope, 153  
 raze a building, 185, 259  
 reader, 143 *n.*  
 ready money, 202  
   tongue, 123  
 reality, 280  
 reap, 209  
 rearguard, 253, 255, 263  
**reason** (cause), 44  
   (mind), 173  
 receive a good education, 94, 96  
   at one's house, 192  
   with open arms, 185, 193  
 recitation, 116  
 reckoning, 204  
 recognise, 30  
 recollection, 88 *f.*  
 recommence (to) the fight, 262  
 recommendation, 68, 89  
**recompense**, 59  
**reconciliation**, 62  
 recondit, 128  
 reconnoitre, 254, 276  
 recourse (to have) to, 86  
 recover freedom, 228  
   health, 37  
   money, 203  
 recover oneself, 150  
   reason, 173  
**recreation**, 74  
 recruit, 37, 74  
 recruits, 247 *f.*  
 reduce to ashes, 5, 185  
   to a province, 272  
   to a system, 238  
   to slavery, 227  
   to want, 55  
 refinement, 96  
 reflection, 85  
 refuge, 101  
 refuse, 62  
   battle, 260  
**refutation**, 106  
 regale, 192  
**regard**, 45  
 regret, 148 *n.*  
 rehearse, 118  
**reinforcements**, 264  
 reins, 15  
 reject, 62, 217  
 rejoice, 146  
 relate, 195  
 relation of things, 105  
**relations** (business), 202  
   (friendly), 194  
   (hospitable), 193  
   of human life, 41 *f.*  
 relaxation, 14  
 relieve pain, 147  
**religion**, 177 *f.*  
**religious scruple**, 178  
 remain loyal, 160  
 remark, 278  
 remedy, 54, 98  
**remembrance**, 87  
 remit a letter, 144  
**remorse**, 173  
 render one's accounts, 204  
 renew the games, 119  
   pain, 146  
 renounce a project, 86  
   politics, 220  
 renown, 67  
 repair a ship, 273  
   a wrong, 57  
 repartee, 123

- repast, 192  
 repeat, 218 *n.*  
 repel violence, 265  
 reply, 131  
 report, 66  
 repose, 37  
 represent a thing, 88  
   *nature*, 115 *n.*  
 reprimand, 234  
 reproach, 65  
 reproduce, 88  
 republic, 211  
 repulse the enemy, 265  
 reputation, 67  
 requests, 61  
 rescue, 54  
 reserves, 265  
 resignation, 152, 232  
 resistance, 262  
 resolution, 85  
 resolve, 85  
 resources, 55 *f.*, 220  
 respect, 68  
 response, 131  
 restitution, 252  
 restore prisoners, 228  
   *to health*, 37  
   *to the throne*, 227  
 result, 43  
 retard, 87  
 retire, 266  
 retired life, 98  
 retreat, 266  
 return, 13 *n.*  
   *a candidate*, 233  
   *evil for good*, 60  
   *money*, 206  
   *to one's duty*, 172  
   *to private life*, 212  
 reveal oneself, 179 *f.*  
 revenge, 162  
 revenue, 228  
 reverse, 267  
 review, 247  
 revoke a will, 199  
 revolt, 248 *n.*  
 revolution, 223  
 reward, 60  
 rhetoric, 120  
 rhythm, 116  
 riches, 55, 187  
 ridicule (to), 171  
 ridiculous, 35  
 riding, 14  
 rightly, 281  
 rights (civil), 213  
 risk, 52  
 ritual, 177, 182  
 rivals, 231  
 rivers, 3  
 road, 11  
 robust, 30  
 rôle, 119 *n.*  
 root, 2  
 rostra, 121  
 rout, 266  
 route, 11, 254  
 royalty, 226  
 ruin, 50, 185 *n.*  
 rules of art, 114  
   *of language*, 133  
 rumour, 66  
 run away, 266  
 ruse, 170  
 Sacrifice, 182  
 saddle, 14  
 safe-conduct, 160  
 safety, 52  
 sagacity, 213  
 sail, 273  
 salary, 248  
 sally, 258  
 salubrious, 6  
 salute, 230  
 sanction, 179, 218  
 sangfroid, 152  
 sanity, 75  
 satisfaction (demand), 57  
   *(give)*, 168  
 savant, 93  
 save, 54  
 scandal, 67  
 scene, 118  
 scholarship, 92  
 school, 96  
 science (natural), 110

- sciences (arts and), 91 *f.*  
   *(particular)*, 110  
 script, 140  
 scruple, 82  
   *(religious)*, 178  
 sculpture, 115  
 sea, 3, 273  
 sea-fight, 275  
 seasons, 21  
 sect, 102  
 seduce, 30  
 seize an opportunity, 48  
 self-confident, 159  
 self-control, 166  
 self-evident, 280  
 self-indulgent, 167  
 semblance, 170  
 senate, 235  
 sensation, 29  
 sense, 29  
   *of a word*, 139  
   *(good)*, 138  
 sensibility, 29  
 sentence, 135  
   *of death*, 245  
 sentiment of pity, 155  
   *of duty*, 171  
   *(religious)*, 177  
 sentinel, 255  
 serious, 45  
 serve as an example, 99, 278  
   *in the cavalry*, 246  
   *the interests of*, 167  
 service (military), 248  
 serviceable, 56  
 servitude, 227  
 set free, 227  
 set sail, 274  
 settle, 201, 202  
 severe, 59 *n.*  
 sex, 30  
 shipping, 272  
 shipwreck, 273  
 shower, 7  
 Sibylline books, 184  
 sickness, 36  
 siege, 257  
 sight, 27  
 signs of punctuation, 142  
 signal, 117  
 signification of a word, 138  
 silence, 22, 127  
 simile, 139, 278  
 simplicity, 59 *n.*  
 since, 21  
 sincerity, 59 *n.*  
 sing, 116  
 sink, 275  
 sitting, 235  
 situation, 9  
   *(in life)*, 41  
 sketch, 77 *n.*, 125  
 sky, 6  
 slaughter, 268  
 slavery, 227  
 sleep, 37  
 sociability, 193  
 society, 193 *f.*  
 sojourn, 193  
 soldier (mercenary), 248  
 solitude, 194  
 Solon, 218  
 solvent, 203  
 sophism, 107  
 Sophocles, 119  
 sorry, 147  
 sortie, 258  
 sound the retreat, 266  
 source, 45  
 south, 9  
 sow, 209  
 space and time, 9 *f.*  
 specialist, 114  
 species (philosophical), 104  
 spectator, 118  
 speculative, 103  
 speech in general, 120  
 spend time, 18  
 sphere of activity, 229 *n.*  
 spirit, 20 *n.*  
 spirit (party-), 220  
 spiritual, 178  
 spring, 21  
 stage, 118  
 standard, 174  
   *(in war)*, 253 *n.*  
 standpoint, 45  
 stare, 7

starvation, 34  
**state**, 210 *f.*  
 statesman, 211  
 statue, 117  
 step, 15  
 stimulate, 97  
**stock (management of)**, 208  
 storm, 5, 7, 8  
   a town, 258  
 stream, 5  
 street, 11, 186  
 strength, 30  
 study, 92 *f.*  
 style, 123  
 subdivide, 105  
 subject of a play, 117  
   of discussion, 280  
   of reflection, 85  
   (philosophical), 101  
 subject (to be), 271 *f.*  
**subject-matter**, 130  
 subjugate, 227, 271  
 sublime (style), 124  
**submission (in war)**, 271  
 submit a proposal, 217  
 subordination, 104  
**subsistence in general**, 190  
 subtlety, 102  
 succeed, 44, 49  
**success**, 49  
**successful attack**, 265  
 successor, 231  
 succour, 54  
 sue, 24  
 suffer harm, 56  
   injustice, 168  
**suffrage**, 216  
 suicide, 39 *n.*  
 sum of money, 202  
 sum up, 277  
 summer, 22  
 summon, 237  
 sun, 6, 8  
 sunrise, 6  
 superficial, 95  
**superstition**, 180  
 supplies, 249  
 support, 55, 191  
 supposition, 107

**surface of earth**, 2  
   of water, 3  
 surmount, 33  
 surprise, 281  
 surrender, 258 *f.*  
 survive, 34  
**suspect**, 160  
 suspense (in), 155  
 sword, 251  
**syllable**, 135  
 syllogism, 107  
 sympathy, 155  
 synonym, 138  
**system (philosophical)**, 103

## TABLE, 192

tablet (voting-), 217 *n.*, 231 *n.*  
 (archives), 219

tact, 213  
**tactics**, 264  
 tale, 195  
**talent**, 75, 98  
 talk, 195  
 taste food, 114  
 taxes, 228  
 teach, 97  
**tears**, 35  
 temper (good), 132  
 temperate, 174  
 tempest, 5, 7, 8  
 temple, 178  
 temporarily, 20 *n.*  
 tempt fortune, 53  
 tendency, 45, 57, 153  
 tenders, 234  
 tendons, 72 *n.*  
 tenets, 101  
 term (proper), 139  
 terms, 270  
 terminate a war, 253  
   a speech, 122  
   a transaction, 201, 202  
**territory**, 10  
**terror**, 149  
 testament, 199  
**testimony**, 239  
 tête-à-tête, 196  
 text, 143

thanks, 60  
 thanksgiving (public), 183  
 theatre, 118 *f.*  
 theme, 130  
**theory**, 90, 108  
 think, 76  
 thirst, 34  
 thought, 76  
**threats**, 169  
 throne, 227  
 thunder, 8  
 tides, 5  
**time (space and)**, 9 *f.*  
   heroic, 112  
   in general, 18  
   of life, 32  
 tinge, 103 *n.*  
 tiptoe, 15  
 title of book, 141  
 to-day, 23  
 toga, 189  
 to-morrow, 23  
 tone (dogmatic), 100  
 topic, 195  
 torch of war, 252  
 torments of remorse, 174  
 torrid zone, 7  
**torture**, 239  
 total, 205  
 touch at, 274  
   on, 126  
 trace, 16  
 tradition (written), 93, 111  
 traditional, 111, 201  
 tragedy, 115, 119  
 tragic, 115 *n.*  
 trait of character, 177  
 traitor, 242  
**translation**, 133  
 transmit from father to son, 111  
 transplant, 116  
 transport (ship), 272  
 transported with anger, 162  
   joy, 146  
**travel**, 11  
 traverse, 230  
 treat a question, 141  
   a sick man, 37  
   in detail, 127

treat methodically, 104  
**treaty**, 270  
 tree, 209  
 tremble, 24  
*triarii*, 263 *n.*  
 tribunal of critics, 114  
 tribunes (plebeian), 234  
 tribute, 229  
 trite, 11  
**triumph**, 269  
 troops (light), 247 *f.*  
   fresh, 248 *f.*  
 trope, 139  
 trouble, 51  
 trouble the state, 223  
 troupe of actors, 118  
   gladiators, 120  
**truce**, 270  
 trumpet, 262, 266  
 trust, 158 *f.*  
**truth**, 80  
 tune, 117  
 twilight, 22  
 tyranny, 226 *n.*

## UNANIMITY, 109, 231

**unbelief**, 180  
 uncivilised, 96  
 undecided, 263  
 underestimate, 68  
 understand, 75  
 undertake, 72  
 unfortunate, 50  
 unhappy, 50  
 united, 109  
 universe, 1  
 unjust, 237  
**unpopularity**, 219  
**usage**, 200  
 (according to), 20  
**use of language**, 133  
 use (to), 84 *n.*  
 useful, 56  
 usurp, 227  
**utility**, 56

VALID, 218  
 valour, 150

- value, 60  
 vanguard, 253  
 vanquish, 269  
 variable, 110, 177  
 various relations of human  
   life, 41 *f.*  
 vegetable kingdom, 2  
 venality, 230  
 vengeance, 162  
 venture, 86  
 veracity, 80, 158  
 verdict, 241  
 vernacular, 133  
 verse, 115, 116  
 vestment, 188  
 veterans, 248  
 veto, 218, 234  
 vexation, 148  
 vice, 165  
 vicissitudes, 51  
 victim, 182  
 victim (to be . . . of), 51  
 victory, 269  
 vigorous, 30  
 villa, 9  
 violate an oath, 180  
   law, 238  
   peace, 270  
 violence, 169, 242  
 virtues and vices, 164 *f.*  
 visible world, 1  
 vision, 38  
 vocation, 97  
 voice, 129 *f.*  
 volubility, 123, 133  
 volunteers, 247  
 vote, 218, 231  
 vows, 181  
 voyage, 273
- WAGE war, 252  
 walking, 15  
 wall, 16  
 want, 35  
 want of feeling, 155  
 war, 251  
 watch, 255  
 water, 3  
 waves, 4
- way, 11 *f.*  
   milky, 7  
 wax and wane, 6  
 weakness, 36, 171  
 wealth, 55  
 weapons, 250  
 weather, 7  
 welcome, 185, 193  
 well-disposed, 57  
 west, 9  
 wholesale dealer, 201 *n.*  
 wicked, 175  
 wide-spread, 81  
 will (testament), 199  
 win a battle, 261, 269  
 wind, 7, 274  
 winter, 21  
   quarters, 255  
 wisdom, 93  
 wishes, 61  
   (last), 199  
   (prayers), 181  
 wit, 132  
 wits, 75  
 witness, 239  
 wonder, 281  
 wood, 3  
 words, 135  
 work, 71 *n.*  
 world, 1  
   below, 177  
 worship, 177  
 worth, 60  
 wounds, 267  
 wrath, 163  
 wreckage, 274  
 writing, 140  
 wrong, 168
- Year, 21  
 yearn, 166  
 yield, 267  
 yoke, 228  
 youth, 33
- ZEAL, 71  
 Zeno, 132  
 zodiac, 7  
 zone, 7

## WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

- LATIN PHRASE BOOK. By C. MEISSNER. Translated by H. W. AUDEN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Part I. Sounds, Inflections, Word-formation, Appendices. Crown 8vo. 9s. Part II. Syntax, Prepositions, etc. 10s. 6d.
- SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Crown 8vo. 5s.
- AN ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., and Professor A. S. WILKINS, Litt.D. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR. By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A. Feap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- LATIN GRAMMAR. By Professor B. L. GILDERSLEEVE and GONZALEZ LODGE. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.
- LATIN ACCIDENCE AND EXERCISES, arranged for Beginners. By W. WELCH and C. G. DUFFIELD. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- EXERCISES IN UNSEEN TRANSLATION IN LATIN. By the Same. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE:—
- FIRST PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- SECOND PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. New and Enlarged Edition. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- THIRD PART. By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.
- MACMILLAN'S SHORTER LATIN COURSE:—
- FIRST PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. 6d. net.
- SECOND PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. 6d. net.
- The Third Part of the LATIN COURSE is also intended to form the concluding volume of the SHORTER LATIN COURSE.
- MACMILLAN'S LATIN READER. A Latin Reader for the Lower Forms in Schools. By H. J. HARDY, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND EXAMINATION PAPERS IN LATIN GRAMMAR. By Rev. H. BELCHER, LL.D.
- PART I. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Pott 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.
- PART II. On the Syntax of Sentences, with an Appendix, including Exercises in Latin Idioms, etc. Pott 8vo. 2s. KEY, for Teachers only. Pott 8vo. 3s. net.
- SERMO LATINUS. A Short Guide to Latin Prose Composition. By Prof. J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY to "Selected Passages." Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.
- MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.

## WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By

Rev. G. RUST, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only.

By W. M. YATES. Pott 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

LATIN PROSE AFTER THE BEST AUTHORS: Cæsarian

Prose. By F. P. SIMPSON, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY,

for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 5s. net.

LATIN PROSE EXERCISES BASED UPON CÆSAR'S

GALLIC WAR. With a Classification of Cæsar's Chief Phrases  
and Grammatical Notes on Cæsar's Usages. By CLEMENT BRYANS,

M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo.  
4s. 6d. net.

HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By

A. W. PORTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College,

Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s.

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE.

Edited with Notes and References to the above. By the Same.

Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 2s. 6d. net.

EXERCISES IN LATIN VERSE OF VARIOUS KINDS.

By Rev. G. PRESTON. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers

only. Globe 8vo. 5s. net.

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE

COMPOSITION. By J. H. LUPTON, Sur-Master of St. Paul's

School. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY TO PART II. (XXV.-C.).

Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN LYRIC VERSE COM-

POSITION. By the Same. Globe 8vo. 3s. KEY, for Teachers

only. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.

A FIRST LATIN VERSE BOOK. By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.

Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. net.

MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY LATIN-ENGLISH DIC-

TIONARY. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A. 3s. 6d.

ENGLISH-LATIN AND LATIN-ENGLISH DICTION-

ARIES. By Prof. C. D. YONGE. Each sold separately, 3s. 6d. ;

or complete, 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S COMPANION TO LATIN AUTHORS.

By GEORGE MIDDLETON, M.A., and THOMAS R. MILLS, M.A.

Crown 8vo. 6s.

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN TEXTUAL EMENDA-

TION, based on the text of Plautus. By W. M. LINDSAY, M.A.

Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A SHORT MANUAL OF COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY

FOR CLASSICAL STUDENTS. By P. GILES, M.A. Second

Edition. Crown 8vo. 14s.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.

Biblioteca de  
**RUSSELL P. SEBOLD**